



**Installation and Upgrades**  
**for**  
**Avaya G700 Media Gateway**  
**and**  
**Avaya S8300 Media Server**

555-234-100  
Issue 4.1  
December 2003

**Copyright 2003, Avaya Inc.  
All Rights Reserved**

**Notice**

Every effort was made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing. However, information is subject to change.

**Warranty**

Avaya Inc. provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

**Preventing Toll Fraud**

"Toll fraud" is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party (for example, a person who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf). Be aware that there may be a risk of toll fraud associated with your system and that, if toll fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

**Avaya Fraud Intervention**

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support, in the United States and Canada, call the Technical Service Center's Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at 1-800-643-2353.

**How to Get Help**

For additional support telephone numbers, go to the Avaya support Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>. If you are:

- Within the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click the appropriate link for the type of support you need.
- Outside the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click the *International Services* link that includes telephone numbers for the international Centers of Excellence.

**Providing Telecommunications Security**

Telecommunications security (of voice, data, and/or video communications) is the prevention of any type of intrusion to (that is, either unauthorized or malicious access to or use of) your company's telecommunications equipment by some party.

Your company's "telecommunications equipment" includes both this Avaya product and any other voice/data/video equipment that could be accessed via this Avaya product (that is, "networked equipment").

An "outside party" is anyone who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf. Whereas, a "malicious party" is anyone (including someone who may be otherwise authorized) who accesses your telecommunications equipment with either malicious or mischievous intent.

Such intrusions may be either to/through synchronous (time-multiplexed and/or circuit-based) or asynchronous (character-, message-, or packet-based) equipment or interfaces for reasons of:

- Utilization (of capabilities special to the accessed equipment)
- Theft (such as, of intellectual property, financial assets, or toll facility access)
- Eavesdropping (privacy invasions to humans)
- Mischief (troubling, but apparently innocuous, tampering)
- Harm (such as harmful tampering, data loss or alteration, regardless of motive or intent)

Be aware that there may be a risk of unauthorized intrusions associated with your system and/or its networked equipment. Also realize that, if such an intrusion should occur, it could result in a variety of losses to your company (including but not limited to, human/data privacy, intellectual property, material assets, financial resources, labor costs, and/or legal costs).

**Responsibility for Your Company's Telecommunications Security**

The final responsibility for securing both this system and its networked equipment rests with you - Avaya's customer system administrator, your telecommunications peers, and your managers. Base the fulfillment of your responsibility on acquired knowledge and resources from a variety of sources including but not limited to:

- Installation documents
- System administration documents
- Security documents
- Hardware-/software-based security tools
- Shared information between you and your peers
- Telecommunications security experts

To prevent intrusions to your telecommunications equipment, you and your peers should carefully program and configure:

- Your Avaya-provided telecommunications systems and their interfaces
- Your Avaya-provided software applications, as well as their underlying hardware/software platforms and interfaces
- Any other equipment networked to your Avaya products

**TCP/IP Facilities**

Customers may experience differences in product performance, reliability and security depending upon network configurations/design and topologies, even when the product performs as warranted.

**Standards Compliance**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any or television interference caused by unauthorized modifications of this equipment or the substitution or attachment of connecting cables and equipment other than those specified by Avaya Inc. The correction of interference caused by such unauthorized modifications, substitution or attachment will be the responsibility of the user. Pursuant to Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules, the user is cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Avaya Inc. could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Product Safety Standards**

This product complies with and conforms to the following international Product Safety standards as applicable:

Safety of Information Technology Equipment, IEC 60950, 3rd Edition including all relevant national deviations as listed in Compliance with IEC for Electrical Equipment (IECEE) CB-96A.

Safety of Information Technology Equipment, CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 60950-00 / UL 60950, 3rd Edition

Safety Requirements for Customer Equipment, ACA Technical Standard (TS) 001 - 1997

One or more of the following Mexican national standards, as applicable: NOM 001 SCFI 1993, NOM SCFI 016 1993, NOM 019 SCFI 1998

The equipment described in this document may contain Class 1 LASER Device(s). These devices comply with the following standards:

- EN 60825-1, Edition 1.1, 1998-01
- 21 CFR 1040.10 and CFR 1040.11.

The LASER devices operate within the following parameters:

- Maximum power output: -5 dBm to -8 dBm
- Center Wavelength: 1310 nm to 1360 nm

Luokan 1 Laserlaite

Klass 1 Laser Apparat

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposures. Contact your Avaya representative for more laser product information.

### Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Standards

This product complies with and conforms to the following international EMC standards and all relevant national deviations:

Limits and Methods of Measurement of Radio Interference of Information Technology Equipment, CISPR 22:1997 and EN55022:1998.

Information Technology Equipment – Immunity Characteristics – Limits and Methods of Measurement, CISPR 24:1997 and EN55024:1998, including:

- Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2
- Radiated Immunity IEC 61000-4-3
- Electrical Fast Transient IEC 61000-4-4
- Lightning Effects IEC 61000-4-5
- Conducted Immunity IEC 61000-4-6
- Mains Frequency Magnetic Field IEC 61000-4-8
- Voltage Dips and Variations IEC 61000-4-11
- Powerline Harmonics IEC 61000-3-2
- Voltage Fluctuations and Flicker IEC 61000-3-3

### Federal Communications Commission Statement

#### Part 15:

**Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.**

#### Part 68: Answer-Supervision Signaling

Allowing this equipment to be operated in a manner that does not provide proper answer-supervision signaling is in violation of Part 68 rules. This equipment returns answer-supervision signals to the public switched network when:

- answered by the called station,
- answered by the attendant, or
- routed to a recorded announcement that can be administered by the customer premises equipment (CPE) user.

This equipment returns answer-supervision signals on all direct inward dialed (DID) calls forwarded back to the public switched telephone network. Permissible exceptions are:

- A call is unanswered.
- A busy tone is received.
- A reorder tone is received.

Avaya attests that this registered equipment is capable of providing users access to interstate providers of operator services through the use of access codes. Modification of this equipment by call aggregators to block access dialing codes is a violation of the Telephone Operator Consumers Act of 1990.

### REN Number

#### For MCC1, SCC1, CMC1, G600, and G650 Media Gateways:

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. On either the rear or inside the front cover of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the FCC registration number, and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

#### For G350 and G700 Media Gateways:

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. On the rear of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the ringer equivalence number (REN) without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

#### For all media gateways:

The REN is used to determine the quantity of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed 5.0. To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company.

REN is not required for some types of analog or digital facilities.

### Means of Connection

Connection of this equipment to the telephone network is shown in the following tables.

#### For MCC1, SCC1, CMC1, G600, and G650 Media Gateways:

Manufacturer's Port Identifier	FIC Code	SOC/REN/A.S. Code	Network Jacks
Off premises station	OL13C	9.0F	RJ2GX, RJ21X, RJ11C
DID trunk	02RV2-T	0.0B	RJ2GX, RJ21X
CO trunk	02GS2	0.3A	RJ21X
	02LS2	0.3A	RJ21X
Tie trunk	TL31M	9.0F	RJ2GX
Basic Rate Interface	02IS5	6.0F, 6.0Y	RJ49C
1.544 digital interface	04DU9-BN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
	04DU9-IKN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
	04DU9-ISN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
120A4 channel service unit	04DU9-DN	6.0Y	RJ48C

## For G350 and G700 Media Gateways:

Manufacturer's Port Identifier	FIC Code	SOC/REN/A.S. Code	Network Jacks
Ground Start CO trunk	02GS2	1.0A	RJ11C
DID trunk	02RV2-T	AS.0	RJ11C
Loop Start CO trunk	02LS2	0.5A	RJ11C
1.544 digital interface	04DU9-BN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-DN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-IKN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-ISN	6.0Y	RJ48C
Basic Rate Interface	02IS5	6.0F	RJ49C

### For all media gateways:

If the terminal equipment (for example, the media server or media gateway) causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If trouble is experienced with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, please contact the Technical Service Center at 1-800-242- 2121 or contact your local Avaya representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. It is recommended that repairs be performed by Avaya certified technicians.

The equipment cannot be used on public coin phone service provided by the telephone company. Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.

This equipment, if it uses a telephone receiver, is hearing aid compatible.

### Canadian Department of Communications (DOC) Interference Information

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met. It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment.

## Declarations of Conformity

United States FCC Part 68 Supplier's Declaration of Conformity (SDoC)

Avaya Inc. in the United States of America hereby certifies that the equipment described in this document and bearing a TIA TSB-168 label identification number complies with the FCC's Rules and Regulations 47 CFR Part 68, and the Administrative Council on Terminal Attachments (ACTA) adopted technical criteria.

Avaya further asserts that Avaya handset-equipped terminal equipment described in this document complies with Paragraph 68.316 of the FCC Rules and Regulations defining Hearing Aid Compatibility and is deemed compatible with hearing aids.

Copies of SDoCs signed by the Responsible Party in the U. S. can be obtained by contacting your local sales representative and are available on the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

All Avaya media servers and media gateways are compliant with FCC Part 68, but many have been registered with the FCC before the SDoC process was available. A list of all Avaya registered products may be found at: <http://www.part68.org> by conducting a search using "Avaya" as manufacturer.

## European Union Declarations of Conformity



Avaya Inc. declares that the equipment specified in this document bearing the "CE" (*Conformité Européenne*) mark conforms to the European Union Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive (1999/5/EC), including the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (89/336/EEC) and Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC). This equipment has been certified to meet CTR3 Basic Rate Interface (BRI) and CTR4 Primary Rate Interface (PRI) and subsets thereof in CTR12 and CTR13, as applicable.

Copies of these Declarations of Conformity (DoCs) can be obtained by contacting your local sales representative and are available on the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

## Japan

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio disturbance may occur, in which case, the user may be required to take corrective actions.

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

## To order copies of this and other documents:

Call: Avaya Publications Center  
Voice 1.800.457.1235 or 1.207.866.6701  
FAX 1.800.457.1764 or 1.207.626.7269

Write: Globalware Solutions  
200 Ward Hill Avenue  
Haverhill, MA 01835 USA  
Attention: Avaya Account Management

E-mail: [totalware@gwsmail.com](mailto:totalware@gwsmail.com)

For the most current versions of documentation, go to the Avaya support Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

# Contents

<b>About This Book</b>	<b>21</b>
• Overview	21
• Audience	21
• Using this book	21
• Conventions	22
Terminology	22
Typography	22
Commands	22
Keys	23
User input	23
System output and field names	23
• Downloading this book	24
Downloading this book	24
• Safety labels and security alert labels	24
• Related resources	25
• Technical assistance	25
International	26
• Trademarks	26
• Ordering Documentation	26
• Sending us comments	26
<b>1 Roadmap and Reference</b>	<b>27</b>
• Wizards for Installations and Upgrades	28
Wizard Reference Web Page	28
Wizard Summary	28
The Avaya Installation Wizard (IW)	30
What the IW Does and Does Not Do	30
Electronic Worksheets and Templates	31
The Upgrade Tool	32
You cannot use the Upgrade Tool to do the following:	32
The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard	33
• Installation Roadmap and Task Lists	34
Checklist 1:	
Install a New G700	
with an S8300 (Primary or LSP)	35

Checklist 2: Install a New G700 without an S8300	38
Checklist 3 Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R1.x to R2.0)	40
Checklist 4 Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R2.0 to R2.x)	42
Checklist 5: Upgrade an Existing G700 without an S8300	44
• Connection and Login Methods	45
Connection Overview	46
Summary of S8300 and G700 Access Methods and Tasks	46
Laptop Configuration for a Direct Connection to the Services Port	47
Settings for a Direct Connection to S8300, S8500, or S8700 Services Port	47
Connection Methods	51
Connect Laptop to Services Port of S8300	51
Connect Laptop to the G700 Serial Port	51
Connect Laptop to Customer LAN	52
Connect the External Modem to the S8300 Media Server:	52
Set up Windows for Modem Connection to the Media Server (Windows 2000 or XP)	53
Configure the Remote PC for PPP Modem Connection (Windows 2000 or XP, Terminal Emulator, or ASA)	53
Use Windows for PPP Modem Connection (Windows 2000 or XP)	54
Use Avaya Terminal Emulator for LAN Connection to Communication Manager	54
Use Avaya Terminal Emulator for Modem Connection to Communication Manager	55
Log in Methods	56
Log in to the Media Server from Your Laptop using Telnet	57
Log in to the S8300 Web Interface from Your Laptop	57
Open the Replace variable w/ ProductName SAT Screens	62
Log in to the P330 stack Processor with a Direct Connection to the Services Port	62
Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with a LAN Connection	63
Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with a Direct Serial Connection	63
Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with Device Manager	64
Avaya Site Administration	64
Configure Avaya Site Administration	64

• Navigational Aid for CLI Commands	66
• Terminal Emulation Function Keys for Communication Manager	67
<b>2 Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server</b>	<b>69</b>
• Getting Started	70
G700 Media Gateway	70
G700 Media Gateway Chassis and Processors	70
Media Modules	71
Data Expansion Modules	72
S8300 LED Indicators	73
Media Servers	73
S8300 Media Server	74
S8500 Media Server	74
S8700 Media Server	75
Endpoint and Adjunct Components	75
Plan the Installation	75
Use the Planning Documentation	76
SSO Authentication Login	76
Site Verification	76
Network Integration	77
• Installation and Cabling	78
On Site Checklist	78
Environmental Verification	78
Power Verification	79
Grounding Verification	79
Unpack and Check the Order	79
Install the G700 Media Gateway	80
Prepare the G700 Media Gateway	81
Mount the G700 Media Gateway in the Rack	81
Insert the Avaya S8300 Media Server (If Necessary for Standalone Service or LSP)	83
Insert the Media Modules	85
Insert an Expansion Module	87
Insert an Avaya X330STK Stacking Module	88
Cable Multiple Units	89
Attach Ground Conductors	92
General Grounding Requirements	92

Approved Grounds	93
Connect the Safety Ground	94
Connect AC Power	95
Power Requirements	95
Test the AC Outlet	95
Plug in AC Power	97
Check and Connect DC Power	98
<b>3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300</b>	<b>101</b>
• Installation Overview	102
G700 components	102
Software and firmware files	102
System Access	102
Initial Access to the G700	102
Access to the S8300 and G700	102
• Before Going to the Customer Site	104
Off-site Tasks	104
Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager	104
Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary	104
Check FTP Server for Backing up Data	104
License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor	105
Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop	105
Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary	106
Obtain the Static Craft Password	106
Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary	106
• On-Site Preparation for the Installation	108
Install the New License File, If Necessary	108
If Necessary, Rename Old License and Authentication Files from S8300 FTP Directory	108
Load License File (from Your Laptop)	108
If Necessary, Install License and Authentication Files	110
Run Save Translations (Only If New License and/or Authentication Files Installed)	111
Determine Necessary Upgrades to the S8300	111
Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop	111
Download Files Screen	112



• Install New Software on the S8300	114
Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone	114
Install New Software	114
Configure the S8300	123
Configure Server Screen	123
Select Method Screen	124
Set Server Identities Screen	125
Configure Ethernet Interfaces Screen	126
Configure Local Survivable Processor Screen	127
Ethernet Adjuncts Screen	128
External DNS Server Configuration Screen	129
Set Network Routes Screen	130
Network Time Server Screen	131
Set Modem Interface Screen	133
Warning Screen	133
Updating System Files Screen	134
Provide the keys.install File (If Necessary)	135
• Configure the G700 Media Gateway	137
Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components	137
Check for IP Connections	140
Set up the Controller List for the G700 Media Gateway	141
Set the LSP Transition Points	143
Configure an X330 Expansion Module (If Necessary)	144
• Install New Firmware on the G700	145
Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory	145
Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700	145
Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor	146
Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor	147
Install New Firmware on the Media Modules	148
• Administer Communication Manager	151
The Primary Controller is an S8300	151
Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the LSPs	151
Administer Network Regions	152
Associate LSPs with Network Regions	153
Administer IP Interfaces	154
Administer the LSP Form	154
The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700 (the S8300 Is an LSP)	155

Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the C-LANs and LSPs	156
Administer Network Regions	156
Assign LSPs to the Network Regions	158
Administer IP Interfaces	159
Administer the LSP Form	160
Administer the Media Gateway	161
• Considerations for IP Phones Supported by a Local Survivable Processor	164
Transition of Control from Primary Controller to LSP	165
• Set Up SNMP Alarming on the G700	166
• Complete the Installation of S8300 (if the Primary Controller)	168
• Complete the Installation Process	169
<b>4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300</b>	<b>171</b>
• Installation Overview	171
System Components	171
G700 components	171
Firmware files	171
TFTP Server	171
Initial Access to the G700	172
Access to the S8300 and G700	172
• Before Going to the Customer Site	174
Off-site Tasks	174
Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary	174
Set Up the TFTP Server on Your Laptop or on a Customer PC, if Necessary	174
Download G700 Firmware Files to Your TFTP Directory	176
For a Bundled Firmware File	176
For Individual Firmware Files	176
• Configure the G700	178
Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components	178
Check for IP Connections	181
Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components	183
Check for IP Connections	186
Set up the Controller List for the G700 Media Gateway	187
Set the LSP Transition Points	189
Configure an X330 Expansion Module (If Necessary)	190

• Prepare to Install Firmware on the G700	191
Access the P330 Stack Processor	191
Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory	191
Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700	191
• Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway	194
Firmware Installation Procedures	194
Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor	194
Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor	194
Install New Firmware on the Media Modules	196
• Administer Communication Manager	198
The Primary Controller is an S8300	198
Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the LSPs	198
Administer Network Regions	199
Associate LSPs with Network Regions	200
Administer IP Interfaces	200
Administer the LSP Form	201
The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700	201
Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the C-LANs and LSPs	202
Administer Network Regions	202
Assign LSPs to the Network Regions	204
Administer IP Interfaces	205
Administer the LSP Form	206
• Complete the Installation Process	209
<b>5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0</b>	<b>211</b>
System Access	211
• Task Summary	212
Before Going to the Site	212
On-site Preparation Tasks	212
S8300 Upgrade Tasks	212
G700 Upgrade Using the Wizards	213
G700 Manual Upgrade Tasks	213
G700 Pre-upgrade Tasks	213
G700 Upgrade Tasks	213
Post-Upgrade Tasks	213

- Before Going to the Customer Site 214
  - Get USB CD-ROM Drive 214
  - Collect Upgrade Information 214
    - If Upgrading from Release 1.1, Fill in the EPW 214
    - Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager 214
    - Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary 214
    - Check Number of Allocated Ports 215
    - Check FTP Server for Backing up Data 215
  - Get Software/Firmware Files 215
  - Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary 216
  - Complete the RFA Process (Obtain license and password file) 217
    - License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor 217
    - Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop 217
    - Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary 218
    - Obtain the Static Craft Password 218
- On-site Preparation for the Upgrade 219
  - Access to the S8300 219
    - Access the S8300 via Telnet 219
    - Access the S8300 via the Maintenance Web interface 219
    - Access SAT 219
  - Check Current Software Release 220
  - Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the S8300 is the Primary Controller 221
    - Clear Alarms 221
    - Check Link Status 221
    - Record All Busyouts 222
    - Disable Scheduled Maintenance 222
    - Check for Translation Corruption 222
    - Stop the LSPs (if applicable) 222
    - Disable Alarm Origination 223
  - Get IA770 (AUDIX) Data and Stop IA770 (if IA770 is being used) 224
  - Back up recovery system files 224
    - Back up data 224

Record Configuration Information	226
If Upgrading from 1.2 or Later	226
If Upgrading from Pre-1.2 Release	226
• Upgrade the S8300	227
Install the Pre-Upgrade Software Update (patch)	227
Update procedure	227
Back Up the System Files (Linux Migration Web Procedure)	229
Linux Migration Backup	229
Upgrade the S8300	232
Copy Remastering Program (RP) file to the S8300 hard drive	232
Install the RP software	232
Set Telnet Parameters	233
Remaster Hard Drive and Install the Upgrade Software	233
Verify Software Version	236
Copy Files to the S8300	236
Configure the Network Parameters	238
If Upgrading from a Pre-1.2 Release	239
Restore Translations	239
Configure the Server	239
Verify Connectivity	240
Restore the Linux Migration Backup File	240
If IA770 Is Being Used, Ensure that Messaging Is Disabled	243
Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone	243
Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager	
Update File from Your Laptop, if any	244
Verify Media Server Configuration	245
Install the New License File	246
Install the New Authentication File	247
Save Translations	247
Verify Operation	249
Next Steps	249
• Upgrade the Firmware on the G700	250
Using the Installation Wizard	250
Using the Upgrade Tool	250
Manual Upgrade Procedures	250
Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory	250
Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700	251
Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor	252

Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor	253
Install New Firmware on the Media Modules	254
Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways	256
• If the S8300 is Using IA770	257
Install and Restart IA770	257
Save Translations	259
Install IA770 update (patch) files, if any	259
• Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)	260
Check Media Modules	260
Enable Scheduled Maintenance	260
Busy Out Trunks	260
Check for Translation Corruption	260
Resolve Alarms	260
Re-enable Alarm Origination	261
Back up the System	261
Restart LSPs (if any)	261
<b>6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x</b>	<b>263</b>
System Access	263
• Task Summary	264
Before Going to the Site	264
On-Site Preparation Tasks	264
If the S8300 is a Primary Controller	264
S8300 is Either a Primary Controller or LSP	264
S8300 Upgrade Tasks	264
G700 Upgrade Using the Wizards	264
G700 Manual Upgrade Tasks	265
G700 Pre-Upgrade Tasks	265
G700 Upgrade Tasks	265
Post-upgrade Tasks	265
• Before Going to the Customer Site	266
Collect Upgrade Information	266
Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager	266
Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary	266
Check Number of Allocated Ports	266

Check FTP Server for Backing up Data	267
Get Software/Firmware Files	267
Complete the RFA Process (Obtain license and password file)	267
License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor	268
Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop	268
Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary	268
Obtain the Static Craft Password	269
Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary	269
• On-site Preparation for the Upgrade	270
Access to the S8300	270
Access the S8300 via Telnet	270
Access the S8300 via the Maintenance Web interface	270
Access SAT	270
Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the Target S8300 is the Primary Controller	271
Clear Alarms	271
Check Link Status	271
Record All Busyouts	271
Disable Scheduled Maintenance	272
Check for Translation Corruption	272
Stop the LSPs (if applicable)	272
Disable Alarm Origination	273
Get IA770 (AUDIX) Data and Stop IA770 (if IA770 is being used)	273
Back up recovery system files	274
Back up data	275
Install New License and Authentication Files, If Necessary	276
If Necessary, Rename Old License and Authentication Files from S8300 FTP Directory	276
Load License File (from Your Laptop)	276
If Necessary, Install License and Authentication Files	278
Run Save Translations (Only If New License and/or Authentication Files Installed)	279
Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop	279
Download Files Screen	280

• Upgrade the S8300	282
Install the Upgrade Software	282
Using the Wizard	282
Manual Installation	282
Install New Software	282
Make the Upgrade Permanent	289
Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager	
Update File from Your Laptop, if any	290
Install IA770 update (patch) files, if any	290
• Upgrade the Firmware on the G700	291
Using the Installation Wizard	291
Using the Upgrade Tool	291
Manual Upgrade Procedures	291
Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory	291
Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700	292
Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor	293
Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor	294
Install New Firmware on the Media Modules	295
Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways	297
• Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)	298
Check Media Modules	298
Enable Scheduled Maintenance	298
Busy Out Trunks	298
Check for Translation Corruption	298
Resolve Alarms	298
Re-enable Alarm Origination	298
Back up the System	299
Restart LSPs (if any)	299
<b>7 Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300</b>	<b>301</b>
• Upgrade Overview	301
System Components	301
G700 components	301
Firmware files	301
TFTP Server	301
System Access	302
Access to the G700	302



• Before Going to the Customer Site	303
Off-site Tasks	303
Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary	303
Set Up the TFTP Server on Your Laptop or on a Customer PC, if Necessary	303
Download G700 Firmware Files to Your TFTP Directory	305
For a Bundled Firmware File	305
For Individual Firmware Files	305
• On-Site Preparation for the Upgrade	307
Access the P330 Stack Processor	307
Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory	307
Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700	307
• Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway	310
Firmware Installation Procedures	310
Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor	310
Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor	310
Install New Firmware on the Media Modules	312
<b>8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems</b>	<b>315</b>
• Installation and Wiring Telephones and Power Supplies	316
Connectable Telephones and Consoles	316
Connect Telephones	317
Install and Wire Telephone Power Supplies	317
Typical Adjunct Power Connections	317
Adjunct Power Connections End-to-End	318
Auxiliary Power for an Attendant Console	319
1152A1 Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit	320
P333T-PWR Power over Ethernet Stackable Switch	324
1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies	326
Install Emergency Transfer Unit and Associated Telephones	328
Connect an Analog Station or 2-Wire Digital Station	329
• Complete the Telephone Installation Process	331
Install the Coupled Bonding Conductor	331
Install Circuit Protection	331
Over-Voltage and Sneak-Current Protection	331

• IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application	333
Shared Resources of Coresidency	333
CWY1Board and Software	333
No Data Link and No Voice Ports to Connect	334
AUDIX Hunt Group Still Necessary	334
IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Installations and S8300 Upgrades for IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX	334
• INTUITY AUDIX LX Messaging System	335
• ASAI Co-Resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG)	335
Administration Task Summary (for the S8300 Media Server)	336
Supported Ethernet Interfaces	336
• Call Center	337
Avaya G700 Announcement Software	337
• Avaya Integrated Management	339
Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager	339
Avaya Directory Enabled Management	339
Avaya MultiService Network Manager	340
Avaya MultiService SMON Manager	340
Avaya Fault and Performance Manager	340
Avaya Proxy Agent	341
Avaya Configuration Manager	341
Avaya Site Administration	341
Avaya Terminal Configuration	341
Avaya Terminal Emulator	341
Avaya Voice Announcement Over LAN Manager	342
Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager	342
• Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)	343
<b>A Technical Information</b>	<b>345</b>
• Avaya G700 Media Gateway Technical Specifications	345
• Cabling Equipment	346
<b>B Information Checklists</b>	<b>347</b>
• Installer's Checklist	347
• Serial Number and Login Information	349
G700 Serial Numbers	349
Logins	349

• Set-Up for P330 Stack Processor	350
• Set Up for G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP)	351
• Set Up for VoiP Resources	352
• Set Up for S8300 Media Server	353
• Installation Site Information	354
• Stack Layout	355
<b>C Equipment List</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>D Replacing the G700 Media Gateway</b>	<b>365</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>367</b>



# About This Book

## Overview

---

This document provides procedures to install, upgrade, or add to an Avaya G700 Media Gateway controlled by an Avaya S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server. It also includes information on connecting telephones and adjuncts to the G700.

This chapter provides information about the document including: the intended audience, the organization, conventions used, how to get help, and how to download, order, and comment on the document.

## Audience

---

This book is for the following audiences:

- Trained field installation and maintenance personnel
- Technical support personnel
- Network engineers and technicians
- Authorized Business Partners

## Using this book

---

This book is organized into five installation and/or upgrade scenarios:

- [Chapter 3, “Installing a New G700 with an S8300”](#)
- [Chapter 4, “Installing a New G700 without an S8300”](#)
- [Chapter 5, “Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0”](#)
- [Chapter 6, “Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x”](#)
- [Chapter 7, “Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300”](#)

Read [Chapter 1, “Roadmap and Reference”](#), before you begin the installation. Chapter 1 contains checklists for the four installation and upgrade scenarios. Then read and follow the procedures in the chapters that apply to the installation or upgrade scenario you are working with. Chapter 1 also contains information on alternative methods to connect to and access a G700 system.

Read [Chapter 2, “Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server”](#) for instructions on installing and cabling the hardware.

Read [Chapter 8, “Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems”](#) if you need to install phones or adjuncts. Chapter 7 covers the IA 770 INTUITY™ AUDIX® Messaging Application, the INTUITY™ LX Messaging System, the G700 Sourced Announcements, Avaya Integrated Management, the Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS), and Universal Serial Bus (USB) Modems.

See the following appendices for system specifications, forms you must complete for the installation, and comcodes and other information that you need to order equipment:

- [Appendix A, “Technical Information”](#) contains specifications and other technical information that you need to install an S8300 Media Server with a G700 Media Gateway.
- [Appendix B, “Information Checklists”](#) contains the pre-installation worksheets that you will need to have filled in before you start an installation or upgrade.
- [Appendix C, “Equipment List”](#) contains the information that you need to order equipment.
- [Appendix D, “Replacing the G700 Media Gateway”](#) contains a high-level procedure for replacing an installed G700 with a new one.

## Conventions

---

This section describes the conventions that we use in this book.

### Physical dimensions

- All physical dimensions in this book are in English units followed by metric units in parentheses.
- Wire gauge measurements are in AWG followed by the diameter in millimeters in parentheses.

### Terminology

*Avaya Communication Manager* is the application that provides call control and the Avaya telephony feature set. This application was referred to as *MultiVantage Software* or as *Avaya Call Processing (ACP)* in previous releases. The term *Multivantage* is still used in some CLI commands and in the Web interface. In most of these cases, it is synonymous with *Communication Manager*.

### Typography

This section describes the typographical conventions for commands, keys, user input, system output, and field names.

#### Commands

- Commands are in **constant-width bold** type.  
Example:  
Type **change-switch-time-zone** and press **Enter**.
- Command variables are in **bold italic** type when they are part of what you must type, and in *plain italic* type when they are not part of what you must type.  
Example:  
Type **ch ma *machine\_name***, where *machine\_name* is the name of the call delivery machine.

- Command options are in **bold** type inside square brackets.

Example:

At the DOS prompt, type **copybcf [-F34]**.

## Keys

- The names of keys are in **bold sans serif** type.

Example:

Use the **Down Arrow** key to scroll through the fields.

- When you must press and hold a key and then press a second or third key, we separate the names of the keys are separated with a plus sign (+).

Example:

Press **ALT+D**.

- When you must press two or more keys in sequence, we separate the names of the keys are separated with a space.

Example:

Press **Escape J**.

- When you must press a function key, we provide the function of the key in parentheses after the name of the key.

Example:

Press **F3 (Save)**.

## User input

- User input is in **bold** type, whether you must type the input, select the input from a menu, or click a button or similar element on a screen or a Web page.

Example:

- Type **exit**, and then press **Enter**.
- On the **File** menu, click **Save**.
- On the Network Gateway page, click **Configure > Hardware**.

## System output and field names

- System output and field names on the screen are in `monospaced` type.

Example:

- The system displays the following message:  
The installation is in progress.
- Type **y** in the `Message Transfer?` field.

## Downloading this book

---

You can view or download the latest version of the *Installation and Upgrades for Avaya G700 Media Gateway and Avaya S8300 Media Server*, 555-234-100, from the Avaya Web site at: <http://support.avaya.com>. You must have access to the Internet, and a copy of Acrobat Reader must be installed on your personal computer.

Avaya makes every effort to ensure that the information in this book is complete and accurate. However, information can change after we publish this book. Therefore, the Avaya Web site might also contain new product information and updates to the information in this book. You can also download these updates from the Avaya Support Web site.

## Downloading this book

To download the latest version of this book:

- 1 Access the Avaya web site at <http://support.avaya.com>.
- 2 On the left side of the page, click **Product Documentation**.
- 3 The system displays the Welcome to Product Documentation page.
- 4 On the right side of the page, type **555-234-100**, and then click **Search**.
- 5 The system displays the Product Documentation Search Results page.
- 6 Scroll down to find the latest issue number, and then click the book title that is to the right of the latest issue number.
- 7 On the next page, scroll down and click one of the following options:
  - **PDF Format** to download the book in regular PDF format
  - **ZIP Format** to download the book in zipped PDF format

## Safety labels and security alert labels

---

Observe all caution, warning, and danger statements to help prevent loss of service, equipment damage, personal injury, and security problems. This book uses the following safety labels and security alert labels:



**CAUTION:**

A caution statement calls attention to a situation that can result in harm to software, loss of data, or an interruption in service.



**WARNING:**

A warning statement calls attention to a situation that can result in harm to hardware or equipment.



 **WARNING:**

Use an ESD warning to call attention to situations that can result in ESD damage to electronic components.

 **DANGER:**

A danger statement calls attention to a situation that can result in harm to personnel.

 **SECURITY ALERT:**

A security alert calls attention to a situation that can increase the potential for unauthorized use of a telecommunications system.

## Related resources

---

For a summary of what is new in the December 2003 release of Avaya Communication Manager, see *Highlights of Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-245-704.

For more information on the Avaya G700 Media Gateway and related features, see the following books:

Title	Number
Overview for Avaya G700 Media Gateway and Avaya S8300 Media Server	555-234-200
Maintenance Commands Reference	555-245-101
Maintenance Alarms Reference	555-245-102
Maintenance Procedures	555-245-103
Quick Start: Avaya G700 Media Gateway Hardware Installation	555-233-150

## Technical assistance

---

Avaya provides the following resources for technical assistance.

### Within the United States

For help with:

- Feature administration and system applications, call the Avaya DEFINITY Helpline at 1-800-225-7585
- Maintenance and repair, call the Avaya National Customer Care Support Line at 1-800-242-2121
- Toll fraud, call Avaya Toll Fraud Intervention at 1-800-643-2353

## International

For all international resources, contact your local Avaya authorized dealer.

## Trademarks

---

All trademarks identified by the ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Ordering Documentation

---

In addition to this book, other description, installation, maintenance, and administration books, and documentation library CDs, are available.

This document (555-234-100) and any other Avaya documentation can be ordered directly from the Avaya Publications Center toll free at 1-800-457-1235 (voice) and 1-800-457-1764 (fax). International customers should use +1.207.866.6701 (voice) and +1.207.626.7269 (fax).

## Sending us comments

---

Avaya welcomes your comments about this book. To reach us by:

- Mail, send your comments to:  
Avaya Inc.  
Product Documentation Group  
Room B3-H13  
1300 W. 120 Ave.  
Westminster, CO 80234 USA
- E-mail, send your comments to:  
*document@avaya.com*
- Fax, send your comments to:  
1-303-538-1741

Ensure that you mention the name and number of this book, *Installation and Upgrades for Avaya G700 Media Gateway and Avaya S8300*, 555-234-100.

# 1 Roadmap and Reference

This chapter provides guidance on how to use this book along with connection, login, and other reference information that you will need to perform the installation and upgrade procedures in later chapters.

This Chapter is organized as follows:

- [Wizards for Installations and Upgrades](#)
- [Installation Roadmap and Task Lists](#)
- [Connection and Login Methods](#)
- [Navigational Aid for CLI Commands](#)
- [Terminal Emulation Function Keys for Communication Manager](#)

## Wizards for Installations and Upgrades

---

To save time on installations and upgrades, three distinct tools are available for your use — the Avaya Installation Wizard, the Gateway Installation Wizard, and the Upgrade Tool.

**NOTE:**

These tools do *not* replace all normal installation or upgrade procedures described in this document. However, they do automate some or many of the tasks associated with an installation or an upgrade. The tasks that these tools automatically perform are noted in subsequent chapters of this document.

### Wizard Reference Web Page

You can find the most recent versions of the wizards, as well as wizard Job Aids at <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw>.



**Tip:**

Field- and page-level online help is available with all the wizards.

### Wizard Summary

The following table shows at-a-glance when you would use each tool.

**Table Legend:**

IW= Avaya Installation Wizard  
UT = Upgrade Tool  
GIW = Gateway Installation Wizard).

Component	Use	New Installation	Upgrade Software	Upgrade Firmware
<b>S8500 or S8700</b>	as a Primary Controller	IW	IW	
<b>S8300</b>	as an LSP	IW	IW, UT*	
	as a Primary Controller	IW	IW	
<b>G350 or G700</b>	with an S8300	IW		IW, UT†
	without an S8300	GIW		UT

\* Use the UT to schedule upgrades of multiple LSPs. Use the IW on site for an immediate upgrade of a single LSP.

† Use UT to schedule upgrades of multiple gateways. Use the IW on site for an immediate upgrade of a single gateway or G700 stack.

The following table summarizes when you would use each tool and what it does for you.

If you need to:	Then use:
<p>Install new or upgrade existing S8300, S8500 or S8700 Media Servers, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The G350 or G700 that contains an S8300</li> <li>• Other G700s in the stack</li> <li>• G350/G700 media modules</li> </ul>	<p>The <i>Avaya Installation Wizard</i> (IW) on site, with a laptop connection to the Services port on the media server.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Since the source files for an upgrade are large, the IW requires that these source files be accessible (to the media server running the IW) over a high-bandwidth connection. The files could be on the media server's hard drive (ftp/pub directory), on a CD-ROM drive connected to the media server, or on the CD-ROM drive or hard drive on a technician's laptop directly connected to the media server. If the source files are available on one of these media, you could use the IW from a remote location using a dialup PPP connection to the media server (with modem enabled) running the IW.</p> <p>This wizard installs new (or upgrades existing) software on media servers and performs the initial configuration. It upgrades firmware on new or existing media gateway processors and media modules.</p> <p>You will also use the Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet, which you get from your project manager. For the S8300/G700, you may also use the Name and Number List and the Custom Template with the wizard for more comprehensive custom installations.</p>
<p>Install a new G350 or G700 that does not contain an S8300</p>	<p>The <i>Gateway Installation Wizard</i> (GIW) on site, with a laptop connection to the G350 or G700.</p> <p>This wizard configures the IP addresses for the gateway, including the gateway processors, the controller list, and the VoIP engine.</p> <p>The GIW does not install firmware on the G350 or G700 or their media modules. You can install firmware manually, or use the UT.</p>
<p>Schedule upgrades of multiple, geographically-distributed LSPs or G350/G700 gateways, all of which have the same remote primary controller — S8300, S8500, or S8700.</p>	<p>The <i>Upgrade Tool</i> (UT), running on the primary controller, using a remote network connection.</p> <p>This tool enables you to upgrade:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the software on all LSPs registered with the primary controller</li> <li>• the processor and media module firmware for all gateways currently or previously registered with the primary controller.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the customer has purchased and installed the MultiService Software Update Manager, you may wish to use it, instead, to upgrade G350 or G700 Media Gateways. However, the Software Update Manager cannot upgrade LSPs.</p>

## The Avaya Installation Wizard (IW)

You can use the Avaya Installation Wizard (IW) as a tool to assist you in the installation and upgrade processes for S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Servers and G350 and G700 Media Gateways. The Installation Wizard is designed to get you up and running in a basic installation as quickly as possible. For customized installations, optional custom templates are also available.

The Avaya Installation Wizard ships with the media server software and is accessible on the home page of the Integrated Management web interface. The most recent version of IW, as well as its documentation, can be accessed online at <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw>.

### NOTE:

To use the IW, Communication Manager Release 2.0 or later must be running on the media server (S8300, S8500, or S8700). If the correct release of Communication Manager has not been installed on the media server, you need to upgrade the software before you begin using the IW.

## What the IW Does and Does Not Do

The IW does not automate all tasks in an S8300 Media Server installation.

Of the tasks described in Chapter 3, Installing a New G700 with an S8300, the IW automates the following:

- [Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop](#) on page 111 and its subtasks
- [Install New Software on the S8300](#) on page 114 and its subtasks
- [Configure the S8300](#) on page 123
- [Configure the G700 Media Gateway](#) on page 137 and its subtasks
- “Install Communication Manager Patch Files from Your Laptop, if Any”, which is a subtask of [Install New Software on the S8300](#) on page 114
- “Administer Network Regions” for an S8300 Media Server as primary controller, which is a subtask of [Administer Communication Manager](#) on page 151.

### NOTE:

The IW administers the S8300 network region as the default, **1**.

- [Administer the Media Gateway](#) on page 161

### NOTE:

In addition, you can use the IW to upgrade media server software or gateway firmware on a previously-installed system.

The IW automates similar tasks in Chapters 4–6.

You must perform the following tasks manually, even though you are using the IW:

- Install all hardware
- Tasks in [Before Going to the Customer Site](#) on page 104
- Set custom LSP transition points when the defaults are not adequate (see Set the LSP Transition Points on page 84)

- Any tasks related to adding LSPs to the primary controller you are installing, as documented in [Administer Communication Manager](#) on page 151:
- Any tasks related to administration of the primary controller in [Administer Communication Manager](#) on page 151
- [Set Up SNMP Alarming on the G700](#) on page 166, if required

## Electronic Worksheets and Templates

To enable the IW to automatically configure and install the system, get the following Excel spreadsheet files from the project manager and load them onto your laptop:

- [Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet](#)
- [Names/Number List Template \(for S8300/G700 only\)](#)
- [Customization Template](#)

### NOTE:

Information on how to use these files is contained within the files themselves.

### ***Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet***

For greatest efficiency, obtain the Electronic Pre-Installation Worksheet (EPW), which is filled in by the customer and Avaya project manager. This worksheet is an Excel spreadsheet from which IW automatically pulls data to configure and install the S8300/S8500/S8700 Media Servers, G350/G700 Media Gateways, P330 Stack Processor, and VoiP Engines. The EPW also can be used to supply basic translations for the S8300/G700 configuration.

The default values used by the wizard can be viewed at <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw> under the "View Default Parameters" link. If the wizard defaults do not meet the customer's needs, you can use a custom template.

Once the EPW has been imported, all the values from the EPW appear as defaults in the wizard.

### ***Names/Number List Template (for S8300/G700 only)***

The Names/Number Template, like the EPW, is an Excel spreadsheet that contains user administration data. The IW pulls this data to automatically administer users on the new system. This administration includes users' names, extensions, telephone types, classes of service, languages, locations, and voice mail capability. The native display name (unicode) is included.

As each user's name and accompanying data is imported, the wizard will administer the station using the provided information along with default values for other station fields. After the import has completed, each station will be ready to be plugged into the wall jack and activated. Analog and digital phones will be ready for a TTI registration sequence. IP phones will be ready for an IP registration sequence.

### ***Customization Template***

The Customization Template is a third Excel spreadsheet that allows automatic administration of key custom Communication Manager translations. These are:

- Classes of Service
- Feature Access Codes
- Trunk Access Codes

- Telephone button assignments
- TTI codes
- Voice mail hunt group number and coverage path

## The Upgrade Tool

The LSP/Gateway Upgrade Tool allows you to schedule automatic upgrades of Local Survivable Processors (LSPs) and G350 and G700 Media Gateways from the primary controller. The primary controller can be an S8300, S8500 or an S8700. With the upgrade tool, you do not have to physically be at the LSP and gateway locations in order to perform the upgrades. Additionally, you do not have to run the upgrades one by one. You simply enter the needed information for all LSPs, G350s, and G700s into the upgrade tool. Then, at the scheduled time, the Upgrade Tool automatically upgrades the software and firmware on all the specified LSPs and gateways.

**NOTE:**

You must still complete the normal prerequisite tasks such as completing the RFA process for license files and uploading the most recent .tar file (for an LSP) to the /var/home/ftp/pub directory or uploading the most recent firmware (for a media gateway) to a TFTP server.

### You cannot use the Upgrade Tool to do the following:

- Install a new LSP or G350 or G700 Media Gateway. For each new installation, you must be on site and use the Avaya Installation Wizard (for an LSP), the Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (for a media gateway), or perform a manual installation.
- Upgrade LSPs to Avaya Communication Manager 2.0. An LSP must already have Communication Manager 2.0 or higher. Thus, the Upgrade Tool is used for upgrades to software higher than Communication Manager 2.0.
- Upgrade an active LSP (one that has taken control of calls because of a problem with the primary controller)
- Upgrade the S8300 Media Server acting as the primary controller.
- Upgrade an S8500 or S8700 Media Server.
- Upgrade P330 Expansion modules.
- Upgrade G600, G650, CMC1, SCC1, or MCC1 Media Gateways.

The Upgrade Tool ships with the media servers and is available on the home page of the media server's Maintenance Web Interface. For more information, see *Job Aid: Upgrade Tool and Worksheets*.



## The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard

Use the Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) to configure a new G350 or G700 Media Gateway that is controlled by a remote media server but does not have an S8300 installed in slot V1. The GIW allows you to configure the gateway IP addresses without having to enter CLI commands.

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) allows you to configure the G700 Media Gateway IP addresses and avoid entering P330 and MG CLI commands to configure the media gateway. Use the GIW to configure a new G700 Media Gateway that is controlled by a remote S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server and does *not* have an S8300 LSP.

**NOTE:**

The GIW allows you to configure IP addresses *only*. You must complete the normal installation tasks such as uploading the most recent firmware to a TFTP server and installing the firmware on the media gateway and its components. Also, you cannot use the GIW to configure an X330 Expansion module.

The GIW can be accessed online at <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw>. For more information, see *Job Aid: Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard and Pre-installation Worksheet*.

# Installation Roadmap and Task Lists

---

From your planning sheets, you can determine what type of installation or upgrade is involved with the G700 Media Gateway. Use the following table to determine which task list is most appropriate for your upgrade or installation.

	<b>G700 with an S8300 (Primary or LSP)</b>	<b>G700 without an S8300</b>	<b>G700 Controlled by an S8300 with IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging</b>
<b>New Installation</b>	Checklist 1 Chapter 2 Chapter 3	Checklist 2 Chapter 2 Chapter 4	See Installation Checklists in the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging documentation, available on the Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825
<b>Upgrade an Existing System</b>	<u>R1.x to R2.0:</u> Checklist 3 Chapter 5 <u>R2.0 to R2.x:</u> Checklist 4 Chapter 6	Checklist 5 Chapter 7	

## Checklist 1: Install a New G700 with an S8300 (Primary or LSP)

Use the following checklist to install a G700 Media Gateway with the following characteristics:

- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as the primary controller, or,
- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as an LSP and is controlled by an S8300, S8500, or an S8700 Media Server.

You will use Chapters 2 and 3 with this checklist.

For help with connecting to and logging in to the G700 or S8300, see [Connection Methods](#) in this chapter.

**Table 1: Install New G700 with an S8300 (Primary or LSP)**

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Installation Overview</a> on page 102	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- G700 components</li> <li>- Software and firmware files</li> <li>- Access to the S8300 and G700</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Before Going to the Customer Site</a> on page 104	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Get planning forms</li> <li>- Get the G700 serial number</li> <li>- Check FTP server for backups</li> <li>- Complete the RFA process</li> <li>- Download update (Patch) software to laptop, if necessary</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server</a> on page 69	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- On site checklist</li> <li>- Unpack and check the order</li> <li>- Install the G700</li> <li>- Cable multiple units</li> <li>- Attach ground conductors</li> </ul>
<a href="#">On-Site Preparation for the Installation</a> on page 108	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Install new license file, if necessary</li> <li>- Install authentication file, if necessary</li> <li>- Save translations</li> <li>- Determine software to install</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Install New Software on the S8300</a> on page 114	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Set time, date, and timezone</li> <li>- Install new software</li> <li>- Make the Upgrade Permanent</li> <li>- Install Communication Manager Update (patch), if any</li> <li>- Install IA770 update (patch), if any</li> </ul>
<i>1 of 3</i>	

**Table 1: Install New G700 with an S8300 (Primary or LSP) *Continued***

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Configure the S8300</a> on page 123	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Backup data</li> <li>- Set server identities</li> <li>- Configure Ethernet interfaces</li> <li>- Configure LSP</li> <li>- Configure Ethernet adjuncts</li> <li>- Configure External DNS server</li> <li>- Set Static network routes, if necessary</li> <li>- Configure network time server</li> <li>- Set modem interface</li> <li>- Update system</li> <li>- Load Key files, if necessary</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Configure the G700 Media Gateway</a> on page 137	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Assign IP addresses to the G700 processors</li> <li>- Set up IP routing for the stack</li> <li>- Set up default IP route for the G700</li> <li>- Check IP connections</li> <li>- Set up controller list for the G700</li> <li>- Configure X330 Expansion Module, if necessary</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Install New Firmware on the G700</a> on page 145	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Verify contents of the tftp directory</li> <li>- Determine which firmware to install</li> <li>- Install firmware on the P330 stack processor</li> <li>- Install firmware on the G700 media gateway processor</li> <li>- Install firmware on the media modules</li> <li>- Install firmware on other G700s in the stack or network, if any</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Administer Communication Manager</a> on page 151	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Reboot the system</li> <li>- Assign node names, if necessary</li> <li>- Administer network regions</li> <li>- Assign LSPs to network regions</li> <li>- Administer IP interfaces</li> <li>- Administer the LSP form</li> <li>- Add media gateway</li> <li>- Verify changes</li> <li>- Enable announcements, if necessary</li> <li>- Save translations</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Considerations for IP Phones Supported by a Local Survivable Processor</a> on page 164	
<a href="#">Set Up SNMP Alarming on the G700</a> on page 166	

**Table 1: Install New G700 with an S8300 (Primary or LSP) *Continued***

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Complete the Installation of S8300 (if the Primary Controller)</a> on page 168	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Register the system</li> <li>- Back up the system</li> <li>- Check planning documentation</li> <li>- Connect and administer test endpoints</li> <li>- Complete electrical installation</li> <li>- Enable adjunct systems</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Complete the Installation Process</a> on page 169	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check planning documentation</li> <li>- Connect and administer test endpoints</li> <li>- Complete electrical installation</li> <li>- Enable adjunct systems</li> </ul>
<i>3 of 3</i>	

## Checklist 2: Install a New G700 without an S8300

Use the following checklist to install a G700 Media Gateway with the following characteristics:

- The G700 does not have an S8300 and is controlled by an external S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server.

You will use Chapters 2 and 4 with this checklist.

For help with connecting to and logging in to the G700, see [Connection Methods](#) in this chapter.

**Table 2: Install a New G700 without an S8300**

Major Task	Subtasks
<a href="#">Before Going to the Customer Site</a> on page 174	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Get planning forms</li><li>- Get the G700 serial number</li><li>- Set up TFTP server, if necessary</li><li>- Download firmware files</li></ul>
<a href="#">Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server</a> on page 69	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- On site checklist</li><li>- Unpack and check the order</li><li>- Install the G700</li><li>- Cable multiple units</li><li>- Attach ground conductors</li></ul>
<a href="#">Configure the G700</a> on page 178	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Assign IP addresses to the G700 processors</li><li>- Set up IP routing for the stack</li><li>- Set up default IP route for the G700</li><li>- Check IP connections</li><li>- Set up controller list for the G700</li><li>- Configure X330 Expansion Module, if necessary</li></ul>
<a href="#">Prepare to Install Firmware on the G700</a> on page 191	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Verify contents of the tftp directory</li><li>- Determine which firmware to install</li></ul>
on page 193	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Install firmware on the P330 stack processor</li><li>- Install firmware on the G700 media gateway processor</li><li>- Install firmware on the media modules</li><li>- Install firmware on other G700s in the stack or network, if any</li></ul>

1 of 2

**Table 2: Install a New G700 without an S8300 *Continued***

Major Task	Subtasks
<a href="#">Administer Communication Manager</a> on page 198	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Reboot the system</li> <li>- Assign node names, if necessary</li> <li>- Administer network regions</li> <li>- Assign LSPs to network regions</li> <li>- Administer IP interfaces</li> <li>- Administer the LSP form</li> <li>- Add media gateway</li> <li>- Verify changes</li> <li>- Enable announcements, if necessary</li> <li>- Save translations</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Complete the Installation Process</a> on page 209	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check planning documentation</li> <li>- Connect and administer test endpoints</li> <li>- Complete electrical installation</li> <li>- Enable adjunct systems</li> </ul>
<i>2 of 2</i>	

### Checklist 3

## Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R1.x to R2.0)

Use the following checklist to upgrade a G700 Media Gateway with the following characteristics:

- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as the primary controller.  
or,
- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as an LSP and is controlled by either an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server.

You will use Chapter 5 with this checklist. For help with connecting to and logging in to the G700 or S8300, see [Connection Methods](#) in this chapter.

**Table 3: Task List to Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R1.x to R2.0)**

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Before Going to the Customer Site</a> on page 214	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Get the USB CD-ROM drive</li> <li>- Fill in EPW (if upgrading from 1.1)</li> <li>- Get planning form</li> <li>- Get the G700 serial number</li> <li>- Check number of allocated ports</li> <li>- Check FTP server for back up</li> <li>- Get software/firmware files</li> <li>- Download update (Patch) software to laptop, if necessary</li> <li>- Complete the RFA process</li> </ul>
<a href="#">On-site Preparation for the Upgrade</a> on page 219	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check current software release</li> <li>- Pre-Upgrade tasks — If the Target S8300 is the Primary Controller</li> <li>- Get IA770 data and stop IA770</li> <li>- Back up recover system files</li> <li>- Record configuration information</li> <li>- Install the pre-upgrade update</li> <li>- Back up the system files</li> </ul>

*1 of 2*



**Table 3: Task List to Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R1.x to R2.0) *Continued***

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Upgrade the S8300</a> on page 227	Install the Upgrade Software: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Copy RP files to hard drive</li> <li>- Install the RP software</li> <li>- Set telnet parameters</li> <li>- Install the upgrade software</li> <li>- Verify software version</li> <li>- Copy licence and authentication files to the S8300</li> <li>- Configure S8300 network parameters</li> <li>- If upgrading from a pre-1.2 release</li> <li>- Restore Linux Migration backup files</li> <li>- Disable messaging</li> <li>- Verify date and time</li> <li>- Install post-upgrade patch, if necessary</li> <li>- Verify S8300 configuration</li> <li>- Install license file</li> <li>- Install authentication file, if necessary</li> <li>- Save translations (if not using IA770)</li> <li>- Verify operation</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Upgrade the Firmware on the G700</a> on page 250	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Decide whether to use the Installation Wizard</li> </ul> If not using the Wizard: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Verify contents of the tftp directory</li> <li>- Determine which firmware to install</li> <li>- Install firmware on the P330 stack processor</li> <li>- Install firmware on the G700 media gateway processor</li> <li>- Install firmware on the media modules</li> <li>- Install firmware on other G700s in the stack or network, if any</li> <li>- Install and restart IA770, if being used</li> <li>- Install IA770 update (patch), if any</li> <li>- Save translations (if using IA770)</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)</a> on page 260	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check media modules</li> <li>- Enable scheduled maintenance</li> <li>- Busyout trunks</li> <li>- Check for translation corruption</li> <li>- Resolve alarms</li> <li>- Re-enable alarm origination</li> <li>- Back up system</li> <li>- Restart LSPs, if any</li> </ul>

## Checklist 4

### Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R2.0 to R2.x)

Use the following checklist to upgrade a G700 Media Gateway with the following characteristics:

- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as the primary controller.  
or,
- The G700 has an S8300 Media Server configured as an LSP and is controlled by either an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server.

You will use Chapter 6 with this checklist. For help with connecting to and logging in to the G700 or S8300, see [Connection Methods](#) in this chapter.

**Table 4: Task List to Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R2.0 to R2.x)**

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Before Going to the Customer Site</a> on page 266	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Get planning form</li> <li>- Get the G700 serial number</li> <li>- Check number of allocated ports</li> <li>- Check FTP server for back up</li> <li>- Get software/firmware files</li> <li>- Complete the RFA process</li> <li>- Download update (Patch) software to laptop, if necessary</li> </ul>
<a href="#">On-site Preparation for the Upgrade</a> on page 270	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Pre-Upgrade tasks — If the Target S8300 is the Primary Controller</li> <li>- Get IA770 data and stop IA770</li> <li>- Back up recover system files</li> <li>- Install new license and authentication files, if necessary</li> <li>- Save translations, if new license and/or authentication files installed</li> <li>- Transfer files from CD or laptop</li> </ul>
<a href="#">Upgrade the S8300</a> on page 282	Install the Upgrade Software: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Decide whether to use the Wizard</li> <li>- Manual installation</li> <li>- Configure S8300</li> <li>- Make the upgrade permanent</li> <li>- Install Communication Manager update (patch), if any</li> <li>- Install IA770 update (patch), if any</li> </ul>
<i>1 of 2</i>	

**Table 4: Task List to Upgrade an Existing G700 with an S8300 (R2.0 to R2.x) *Continued***

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Upgrade the Firmware on the G700</a> on page 291	- Decide whether to use the Installation Wizard If not using the Wizard: - Verify contents of the tftp directory - Determine which firmware to install - Install firmware on the P330 stack processor - Install firmware on the G700 media gateway processor - Install firmware on the media modules - Install firmware on other G700s in the stack or network, if any
<a href="#">Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)</a> on page 298	- Check media modules - Enable scheduled maintenance - Busy out trunks - Check for translation corruption - Resolve alarms - Re-enable alarm origination - Back up system - Restart LSPs, if any

## Checklist 5: Upgrade an Existing G700 without an S8300

Use the following checklist to upgrade a G700 Media Gateway with the following characteristics:

- The G700 does not have an S8300 and is controlled by an external S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server.

You will use Chapter 7 with this checklist. For help with connecting to and logging in to the G700, see [Connection Methods](#) in this chapter.

**Table 5: Task List to Upgrade an Existing G700 without an S8300**

Major Tasks	Subtasks
<a href="#">Before Going to the Customer Site</a> on page 303	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Get planning forms</li><li>- Get the G700 serial number</li><li>- Set up TFTP server, if necessary</li><li>- Download firmware files</li></ul>
<a href="#">Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server</a> on page 69	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- On site checklist</li><li>- Unpack and check the order</li><li>- Install the G700</li><li>- Cable multiple units</li><li>- Attach ground conductors</li></ul>
<a href="#">On-Site Preparation for the Upgrade</a> on page 307	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Verify contents of the tftp directory</li><li>- Determine which firmware to install</li></ul>
<a href="#">Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway</a> on page 310	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Install firmware on the P330 stack processor</li><li>- Install firmware on the G700 media gateway processor</li><li>- Install firmware on the media modules</li><li>- Install firmware on other G700s in the stack or network, if any</li></ul>

# Connection and Login Methods

---

This section describes the various ways of connecting to, and logging into, the Avaya™ S8300 Media Server and the Avaya™ G700 Media Gateway. Use this chapter as a reference for the other chapters in this book.

The procedures in this book assume that you are connecting to the S8300 and/or the G700 with an Avaya Services laptop. However, the methods apply for any type of PC.

This chapter is organized with the following sections:

- [Connection Overview](#)
- [Laptop Configuration for a Direct Connection to the Services Port](#)
- [Connection Methods](#)
- [Log in Methods](#)
- [Navigational Aid for CLI Commands](#)

## Connection Overview

### Review Physical Access Methods

- 1 Check the following figure for the location of the S8300 Services port.

## Summary of S8300 and G700 Access Methods and Tasks

### Initial Configuration and Maintenance S8300

#### Onsite Tasks:

1. Configure media server
2. Install license and authentication files, and upgrade software
3. Verification testing
4. Run diagnostics
5. Upgrade software and configuration

#### Tools:

1. Avaya Installation Wizard
2. Web Interface
3. Command Line Interface
4. System Access Terminal (SAT)

### System Admin Computer or Technician Laptop Administration via Corporate LAN

#### Tasks:

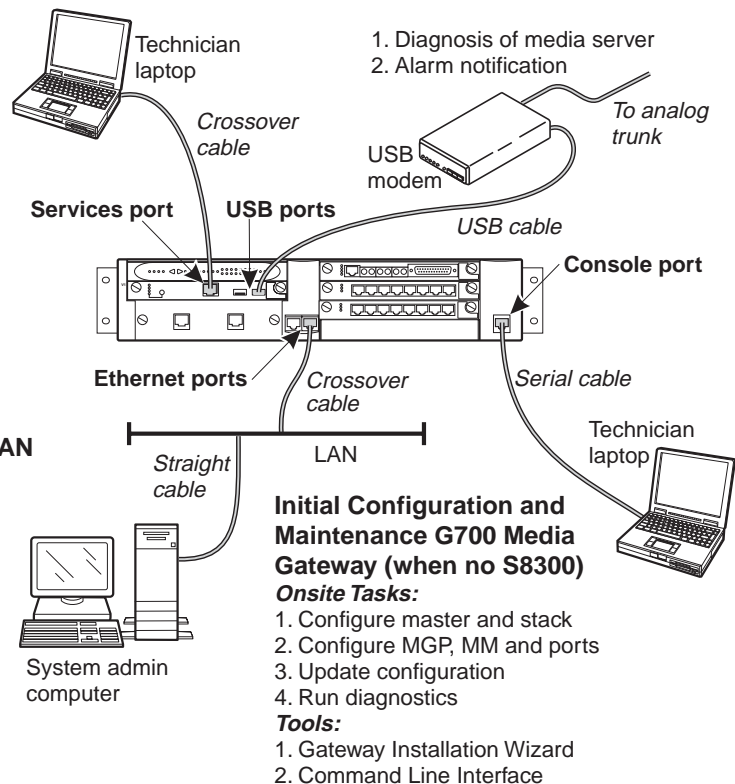
1. Backup and restore data
2. Upgrade and configuration
3. Administer network
4. Admin Telephony features

#### Tools:

1. Avaya Installation Wizard
2. Web Interface
3. Native Configuration Manager
4. System Access Terminal (SAT)

### Remote Access of S8300 and G700

1. Diagnosis of media server
2. Alarm notification



### Initial Configuration and Maintenance G700 Media Gateway (when no S8300)

#### Onsite Tasks:

1. Configure master and stack
2. Configure MGP, MM and ports
3. Update configuration
4. Run diagnostics

#### Tools:

1. Gateway Installation Wizard
2. Command Line Interface

cydcacc2 KLC 091003

- 2 If you are installing or upgrading a G700 that does not have an internal S8300, check for the location of the ethernet ports (EXT 1 / EXT 2). You will need to connect the G700 to the customer's LAN via one of these ports for loading the latest software.

## Laptop Configuration for a Direct Connection to the Services Port

There is a special configuration that you need to use for a direct connection to the S8300 or S8700 Services port.

### **NOTE:**

Avaya Service technicians can use the NetSwitcher program to configure alternate network profiles so they can easily connect to a number of different systems. NetSwitcher configures a profile for each type of system for easy future access without requiring you to reset TCP/IP properties or browser settings manually. NetSwitcher is available from an Avaya Services CTSA.

### Settings for a Direct Connection to S8300, S8500, or S8700 Services Port

A laptop connected directly to the Services Ethernet interface on the S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server requires a specific configuration as described in this section.

On any operating system, the network settings need to reflect the following:

- *TCP/IP properties.* Set the laptop's TCP/IP properties as follows:
  - IP address: **192.11.13.5**
  - Subnet mask: **255.255.255.252**
- *Browser settings.* Configure the browser for a direct connection to the Internet. Do *not* use proxies.
- *Server address.* Access the S8300 media server using the URL <http://192.11.13.6>

The names of the dialog boxes and buttons vary on different operating systems and browser releases. Use your computer's help system if needed to locate the correct place to enter this information.

The S8300 Media Server uses the same access configuration as an Avaya S8100 Media Server with a CMC1 or G600 Media Gateway. If you already have a NetSwitcher profile for the S8100 Media Server (formerly called DEFINITY One), try using that profile first before configuring a new one.

### **Set TCP/IP properties on Windows systems**

TCP/IP administration varies among Windows systems as described below.

### **NOTE:**

Make a record of any IP addresses, DNS servers, or WINS entries that you change when you configure your services computer. Unless you use the NetSwitcher program or an equivalent, you will need to restore these entries to connect to other networks.

### **Check Your Version of Windows**

- 1** Log in to your laptop, and double-click the **My Computer** icon on your desktop.  
The My Computer window opens.
- 2** Click **Help** on the My Computer window's toolbar.  
The Help menu opens and displays the version of Windows installed on your laptop.

- 3 Follow one of the two procedures below, depending on your operating system.

**Change TCP/IP Properties and Network Settings (Windows 2000 and XP)**

- 1 Right-click My Network Places on your desktop or under the Start menu in XP.
- 2 Select **Properties** to display the Network and Dial-up Connections window.  
Windows should have automatically detected the Ethernet card in your system and created a LAN connection for you. More than one connection may appear.
- 3 Right-click the correct **Local Area Connection** from the list in the window.
- 4 Select **Properties** to display the Local Area Connection Properties dialog box.
- 5 Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**
- 6 Click the **Properties** button. The Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties screen appears.
- 7 On the General tab, select the radio button **Use the following IP address**. Enter the following:
  - IP address: **192.11.13.5**
  - Subnet mask: **255.255.255.252**

**NOTE:**

Record any IP addresses, DNS settings, or WINS entries that you change. You may need to restore them later to connect to another network.

- 8 **Disable DNS service as follows:**
  - a Click the radio button labeled **Use the following DNS server addresses**. The entries for Preferred DNS server and Alternate DNS server should both be blank.
  - b Click the **Advanced** button at the bottom of the screen. The Advanced TCP/IP Settings screen appears.
  - c Click the **DNS** tab. Verify that no DNS server is administered (the address field should be blank).
- 9 **Disable WINS Resolution as follows:**
  - a Click the **WINS** tab. Make sure WINS is not administered (the address field should be blank).
  - b Click **OK**. If warned about an empty primary WINS address, click **Yes** to continue.
- 10 Click **OK** twice to accept the address information and close the TCP/IP and Local Area Connection Properties dialog boxes.
- 11 Reboot the system if directed to do so.

After you have made these changes to your computer's network configuration information, the Network and Dial-up Connections window shows the status of the Local Area Connection:

- Enabled appears when the laptop's Ethernet cable is connected to the server.
- Disabled or unplugged appears if the NIC is not connected to anything.

**Change TCP/IP properties (Windows 95, 98, NT 4.0, and Millennium Edition [ME])**

- 1 Access your computer's network information. On your desktop:
  - *Windows 95, 98, and NT:* Right-click **Network Neighborhood**.
  - *Windows ME:* Right-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Select **Properties** to display the Network dialog box.



- 3** Locate the TCP/IP properties as follows:
  - *Windows 95, 98, and ME:* On the **Configuration** tab, scroll through the installed network components list to the TCP/IP part of the devices list. Select the TCP/IP device that corresponds to your Ethernet card.
  - *Windows NT:* On the Protocols tab, select **TCP/IP** in the installed network components list.
- 4** Select the **Properties** button.
- 5** In the TCP/IP Properties box, click the **IP Address** tab.
- 6** Click the radio button to **Specify an IP address**, and enter the following:
  - IP address: **192.11.13.5**
  - Subnet mask: **255.255.255.252**

**NOTE:**  
Record any IP addresses, DNS settings, or WINS entries that you change. You may need to restore them later to connect to another network.
- 7** Disable DNS service as follows:
  - *Windows 95, 98, and Me:* Click the **DNS Configuration** tab. Verify that the **Disable DNS** radio button is selected.
  - *Windows NT:* Click the **DNS** tab.
    - If any IP addresses appear under DNS Service Search Order, make a note of them in case you need to restore them later.
    - Select each IP address in turn and click the **Remove** button.
- 8** Disable WINS Resolution as follows:
  - *Windows 95, 98, and Me:* Click the **WINS Configuration** tab. Verify that the **Disable WINS Resolution** radio button is selected.
  - *Windows NT:* Click the **WINS Address** tab.
    - If any IP addresses appear for the Primary and Secondary WINS servers, make a note of them in case you need to restore them later.
    - Clear each server entry.
    - Clear the checkbox for **Enable DNS for WINS Resolution**.
- 9** Click OK twice to accept the address information and close the Network dialog box.
- 10** Reboot the system if directed to do so.

### ***Disable/bypass proxy servers in browser***

If you are connecting a laptop directly to the Services Ethernet interface on the S8300 faceplate, you must either disable or bypass proxy servers as described below.

#### **NOTE:**

The Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) browser is recommended. If you use IE, it must be version 5.5 or higher. You can use Netscape, but some features of the web interface may not work properly. If you use Netscape, it must be version 6.2 or higher.

#### ***To check or change proxy settings:***

- 1** Open your Internet browser.
- 2** Verify that you have a direct connection with no proxies as follows:

#### ***For Internet Explorer***

- a** Select **Tools > Internet Options**.
- b** Click the **Connections** tab.
- c** Click the **LAN Settings** button.
- d** If **Use a proxy server for your LAN** is not selected, no change is necessary; click **Cancel** to exit.
- e** If **Use a proxy server for your LAN** is selected, you can:
  - deselect it and click **OK** to exit
  - or you can leave it selected and configure your browser to bypass the proxy server whenever you are connected to the S8300 services port as follows:
    - click **Advanced**
    - Type **192.11.13.6** in the Exceptions box. If there are other entries in this box, add to the list of entries and separate entries with a “;”.
    - Click **OK** to exit.

#### ***For Netscape***

- a** Select **Edit > Preferences**.
- b** Under Category, click **Advanced**.
- c** Click **Proxies**.
- d** If **Direct connection to the Internet** is selected, no change is necessary; click **Cancel** to exit.
- e** If **Direct connection to the Internet** is not selected, you can:
  - select it and click **OK** to exit;
  - or you can leave it unselected and configure your browser to bypass the proxy server whenever you are connected to the S8300 services port as follows:
    - Select **Manual Proxy Configuration** and click **View**
    - Type **192.11.13.6** in the Exceptions box (or in the **No Proxy for:** box in later versions of Netscape). If there are other entries in this box, add to the list of entries and separate entries with a “;”.
    - Click **OK** to exit.

## Connection Methods

### Connect Laptop to Services Port of S8300

**To connect your laptop directly to the S8300 Media Server:**

- 1** Make sure your laptop meets the hardware and software requirements.
- 2** Plug an Ethernet crossover cable (MDI to MDI-X) into the 10/100 BaseT Ethernet network interface card (NIC) on your laptop.
  - Crossover cables of various lengths are commercially available.
  - See the following table for pinout connections if needed. Crossover of the transmit and receive pairs (as shown) is required.

**Crossover cable pinout chart**

Pin to S8300 Services Port	Connects to	Pin to Laptop Ethernet card
8		8
7		7
6		2
5		5
4		4
3		1
2		6
1		3

- 3** Connect the other end of the crossover cable to the Services port on the front of the S8300.
- 4** If your laptop is configured with the correct network settings, you can now open your Internet browser or start a Telnet session and log in. When accessing the server from a directly connected laptop, always type the following IP address in the browser's Address or Location field to access the server: **192.11.13.6**

### Connect Laptop to the G700 Serial Port

To configure a G700 that *does not have an S8300*, you may need to set up a direct connection from your laptop's serial port to the G700 Console (serial) port.

**To connect a laptop directly to the serial port on the G700 Media Gateway:**

- 1** For a stacked configuration, locate the device that contains the master controller for the stack. Check the LED panel on the upper left of each G700 or P330 device in the stack as follows:
  - G700 Media Gateway: a lit **MSTR** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.
  - A non-G700 P330 device: a lit **SYS** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.

- 2 Connect the RS-232 serial cable and DB-9 adapter cable provided with the G700 between your laptop and the G700:
  - Attach one end of the RS-232 cable to the RJ-45 jack on the front of the G700 that is the stack master. The serial port is on the lower right side of the chassis, labeled **Console**.
  - Plug the other end of the RS-232 cable into the RJ-45 jack on the DB-9 adapter cable.
  - Connect the other end of the DB-9 adapter cable to the 9-pin serial port on your laptop.
- 3 Use a serial-connection program such as HyperTerminal to access the P330 stack processor.

## Connect Laptop to Customer LAN

To connect to the customer's LAN, either on site or remotely over the Internet, your PC must be assigned an IP address on the LAN. The IP address can be a static address on the customer's LAN that you enter in the TCP/IP properties or it can be assigned dynamically with DHCP. Ask the customer how they want you to make the connection.

## Connect the External Modem to the S8300 Media Server:

Each S8300 Media Server requires a Universal Serial Bus (USB) modem for maintenance access and to call out an alarm. The external modem may be connected to the S8300 Media Server through a universal serial bus (USB) connection, providing dial-up access. The modem requires its own external analog line.

- The modem type is not optional and must be the specific modem that is shipped with the S8300.
- The remote connection should support a data speed of at least 33.6 Kbps.
- The remote PC must be administered for PPP connections in order to connect through a modem.

A dial-up connection is typically used only for services support of the server, not for routine administration. If the Server is administered to report OSS alarms, it uses the same line for alarm notification. The server cannot report any new alarms while this line is in use.

- 1 Connect one end of the modem's USB cable to an available USB port on the S8300 Media Server's faceplate. Either USB1 or USB2 can be used.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the external modem.
- 3 Connect the modem to an external analog line.

### **NOTE:**

The modem that is shipped with the S8300 obtains its power from the USB interface. There is no power connection.

- 4 Verify operation as instructed by the modem's documentation.
- 5 To enable the modem, access the S8300 Media Server's Maintenance Web Pages (see [Log in to the S8300 Web Interface from Your Laptop](#) on page 57), and click Enable/Disable Modem on the main menu  
The system displays the Enable/Disable Modem window.

- 6** Click the radio button for one of the following:
  - Enable modem for one incoming call — use this option if you want to provide one-time access to the Media Server over the modem.
  - Enable modem for unlimited incoming calls — use this option if you want to provide regular dial-up access to the Media Server for Services personnel or some other reason.

The modem is now ready to receive calls.

## Set up Windows for Modem Connection to the Media Server (Windows 2000 or XP)

### NOTE:

The remote dial-up PC must be configured for PPP access. Also, Avaya Terminal Emulator does *not* support Windows XP.

- 1** Right-click **My Network Places** and click **Properties**.
- 2** Click **Make New Connection** and follow the Network Connection Wizard:
- 3** Select **Dial-up to private network** on the **Network Connection Type** screen.
- 4** In the **Phone number** field, enter the appropriate telephone number inserting special digits such as 9 and 1 or \*70, if necessary.
- 5** On the Connection Availability screen, click **For all users** or **Only for myself**, as appropriate.
- 6** On the Completing the Network Connection Wizard screen, type the name you want to use for this connection. This name will appear in the Network and Dial-up Connections list.
- 7** Check the **Add a shortcut to my desktop**, if desired, and click **Finish**.
- 8** If a Connect screen appears, click **Cancel**.

## Configure the Remote PC for PPP Modem Connection (Windows 2000 or XP, Terminal Emulator, or ASA)

- 1** On your PC's desktop, right-click **My Network Places** and click **Properties**.  
The system deploys the Network and Dial-up Connections window.
- 2** Double click the connection name you made in the previous task, [Set up Windows for Modem Connection to the Media Server \(Windows 2000 or XP\)](#).

### NOTE:

Depending on your system, the Connect screen may appear, from which you must select **Properties**.

- 3** Click the **Security** tab.
- 4** Select the **Advanced (custom settings)** radio button.
- 5** Check the **Show terminal window** checkbox.
- 6** Click the **Networking** tab.
- 7** In the Components box, verify that Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and Client for Microsoft Networks are both checked.
- 8** Select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and click **Properties**.

- 9** Click the **Advanced** button.
- 10** Uncheck (clear) the **Use default gateway on remote network** box.
- 11** Click **OK** three times to exit and save the changes.

## **Use Windows for PPP Modem Connection (Windows 2000 or XP)**

### **NOTE:**

To access the system, you may need RAS access and ASG Mobile access.

- 1** Return to the Network and Dial-up Connections window and right-click the connection you just created.
- 2** Select **Connect**.
- 3** Leave the User Name, Password, and Domain fields blank. If the Dial field is blank, enter the appropriate telephone number.
- 4** Click the Dial button. When the media server's modem answers, the system displays the After Dial Terminal window.
- 5** Log on to the LAN.
  - a** Enter your remote access login name and password.
  - b** When the **Start PPP Now!** message appears, click **Done**.

The system displays a small double-computer icon in the lower right portion of your screen.
- 6** Double click the double-computer icon.
- 7** The system displays the connection's Dialup Status box.
- 8** Click on the Details tab.
- 9** Note the **Server** IP address.
- 10** Open a telnet session to the S8300:

Type **telnet <ip-address>**, where <ip-address> is the Server IP address as noted in the Dialup Status box from [Step 9](#).
- 11** Access SAT or use the CLI commands as needed.

## **Use Avaya Terminal Emulator for LAN Connection to Communication Manager**

You can download the Avaya Terminal Emulator from the Integrated Management main menu. Simply click **Download** next to the Administration menu item and follow the instructions.

Once the Terminal Emulator is installed on your PC, use the following steps to establish a LAN connection to your Media Server.

### **NOTE:**

The remote dial-up PC must be configured for PPP access.

- 1** Double-click the Terminal Emulator icon off of your desktop. Alternatively, go to the Start menu, select Programs, then select Avaya, and finally select Terminal Emulator.  
The system displays the Terminal Emulator.
- 2** From the menu bar across the top of the screen, select **Phones**, then select **Connection List**.  
The system displays the Connections window.
- 3** From the menu bar across the top, select **Connection**, then select **New Connection**.  
The system displays the Connection Settings window.
- 4** Put in a name for the connection. Usually, this will be the name of your Media Server.
- 5** In the Host window, click **Telnet**.
- 6** Click the **Emulation** tab at the top.  
The system displays the Emulation tab.
- 7** From the Emulator dragdown box, select the emulator you desire, usually 513BCT (default), AT&T 4410, AT&T or DECVT100.
- 8** In the Keyboard window, select **pbx**.
- 9** Click the **Network** tab.  
The system displays the Network tab.
- 10** In the IP address field, type the IP address of the Media Server.
- 11** In the TCP/IP port number field, leave **23** if you want to log in at the Linux command line. Type **5023** if you want to log in directly to the Communication Manager SAT command line.
- 12** Click **OK**.  
The Connection Settings window disappears.
- 13** On the Connections window, double-click the name of the connection you just set up.  
If you used port 5023, the Login prompt for the Communication Manager software appears. If you used port 23, the Login prompt for the S8300 Linux software appears.
- 14** Log in to Communication Manager to access the SAT command prompt screen. If you are logging in as craft, you log in to the S8300 Linux software. Then, see [Open the Replace variable w/ ProductName SAT Screens](#) on page 62.

## Use Avaya Terminal Emulator for Modem Connection to Communication Manager

You can download the Avaya Terminal Emulator from the main menu for Integrated Management. Simply click **Download** next to the Administration menu item and follow the instructions.

Once the Terminal Emulator is installed on your PC, use the following steps to establish a LAN connection to your Media Server.

- 1** Double-click the Terminal Emulator icon off of your desktop. Alternatively, go to the Start menu, select Programs, then select Avaya, and finally select Terminal Emulator.  
The system displays the Terminal Emulator.
- 2** From the menu bar across the top of the screen, select **Phones**, then select **Connection List**.  
The system displays the Connections window.

- 3** From the menu bar across the top, select **Connection**, then select **New Connection**.  
The system displays the Connection Settings window.
- 4** Put in a name for the connection. Usually, this will be the name of your Media Server.
- 5** In the Host window, click **Telnet**.
- 6** Click the **Emulation** tab at the top.  
The system displays the Emulation tab.
- 7** From the Emulator dragdown box, select the emulator you desire, usually 513BCT (default), AT&T 4410, AT&T or DECVT100.
- 8** In the Keyboard window, select **pbx**.
- 9** Click the **Modem** tab.  
The system displays the Modem tab.
- 10** In the IP address field, type the IP address of the connection's Dialup Status box as noted in [Step 9](#) on [page 54](#).
- 11** In the TCP/IP port number field, leave **23** if you want to log in at the Linux command line. Type **5023** if you want to log in directly to the Communication Manager SAT command line.
- 12** In the Modem field, use the dragdown box to select the type of modem that your PC uses.
- 13** In the Serial port field, select the COM port you are using for your modem connection.
- 14** In the Baud rate field, select 9500 from the dragdown box.
- 15** Click the Dial Numbers tab.  
The system displays the Display Numbers tab.
- 16** Type the phone number of the Media Server as appropriate. Enter 1 in the Country Code field for long-distance.
- 17** Click OK.
- 18** On the Connections window, double-click the name of the connection you just set up.  
The PC dials up the Media Server, and when connected, the login prompt for the Communication Manager software appears.
- 19** Log in to Communication Manager to access the SAT command prompt screen. If you are logging in as craft, you log in to the S8300 Linux software. Then, see [Open the Replace variable w/ ProductName SAT Screens](#) on page 62.

## Log in Methods

This section describes how to log on to the S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Servers using Telnet or the built-in Web Interface and how to start a SAT session. These procedures assume:

- You have a crossover cable directly connected from your laptop to the Services port on the media server and your laptop is configured for a direct connection
- Or, you are connected to the S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server over the customer's LAN, either remotely or on site. In this case, your laptop must be configured to connect to the customer's LAN and you would use the LAN IP address of the S8300 instead of 192.11.13.6.

The last procedure in this section describes logging in to the P330 stack processor when you have a direct serial connection to the G700 Console port.



## Log in to the Media Server from Your Laptop using Telnet

### To run telnet:

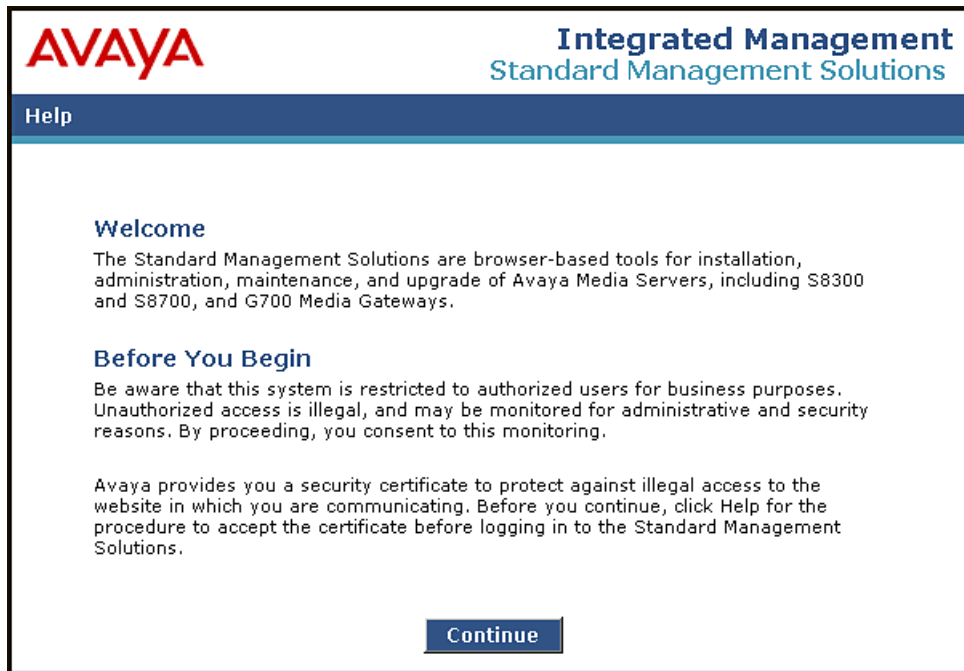
- 1 Make sure you have an active Ethernet or serial connection from your computer to the Media Server.
- 2 Access the telnet program; for example:
  - On a Windows system, go to the **Start** menu and select **Run**.
  - Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** to access the media server CLI.
- 3 When the login prompt appears, type the appropriate user name (such as **cust** or **craft**).
- 4 When prompted, enter the appropriate password.
- 5 If you log in as **craft**, you are prompted to suppress alarm origination. Generally you should accept the default value (yes).
- 6 Enter your terminal type. Accept the default value, or enter the appropriate type for your computer. For example, you may use type **ntt**, a terminal type available for Windows NT4.0 or Windows 98. For Windows 2000, use **w2ktt**.
- 7 If prompted for a high-priority session, typically answer **n**.  
The system displays the telnet prompt. It may take the form `<username@devicename>`.

## Log in to the S8300 Web Interface from Your Laptop

### To run the Web Interface:

- 1 Open Internet Explorer (5.5 or later) on your computer.
- 2 In the Address (or Location) field of your browser, type the **192.11.13.6** (or, for a LAN connection, the IP address of the media server on the customer LAN) and press **Enter**.  
*If your browser does not have a valid security certificate, you will see a warning screen and instructions to load the security certificate.*

**3** The system displays the Welcome screen.

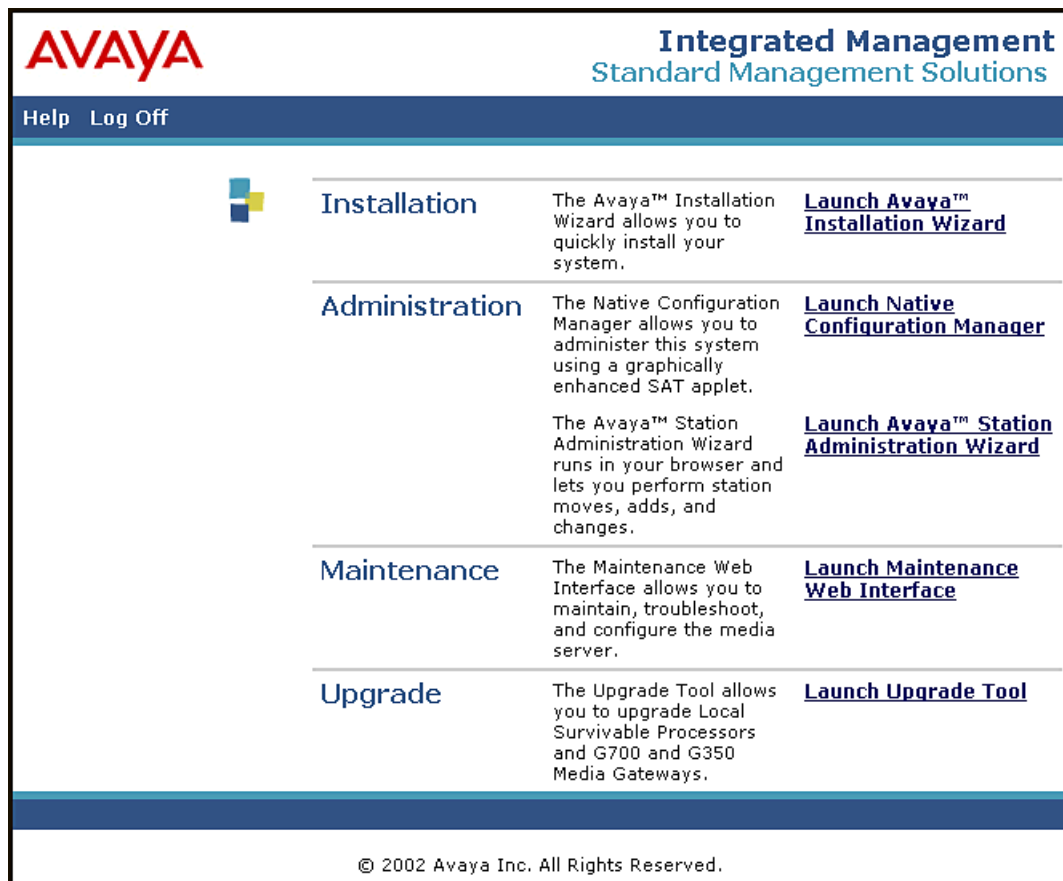



- 4 Click the **Continue** button.
- 5 Accept the Client Authentication and Security Certificate to access the Login screen.  
The system displays the Login screen.

The screenshot shows the Avaya Integrated Management Standard Management Solutions interface. At the top left is the AVAYA logo. At the top right is the text "Integrated Management Standard Management Solutions". Below this is a dark blue navigation bar with the word "Help" on the left. The main content area is white and contains a blue-tinted "Logon" box. Inside this box, there are two input fields: "Logon ID" with the text "craft" entered, and "Password" which is empty. Below these fields is a blue "Logon" button. At the bottom of the page, there is a dark blue footer bar with the text "© 2002 Avaya Inc. All Rights Reserved."

- 6 Log in as **craft**.
- 7 Select **yes** for Suppress Alarm Origination.

The system displays the main menu for the Integrated Management Suite.



AVAYA		Integrated Management Standard Management Solutions	
Help Log Off			
	<b>Installation</b>	The Avaya™ Installation Wizard allows you to quickly install your system.	<a href="#">Launch Avaya™ Installation Wizard</a>
	<b>Administration</b>	The Native Configuration Manager allows you to administer this system using a graphically enhanced SAT applet.  The Avaya™ Station Administration Wizard runs in your browser and lets you perform station moves, adds, and changes.	<a href="#">Launch Native Configuration Manager</a>  <a href="#">Launch Avaya™ Station Administration Wizard</a>
	<b>Maintenance</b>	The Maintenance Web Interface allows you to maintain, troubleshoot, and configure the media server.	<a href="#">Launch Maintenance Web Interface</a>
	<b>Upgrade</b>	The Upgrade Tool allows you to upgrade Local Survivable Processors and G700 and G350 Media Gateways.	<a href="#">Launch Upgrade Tool</a>
© 2002 Avaya Inc. All Rights Reserved.			

8 Click on the link for **Launch Maintenance Web Interface**

The system displays the S8300 main menu in the left panel and a usage-agreement notice in the right window.

## S8300 Main Menu



**AVAYA** Integrated Management  
Maintenance Web Pages

Help Exit This Server: [1] doc-icc1

### Notice

This product contains Red Hat® Linux which is distributed in accordance with the terms and conditions of Red Hat Inc., available at: <http://www.redhat.com>, and software provided under the Free Software Foundation's GNU General Public License("GPL") and the GNU Lesser General Public License("LGPL") as appropriate. Copies of the GPL and LGPL licenses are available at: <http://www.gnu.org>.

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation. See [www.apache.org](http://www.apache.org) for more information.

This product also contains proprietary and copyrighted software of Avaya Inc.("Avaya") that is neither a derivative work nor a modification of software provided under the GPL or LGPL licenses, but only makes use of such software(e.g. the Linux operating system). Avaya's proprietary and copyrighted software is available from Avaya upon execution of a license agreement acceptable to Avaya.

Portions of this product may contain miniLZO which is distributed in accordance with the terms and conditions of Markus Franz Xaver Johannes Oberhumer, available at: <http://www.oberhumer.com>, and software provided under the Free Software Foundation's GNU General Public License("GPL") and the GNU Lesser General Public License("LGPL") as appropriate. LZO is Copyright (C) 1996-1999 Markus Franz Xaver Johannes Oberhumer.

Modifications made to software subject to the GPL are available without restriction from Avaya. These open source modifications have also been provided to the Linux Development Community.

By use or installation of this product, you accept the license terms applicable to all third party software included with this product. Failure to comply with these license terms could result in legal action by such third parties.

This product is designed for the use with Avaya-authorized software only. Use of this product for or with any other application is strictly prohibited and may void Avaya's warranty and other obligations.

This product is an Avaya product and not a product of Red Hat, Inc., nor is this product endorsed by Red Hat, Inc. "Red Hat" is a registered mark of Red Hat, Inc., and "Linux" is a registered mark of Linus Torvalds.

Copyright © 2001 - Avaya Inc. All rights reserved.

**Alarms**  
Current Alarms  
SNMP Agents  
SNMP Traps

**Diagnostics**  
Restarts  
System Logs  
Ping  
Traceroute  
Netstat  
Modem Test

**Server**  
Status Summary  
Process Status  
Shutdown Server  
Server Date/Time  
Software Version

**Server Configuration**  
Configure Server  
Restore Defaults  
Eject CD-RDM

**Server Upgrades**  
Install New Software  
Make Upgrade Permanent  
Boot Partition  
Linux Migration  
(Backup/Restore)

**Data Backup/Restore**  
Backup Now  
Backup Status  
Schedule Backup  
Backup Logs  
View/Restore Data  
Restore Status

**Security**  
Modem  
FTP  
License File  
Authentication File  
Firewall  
Tripwire  
Tripwire Commands  
Install Root Certificate  
SSH Keys

**Miscellaneous**  
Download Files  
Install Unicode Message  
Tftpboot Directory  
Serial Numbers  
Messaging Software

- 9 Check the top of the left panel.
  - The Avaya media server you are logged into is identified by name and server number.
  - The S8300 media server number is always 1.

## Open the Replace variable w/ ProductName SAT Screens

### To run SAT:

- 1 If you already have a valid telnet session in progress, access the SAT program by typing **sat** or **dsat** at the telnet prompt.  
Or, to open SAT directly from your laptop, click **Start > Run** and type **telnet 192.11.13.6 5023** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Log in to the Replace variable w/ ProductName as **craft** or **dadmin**.  
Enter your login confirmation information as prompted:
  - *Password prompt.* Type your password in the Password field, and click Login or press **Enter** again.
  - *ASG challenge.* If the login is Access Security Gateway (ASG) protected, you will see a challenge screen. Enter the correct response and click Login or press **Enter**.
- 3 Enter your terminal type. Accept the default value, or enter the appropriate type for your computer. For example, you may use type **ntt**, a terminal type available for Windows NT4.0 or Windows 98. For Windows 2000, use **w2ktt**.  
The system displays the SAT interface.
- 4 Enter SAT commands as appropriate.

## Log in to the P330 stack Processor with a Direct Connection to the Services Port

### NOTE:

If you are upgrading an S8300/G700 remotely, connect to the customer LAN and telnet to the IP address of the P330 stack master (that is, the P330 stack processor running as the stack master). The IP address is the address assigned on the customer LAN, not 192.11.13.6.

- 1 With a direct connection to the S8300 services port, telnet to the S8300 IP address:  
Type **telnet 192.11.13.6**.
- 2 Login as **craft** or **cust**.
- 3 Telnet to the P330 stack master stack processor.  
Type **telnet <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>**, where **<xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>** is the IP address of the P330 stack master processor on the customer's LAN.
- 4 Login at the Welcome to Avaya P330 screen.  
Login: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
Password: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
You are now logged-in at the Supervisor level. The prompt appears as **P330-1 (super) #**.

### NOTE:

To check the syntax of a command in the command line interface, type as much of the command as you know followed by **help**. For example:

```
P330-1 (super) #> set help
```

you will be given the current list of **set** commands available. If you type:

```
P330-1 (super) #> set interface help
```

you will be given a much more restricted list of command possibilities that address the possible interfaces to be set.

For a complete list of command line interface commands, type **help** or refer to the "Avaya P330 User's Guide" (available at [www.avaya.com/support](http://www.avaya.com/support)).

## Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with a LAN Connection

- 1 With a connection to the customer's LAN (either remotely or on site), telnet to the P330 stack processor IP address:  
Type **telnet <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>**, where <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> is the IP address of the P330 stack master processor on the customer's LAN.
- 2 Login at the Welcome to Avaya P330 screen.  
Login: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
Password: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
You are now logged-in at the Supervisor level. The prompt appears as P330-1 (super) #.

## Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with a Direct Serial Connection

Use this procedure to access the G700 processors when your laptop is directly connected to the Console port via a serial cable.

### To access the G700 via the Console (serial) port

- 1 Launch Windows® HyperTerminal or any other terminal emulation program.  
**NOTE:**  
For most Windows-based PCs, you access the HyperTerminal program from the **Start** menu by selecting **Programs**, then **Accessories**.
- 2 Choose **Call - Connect** (for HyperTerminal) or the appropriate call command for your terminal emulation program.
- 3 Login at the **Welcome to Avaya P330** screen.  
Login: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
Password: **xxx** from the planning documentation  
You are now logged-in at the Supervisor level. The prompt appears as P330-1 (super) #.

## Log in to the P330 Stack Processor with Device Manager

To access the Device Manager, you must have access to the corporate LAN in which the P330 Stack Processor resides. Then, to access Device Manager, do the following:

- 1 Open a compatible Internet browser on your computer. Currently this includes Internet Explorer 5.0 (or higher) and Netscape Navigator 4.7 and 6.2. The Java Plug-in 1.2.2 or 1.3.1 is required.
- 2 In the Address (or Location) field of your browser, type the IP address or name of the P330 Stack Processor and press Enter.

— If the network includes a domain name service (DNS) server that has been administered with this IP device's name, you can type the processor's name into the address field instead of the IP address. For example, `http://P330-stack1.mycompany.com`

### NOTE:

The Device Manager is *not* available through the S8300 Media Server. You must be connected to either the P330 Stack Processor or G700 Media Gateway processor through the corporate LAN.

- 3 A GUI rendering of the stack devices appears. Proceed with Media Gateway or stack device administration.

## Avaya Site Administration

Avaya Site Administration is part of the Avaya Integrated Management Standard Plus package. Normally, the customer can simply select Download next to the Administration item on the Media Server Home Page to download Avaya Site Administration. The customer then follows the directions presented by the download/installation wizard.

### Configure Avaya Site Administration

When Avaya Site Administration is initially installed on a client machine, it needs to be configured to communicate with Communication Manager on the S8300 Media Server.

When it runs initially, after downloading, you need to create a new entry for the switch connection. To create new entries for the switch, follow the procedure [Adding an S8300 Switch Administration Item](#) on page 64.

#### Adding an S8300 Switch Administration Item

- 1 Click **File > New > Voice System**.  
The system displays the Add Voice System window.
- 2 Enter a name in the Voice System Name: field. As a technician configuring Avaya Site Administration on your laptop, use a generic name, as you will be able to use this connection item for all S8300 Media Servers.
- 3 Click **Next**. The connection type dialog box displays.
- 4 Click the **Network connection** radio button.
- 5 Click **Next**. The Network Connection dialog box displays.
- 6 Enter the IP address used to connect to the S8300.



- 7 Click **Next**. The Network Connection/Port Number dialog box displays.
- 8 TCP/IP Port Number: For the port number, ALWAYS use port **23** for the craft login. Use port **5023** for the customer login.
- 9 Click **Next**. The Network Connection/Timeout Parameters dialog box displays. Leave the default values for the timeout parameters.
- 10 Click **Next**. The login type dialog box displays.
- 11 Click the “**I want to login manually each time**” radio button.
- 12 Click **Next**. The switch summary dialog box displays.
- 13 Check the information, use the **Back** button to make corrections if necessary, and click the **Test** button to test the connection.
- 14 When the connection is successfully tested, click **Next** and then **Finish**.

### ***Logging in to the S8300 with ASA***

To start Avaya Site Administration, click **Start > Programs > Avaya > Site Administration**. Avaya Site Administration supports a terminal emulation mode, which is directly equivalent to SAT command interface. Avaya Site Administration also supports a whole range of other features, including the GEDI and Data Import. For more information refer to the Online Help, Guided Tour, and Show Me accessed from the Avaya Site Administration Help menu.

To use Avaya Site Administration, open the application and select the switch (media server) you want to access. When prompted, log in.

When you are logged in, click **Start GEDI**.

## Navigational Aid for CLI Commands

This section describes a few Command Line Interface commands that you will need to navigate between the processors on the G700.

Log in to the P330 stack processor. Default mode is "Supervisor" with a P330-1(super)# command-line prompt.

Command	Purpose	Prompt
<b>super</b>	change to supervisor mode	P330-y (super) # or <MG-xxx>-y (super) # where xxx is the media gateway number assigned on the "add media-gateway" form, and y is the "module number" of the G700 in the stack.
<b>configure</b>	change to configuration mode	P330-1 (configure) # or <MG-001>-1 (configure) #
<b>session &lt;module #&gt; mgp</b> (from a stack processor session)	open a CLI session on the mgp processor	<MG-001>-1 (super) #
<b>session &lt;module #&gt; stack</b> (from an MGP session)	open a CLI session on the stack processor	P330-1 (super) #
<b>session icc</b> (from an MGP session)	open a CLI session on the S8300 processor	craft@<host name>>
<b>session &lt;#&gt;</b>	open a session on the stack processor in module (i.e. another G700)<#> in the stack	P330-<#> (super) #
<b>exit</b>	close the current session (and revert to the previous session)	
<b>&lt;command&gt; help</b>	displays help for <command>	

The command-line prompts in an MGP session use the media gateway's name that is assigned when it is configured.

You can telnet to another processor from a current telnet session.

# Terminal Emulation Function Keys for Communication Manager

---

When you log in to the Communication Manager SAT screens, your terminal emulation may not display function keys on the screen to help you determine which function keys to press. Use the following table as a guide for **ntt** terminal emulation.

Key Sequence		Function Key	Function
ESC	(alpha O) P	F1	Cancel
ESC	(alpha O) Q	F2	
ESC	(alpha O) R	F3	Execute
ESC	(alpha O) S	F4	
ESC	(alpha O) T	F5	Help
ESC	(alpha O) U	F6	Go to Page "N"
ESC	(alpha O) V	F7	Next Page
ESC	(alpha O) W	F8	Previous Page

The following table lists key presses for **w2ktt** terminal emulation.

Key Sequence		Function Key	Function
ESC	x	F1	Cancel
ESC		F2	
ESC	e	F3	Execute
ESC		F4	
ESC	h	F5	Help
ESC		F6	
ESC	n	F7	Next Page
ESC	p	F8	Previous Page

**1 Roadmap and Reference**  
Terminal Emulation Function Keys for Communication Manager

# 2 Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server

The Avaya G700 Media Gateway is part of a family of components that provides data, voice, fax, and messaging services over an IP network. Its standards-based IP communications infrastructure allows high reliability of critical applications and multi-service networking with feature transparency. The G700 can be controlled by an Avaya S8300, S8500, S8700 Media Server running Avaya Communication Manager. The G700 with a call controller converges the power of the Communication Manager with the power of distributed switching from the Avaya P330 product line to support stackable, redundant architectures.

Configurations using the G700 consist of three main elements: the G700 Media Gateway, the S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server, and Avaya Communication Manager.

This chapter is organized in two main sections:

[Getting Started](#) - Describes the G700 and S8300 components.

[Installation and Cabling](#). - Provides hardware installation and cabling procedures.

**NOTE:**

See *Quick Start: Avaya G700 Media Gateway Hardware Installation*, 555-233-150, for an overview of the G700 hardware and cabling.

## Getting Started

---

This section describes the components of an Avaya G700 Media Gateway and an Avaya S8300 Media Server.

### G700 Media Gateway

The main elements of a G700 Media Gateway are: (1) the G700 chassis and processors, (2) the media modules, and (3) the Avaya Data Expansion Modules.

---

**Figure 1: G700 Media Gateway with an S8300 Media Server: Front View**



**Figure notes**

- |   |   |   |                           |
|---|---|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | Media module slot #1 (V1)                                 | 7 | Media module slot #3 (V3) |
| 2 | S8300 services port (used with cross-over ethernet cable) | 8 | Media module slot #4 (V4) |
| 3 | S8300 USB ports   | 9 | Console interface         |
| 4 | Expansion module slot                                     |   |                           |
| 5 | 10/100 Base-T Ethernet ports (ext1, ext2)                 |   |                           |
| 6 | media module slot #2 (V2)                                 |   |                           |

---

### G700 Media Gateway Chassis and Processors

The G700 Media Gateway chassis is a 19-inch, 2u rack-mountable unit modeled after the Avaya P330 stackable switching products. A partial list of technical specifications of the G700 appears in [Appendix A, "Technical Information"](#).

The G700 has three internal processors:

- P330 stack processor (also known as *Layer 2 switching processor*)
- Media gateway processor (MGP)
- Voice over IP (VoIP) processor

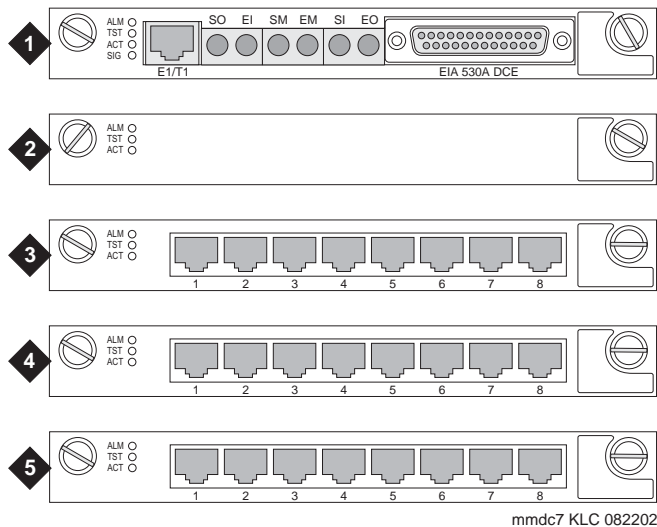
**NOTE:**

An AC/DC version of the G700 will be available 1st-Quarter 2004.

## Media Modules

Media modules are optional, plug-in circuit assemblies. They provide traditional interfacing of service provider network access solutions (such as T1/E1) and connections to TDM-based endpoints (such as DCP digital phones and analog phones). The available media modules are (as shown in [Figure 2, Media modules](#), on page 71):

**Figure 2: Media modules**



- 1 Avaya MM710 T1/E1 Media Module
- 2 Avaya MM760 VoIP Media Module for additional VoIP resources
- 3 Avaya MM711 Analog Media Module for connection to 8 analog stations or CO trunks
- 4 Avaya MM712 DCP Media Module for connection to 8 DCP stations
- 5 Avaya MM720 BRI Media Module for connection to 8 ports for international BRI trunks

For detailed descriptions of the media modules see *Hardware Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

**NOTE:**

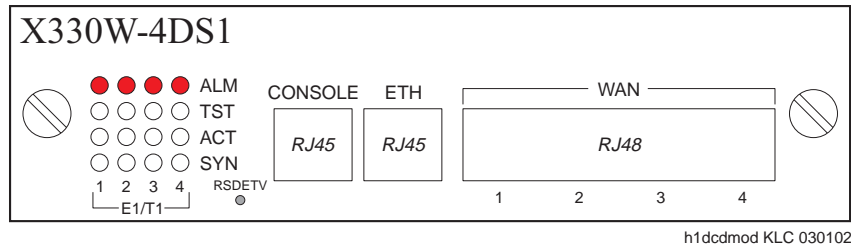
A shielded cable for the MM710 Media Module is required to meet emission requirements in European Union countries. The use of a shielded cable for the MM710 is preferred for installations worldwide.

The media modules enable the G700, with its primary controller, to host a variety of functions ranging from IP phones to traditional analog telephony ports. The media modules contain trunk or line interfaces and their associated circuitry. Each of the four media module slots has access to the 512-time-slot TDM bus, a 10/100 base T port, power (+5V, -48 V phantom) and ground. Each media module can be accessed and reset from the G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP) or from the primary controller, and its status is indicated by an LED display.

## Data Expansion Modules

The G700 Media Gateway can accommodate any of the Avaya™ Data Expansion Modules. With expansion modules, customers can add additional LAN and WAN access modules directly to the G700.

**Figure 3: Expansion Module (example)**



Two expansion modules that the customer may purchase are:

- Avaya X330 WAN Access Routing Module
- Avaya P330 LAN Expansion Module

### ***The Avaya X330 WAN Access Routing Module***

Customers with multiple branch offices need network solutions that are simple, flexible, and scalable. These customers may purchase the Avaya™ X330 WAN Access Routing Module as part of their configuration. This WAN Access Module provides WAN routing to the P330. The Avaya X330 WAN Access Routing Module can be managed by three methods:

- Integrated Web-based management
- Avaya MultiService Network Manager
- Command Line Interface (CLI)

The Avaya X330 WAN Access Routing Module provides WAN access that can be used with external firewalls or VPN Gateways.

### ***The Avaya P330 LAN Expansion Module***

Another Data Expansion that customers might purchase as part of their network is the Avaya™ P330 LAN Expansion Module. Features of this Data Expansion Module include:

- Maximum flexibility to the data stack
- Standard auto-negotiation
- Link Aggregation Group (LAG)
- LAG redundancy
- Link redundancy



- Congestion control
- 802.1Q/p VLAN priority

**CAUTION:**

Avaya Expansion Modules and Octaplane Stacking Modules are not hot-swappable. The G700 Media Gateway must be turned off before you remove or insert an Expansion Module. If there is an S8300 present that is also turned on, the S8300 should be shut down first, by pressing the Shutdown button until the OK to Remove LED shows a steady light.

## S8300 LED Indicators

A set of LED indicators the faceplate of the S8300 are separate from those of the G700. A shutdown button is also on the faceplate, which when depressed for about three seconds, will shut down the system, including the operating software on the S8300. The LED flashes when shutdown is in progress and remains on steady when it is safe to remove the S8300 or to power down.

The functions of the other LEDs are:

- The red Major Alarm indicator on the S8300 is off when the system is operational unless a Major Alarm has been raised.
- The green Test LED on the S8300 is on when a test is in progress.
- The yellow ACT LED on the S8300 is on whenever a G700, an IP telephone, or an IP console is registered with the S8300. It is off when none of these IP endpoints are registered.
- The green OK-to-Remove LED on the S8300 indicates that shutdown is complete and that it is safe to remove the server or power down the system.

When the S8300 is a local survivable processor (LSP), no LEDs will be lit during normal operations. In case of a network failure or loss of contact with the primary S8300 (or S8500 or S8700), the G700 Media Gateway will register with the LSP. At that time, the red Alarm LED will light.

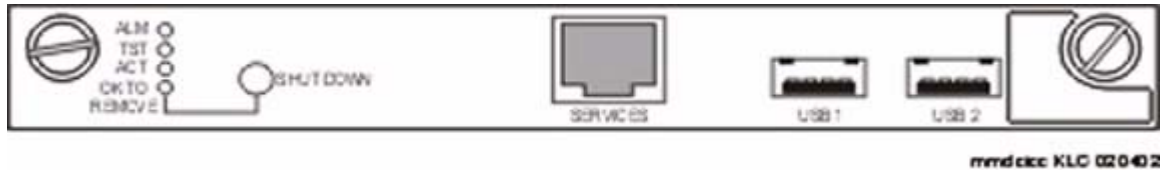
When you first power up the S8300, the red Major Alarm LED will be lit. During startup, an LED test will run, after which all LEDs will be off. At this point, you can connect to the S8300. There will be another flash of LEDs when Communication Manager starts.

## Media Servers

Each G700 is associated with a primary call controller. The primary controller may be an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server. The S8300 is on a circuit pack that is always installed in slot V1 of a G700. The S8500 or S8700 is housed in a separate box that connects to the G700 over a network through a C-LAN circuit pack. Both media servers can support multiple G700s.

The S8300 Media Servers can be configured as either a primary server or a Local Survivable Processors (LSP). The G700 with a media server supports the entire range of adjuncts and peripheral equipment supported by Communication Manager.

**Figure 4: Avaya S8300 Media Server**



## S8300 Media Server

The S8300 Media Server is an Intel processor complex that mounts in the first media module slot (V1) of the G700 Media Gateway. The S8300 Media Server has:

- Avaya™ Communication Manager (For a full description see: <http://www.avaya.com/support>)
- Administration and maintenance provisioning software
- 20 G hard drive (40 G available January 2004)
- 256 MB RAM (512 MB available January 2004)
- Web server
- Linux OS (Redhat)
- Support of H.248 and H.323 Protocols
- TFTP server and other IP services

A new version of the S8300 is expected to be available January 2004. The S8300B will be backward compatible with current version and will have a 40 G hard drive and 512 MB RAM (in two 256 MB DIMM strips).

### ***Local Survivable Processor (LSP)***

The S8300 Media Server can act as a survivable call-processing server for remote or branch customer locations. As an LSP, the S8300 Media Server carries a complete set of Communication Manager features, and its license file allows it to function as a survivable call processor. If the link between the remote G700 Media Gateways and the primary controller is broken, those telephones and G700s that are designated to receive backup service from the LSP will register with the LSP. The LSP will provide control to those registered devices in a license error mode (see *Hardware Guide for Avaya™ Communication Manager*).

## S8500 Media Server

The G700 Media Gateway can be controlled by an external S8500 Media Server. The S8500 is connected to the G700 over the network through a C-LAN circuit pack in the G600, SCC1, or MCC1.

## S8700 Media Server

The G700 Media Gateway can be controlled by an external S8700 Media Server (sometimes referred to as an ECC configuration). Both the S8700 with the G600 Media Gateway (IP Connect) and the 8700 with the SCC1 or the MCC1 Media Gateways (MultiConnect) can control the G700. The S8700 is connected to the G700 over the network through a C-LAN circuit pack in the G600, SCC1, or MCC1.

Information on installing the G700 using the S8500 or S8700 as the primary controller can be found in Chapters 4 and 6 in this book.

## Endpoint and Adjunct Components

Additional components and adjunct systems provide sets of tools that allow the customer to obtain the best possible performance. Other components and adjunct systems that make up the S8300 Media Server with a G700 Media Gateway include:

- Analog phones and fax machines
- DCP phones
- IP phones
- IP Softphones
- LAN Ethernet switches
- Avaya Integrated Management
- INTUITY AUDIX LX Messaging System
- IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application
- ASAI Co-Resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG)
- Call Center
- Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)
- Universal Serial Bus (USB) Modems

See "[Chapter 8, "Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems"](#) or *Avaya Communication Manager, Avaya DEFINITY® Servers, and Avaya S8100 Media Server Library CD, 555-245-801*, for more information on installing adjuncts.

## Plan the Installation

In the following sections of this installation guide, you will be guided through the installation of several configurations. Before the G700 components are physically installed on the customer's site, several steps will already have been completed to assure that the actual installation will go smoothly:

- Sales personnel have verified that the product is suited to the customer's application.
- Planning and implementation personnel have conducted preliminary inspections of the site and of the other equipment to assure that the S8300/G700 solution will operate at its full potential.
- A data network readiness assessment has been completed to assure that the solution will function optimally within the customer's network.

Each of these processes have been documented before the installation. You should verify that you have all the necessary information before going to the site (see [Appendix B, "Information Checklists"](#)).

## Use the Planning Documentation

To guide you in your preparations for the installation, use the Installer's Checklists (see [Appendix B, "Information Checklists"](#)) to verify that you have the tools, software, and information that you need to install the G700.

The planning documentation will provide you with information about:

- What equipment you will be installing
- What kind of system you will be integrating
- Whom to contact on site about delivery, system questions, or network concerns
- Whom to contact at your home office in case of questions
- Whether you need a special pass or an escort
- How to gain entrance to the installation location if it is locked
- Where to install equipment
- Where to find a telephone near the installation location

## SSO Authentication Login

You should obtain a personal Single Sign-On (SSO) for Remote Feature Activation (RFA) website authentication login before going to the site for installation. You must complete the authentication process before you can be assigned an SSO authentication login.

As a first-time user:

- Business Partners should point their browsers to the Business Partner portal option sales\_market, services-voice, training tools and procedures to select RFA (or go directly to: <http://rfa.avaya.com>).
- Associates should point their browsers to the Avaya Associate portal (or go directly to: <http://rfa.avaya.com>).
- Contractors should point their browsers to Avaya.com (or go directly to: <http://rfa.avaya.com>).

From that point, log into SSO and complete the process to obtain your personal login.

## Site Verification

A pre-installation site inspection allows you to verify that the site requirements have been met for adequate environmental conditions, power and grounding availability, safety, and security conditions. If you find discrepancies between the specifications necessary for proper installation of equipment and the conditions on site, contact your Project Manager before proceeding with the installation.

## Network Integration

Integration into the customer's network will require coordination with the network manager and the planning and implementation personnel. They will ascertain the customer's need for DHCP service and the intended network configuration and applications. In addition, Avaya offers Network Readiness services to assist in evaluating and preparing the network for all configurations.

The Project Manager will provide information to be used by the installers. The documentation must include dial plans and other telephony information, as well as IP addresses, IP masks, and other network information. This information will be specific to each customer. To install the solution in an efficient manner, you must collect and organize this information before going to the site.

## Installation and Cabling

---

The Avaya G700 Media Gateways can be installed in a variety of configurations:

- as a standalone unit with one G700
- with multiple G700 Media Gateways in a stack
- in combinations of Media Gateways and Avaya P330 family devices.

Up to ten G700 Media Gateways and/or Avaya P330s devices can be combined in a single stack.

The G700s can be controlled by an Avaya S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server.

In a typical installation, you will arrive at the site equipped with all the tools and information needed to install a G700 and, possibly, an S8300. You will complete the following procedures:

### Installation Process Steps

---

[On Site Checklist](#) on page 78

[Unpack and Check the Order](#) on page 79

[Install the G700 Media Gateway](#) on page 80

[Cable Multiple Units](#) on page 89

[Attach Ground Conductors](#) on page 92

### NOTE:

When installing a G700, complete all tasks in this chapter to install the gateway before doing the media server administration (e.g., add `media-gateway`).

## On Site Checklist

When you reach the customer's site, you should have each item on the Installer's Checklist (see [Appendix B, "Information Checklists"](#).) However, it is recommended that you consult with the customer network manager for IP and DNS addressing, as well as for testing the installation. Also, before proceeding with the installation, you should verify that the proper environmental and safety conditions exist.

### Environmental Verification

Verify that temperatures and clearances are within the recommended technical parameters. Consult the table of Technical Specifications in [Appendix A, "Technical Information"](#).



### CAUTION:

Verify that temperature and clearance ranges are within tolerable limits. The thermal sensors may shut down equipment if it is subjected to conditions beyond the recommended limits. Equipment can be damaged if these restrictions are not respected.

## Power Verification

Check that an adequate number of power outlets are available. Verify that the G700 Media Gateways and the other equipment in the rack do not present a possible overcurrent or overload to the customer's branch circuit and/or power distribution strip. Power requirements are listed in [Appendix A, "Technical Information"](#).

**WARNING:**

Do not overload the power circuit.

## Grounding Verification

Ensure that the installation site has access to approved grounds and that either a trained technician or a licensed electrician will be verifying all grounds and installing the Supplementary Ground Conductor (consult [Attach Ground Conductors](#)).

**WARNING:**

**Installation in a Restricted Access Location and secure access are required in Finland and Norway.**

The G700 Media Gateway relies on two ground connections (mains plug with an earth contact and a permanent Supplementary Ground Conductor). Because of unreliable earthing concerns in Finland and Norway, the G700 Media Gateway must be installed in a Restricted Access Location (RAL). An RAL is defined as an access that can be gained only by trained service personnel or customers who have been instructed about the reasons for the restricted access and any safety precautions that must be taken. In these cases, access to the G700 Media Gateway is gained by the use of a tool (such as a lock and key) or other means of security.

If you have any questions about the safety conditions, contact your Project Manager. When you have verified that the site is ready for a safe installation, proceed with the installation.

## Unpack and Check the Order

Cross-check your customer's order with the planning documentation you have been given. media modules, telephones and other equipment are listed on your planning and shipping documentation. Placement for the media modules and other equipment are indicated, as well.

Verify that all necessary elements have been received and are in good condition. If there are missing or damaged elements, contact the Project Manager for instructions. The planning documentation will list contact information for the Project Manager and other key personnel.

**CAUTION:**

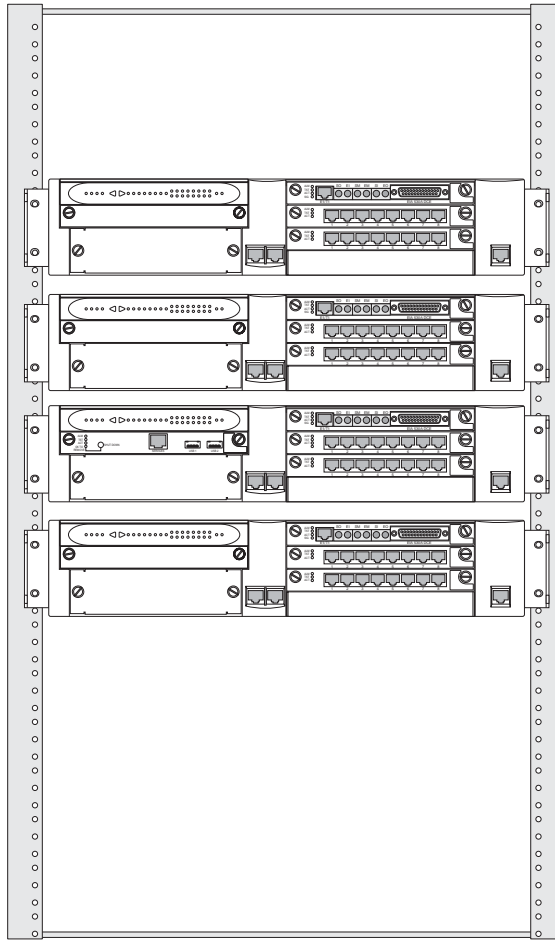
Wear an anti-static wrist ground strap whenever handling components of an Avaya™ G700 Media Gateway. Connect the strap to an approved ground, such as an unpainted metal surface.

If you have any questions about the equipment order, or if the equipment has been damaged, contact your Project Manager. When you have verified that the order is complete and that you have all of the necessary components and tools, proceed with the installation.

## Install the G700 Media Gateway

After you have verified the site conditions and the shipment, you will proceed with the installation of the hardware.

**Figure 5: Avaya G700 Media Gateways**



[Figure 5, Avaya G700 Media Gateways](#), on page 80 shows a stack of four G700 Media Gateways installed in a rack-mounted configuration. Of the four G700s, only one contains an S8300 Media Server in slot V1 (second up from the bottom).



## Prepare the G700 Media Gateway

The instructions that follow guide you through a process of preparing the Avaya™ G700 Media Gateway after you have mounted the empty chassis in the rack. It is possible to equip an empty G700 chassis before positioning it in the rack. If you are working where space is limited, you may wish to prepare the G700 before rack insertion.



### CAUTION:

When handling any components of an S8300 Media Server with G700 Media Gateways, wear an anti-static wrist ground strap. Connect the strap to an approved ground such as an unpainted metal surface.

The G700 can stand on a flat surface or be mounted in the standard 19-inch rack. If the G700 is to be mounted in a rack, you have the choice of fastening the unit to the rack either at the front of the unit or at the middle. This positioning choice will depend on space arrangements. In either case, mounting brackets must be attached to the sides of the chassis, either at the center or to the front of the chassis.

### *Affix Mounting Brackets to the G700*

- 1 Remove the screws from the bracket kit.
- 2 Position a bracket over the desired mounting position.
- 3 Affix the bracket to the chassis with the screws provided.
- 4 Tighten with the screwdriver.
- 5 Repeat on the other side.

If the G700 is to be a table-top unit, four feet must be attached to the bottom of the unit. The procedure to do this is the following:

### *Affix Feet on the Table-Top G700*

Use this procedure only if the G700 will be installed as a table-top unit (not in a data rack).

- 1 Remove the four feet from their packaging.
- 2 Turn the G700 Media Gateway over to allow the feet to be mounted.
- 3 Position one foot into the mounting site near the corner of the chassis.
- 4 Press the plastic rivet into the foot with a stylus until it is firmly seated on the chassis.

You have now prepared the G700 Media Gateway for mounting, and, assuming you are going to use a data rack, you are ready to mount the chassis in the rack.

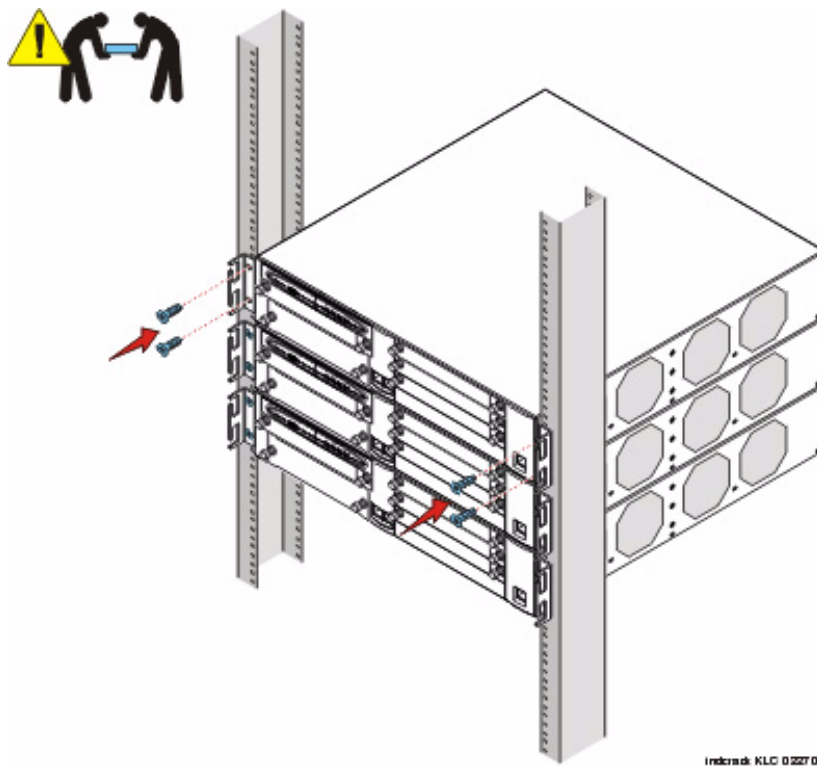
## Mount the G700 Media Gateway in the Rack

The G700 Media Gateway mounts in a standard 19-inch rack. It is held in place by screws through the two mounting ears. The unit can be mounted either in the center of the unit or at the front of the unit; however, only the front mount allows use of the guides for electrical cables. To avoid balancing problems and cabling complications, the racks should be filled from the bottom; that is, mount units in the lower positions first.

Before mounting the G700, check for the following:

- Ensure that the rack is bolted to the floor and is earthquake-protected, if required. If the rack is not securely fixed in place, do not proceed with the installation.
- If the G700 is being mounted in a rack with other equipment already installed, the G700 must be positioned to avoid imbalance.
- The G700 is shipped with 3 sets of four mounting screws. Choose the set of screws that match the screw holes in the rack being used.
- The G700 weighs 22.5 pounds (10 kg) empty and between 27 and 34 pounds (between 12 and 16 kg) when equipped with media modules. Two people may be needed to mount the G700 Media Gateway in the rack.

**Figure 6: Rack Mounting**



### ***Mount the G700 Media Gateway in the Rack***

- 1** Position the G700 in the rack. Assure that there is adequate ventilation.
- 2** Verify that the screw holes are aligned with the rack hole positions.
- 3** Insert the mounting screws. Use two screws on each side.
- 4** Tighten the mounting screws. Avoid overtightening.
- 5** Verify that ventilation vents are not obstructed.
- 6** Repeat to add other G700 Media Gateways to the rack as described in the planning documents.

If you are installing multiple G700s, continue building the stack. Up to 10 units can be linked together ([Figure 13, Cabling Multiple Units in a Single Rack](#), on page 90); these may be G700s or Avaya P330 family switches.

At this point, you have mounted the G700 chassis in the rack and are ready to insert S8300 Media Servers and media modules as required in the planning documentation.

## Insert the Avaya S8300 Media Server (If Necessary for Standalone Service or LSP)

The S8300 Media Server is inserted into the G700 Media Gateway slot #1 (v1), whether it is the primary server or configured as a Local Survivable Processor (LSP). The S8300 can only be inserted in the slot (v1) on the left side of the G700 Media Gateway. The LED module must be pulled from the G700 chassis to provide clearance for the S8300 Media Server.

### NOTE:

If you need to install the CWY1 card (for embedded messaging) on the S8300, do so now.



### CAUTION:

If you are removing an S8300, use the shutdown button to stop the operating system (press and hold for 2-3 seconds). The OK to Remove LED will flash while the shutdown is in progress and will turn steady green when it is safe to remove the S8300.

### *Insert the S8300 into Slot #1 of the G700 Media Gateway*

- 1 Clear the left side of the G700 Media Gateway.
  - a Remove the blank plate from slot #1.
  - b Then, disengage the LED module and remove it from the G700 Media Gateway.
- 2 Line up the Avaya S8300 Media Server module squarely with its bay opening.

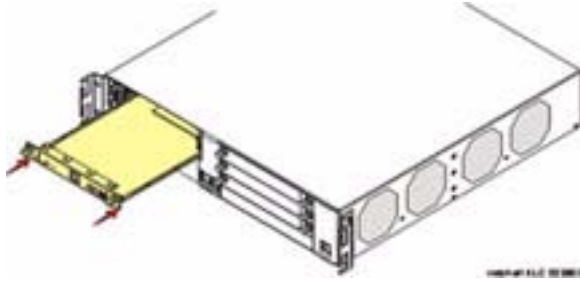
---

**Figure 7: Clear the left side of the G700 Media Gateway**



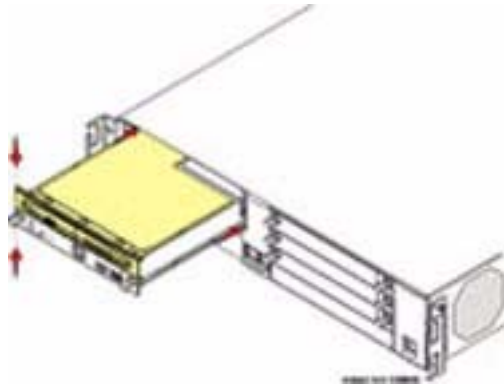
- 3 Engage both sides of the S8300 Media Server module in the interior guides and guide the module halfway into the chassis.

**Figure 8: Insert S8300**



- 4** Align the LED module in its guides and gently push it into place, keeping the LED module safely within its guides and maintaining an even pressure to assure that the module does not become twisted or disengage from the guides.  
  
Guide the longer, left side of the LED module into the chassis until the shorter, right edge of the module can engage in its guides.

**Figure 9: Align the LED module and the S8300 Media Server**



- 5** Push steadily and firmly until the faceplates of the S8300 Media Server and the LED module are even and then push the two units into the housing together.
- 6** Apply firm pressure to engage the connectors.  
  
The connector has different length pins. The long pins will engage first to provide grounding. Medium length and short pins will provide power and signal.
- 7** Tighten the captive screws on the S8300 Media Server module.

**⚠ WARNING:**

To prevent access to electrical hazards by unauthorized personnel and to ensure continued compliance to radiated emissions requirements, all captive screws must be securely tightened such that they cannot be loosened without the use of a tool.

**Figure 10: Tighten screws**

## Insert the Media Modules

Following the planning documentation, you can insert the required media modules into their designated bays. The G700 Media Gateway can accommodate up to four media modules, or plug-in circuit packs. The choice of media modules is dictated by the offer selected by the customer and the configuration of the system.

Consult the planning documentation and the order form to determine which modules you will be installing. The planning documents also indicate into which slots the modules are to be inserted. The media modules available at this time are:

- Avaya™ MM710 T1/E1 Media Module
- Avaya™ MM760 VoIP Media Module
- Avaya™ MM711 Analog Media Module
- Avaya™ MM712 DCP Media Module
- Avaya™ MM720 BRI Media Module

For detailed descriptions of the media modules see *Hardware Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

**⚠ WARNING:**

The Avaya G700 Media Gateway must not be operated with any slots open. Failure to cover empty slots with the supplied blank plates can cause overheating due to inadequate air distribution.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

The connector pins can be bent or damaged if the module is handled roughly, or if misaligned and then forced into position.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Separate ESD paths to the chassis ground connect to the media modules at the spring-loaded captive screws. Use a screw driver to ensure the captive screws are securely tightened to prevent damage to the equipment.

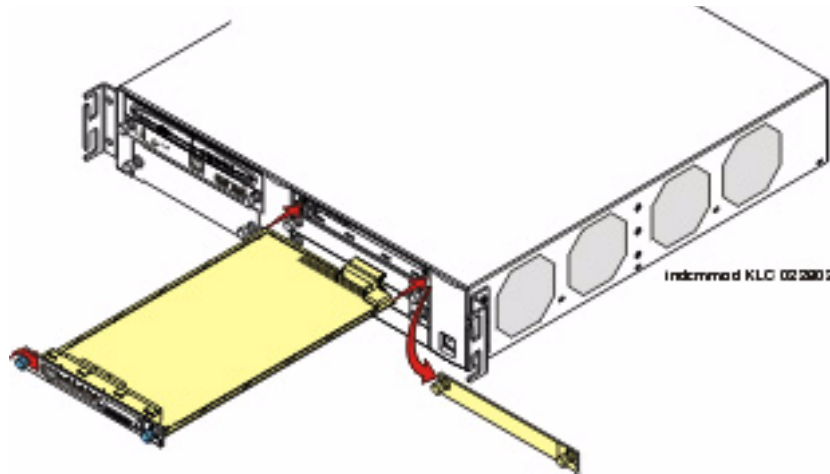
### ***Insert media modules***

- 1** Remove the blank plate from the empty bay.
- 2** Position the media module squarely before the selected bay on the front of the G700 Media Gateway chassis and engage both sides of the module in the interior guides.

## 2 Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server Installation and Cabling

- 3 Slide the module slowly into the chassis, maintaining an even pressure to assure that the module does not become twisted or disengaged from the guides.

**Figure 11: Insert Media Module**



- 4 Apply firm pressure to engage the connectors.  
The media module connector has different length pins. The long pins will engage first to provide grounding. Medium length and short pins will provide power and signal.
- 5 Lock the media module into the chassis by tightening the spring-loaded captive screws on the front of the module.

**⚠ WARNING:**

To prevent access to electrical hazards by unauthorized personnel and to ensure continued compliance to international radiated emissions requirements, all captive screws must be securely tightened such that they cannot be loosened without the use of a tool.

**⚠ WARNING:**

After you have connected telephones to the various media modules, be sure to add circuit protection to the lines (see [Complete the Telephone Installation Process](#) on page 331).

At this point, you have readied the G700 inserted the S8300 if required, and inserted the media modules, as described in the planning documentation. Next, if required, the Expansion Module should be inserted into its bay.

## Insert an Expansion Module

The Expansion Modules provide increased networking and connectivity capabilities. These modules may be mounted on the G700 Media Gateway in the slot on the lower left side of the unit below slot V1 (see [G700 Media Gateway with an S8300 Media Server: Front View](#) on page 70).



### CAUTION:

The Expansion Module is not hot-swappable. That is, the G700 must be powered off before you insert or remove an Expansion Module. If there is an active S8300 present, the S8300 should be shut down by pressing and holding the Shutdown button for 2-3 seconds. The OK to remove LED will flash during shutdown and turn on steady when it is safe to power down.

### *Insert an Expansion Module into the G700 Media Gateway*

Turn off the power to the unit if the equipment has been in operation.

- 1 Remove the blank plate covering the bay.
- 2 Align the printed circuit board with the interior guide rails.

### NOTE:

The printed circuit board fits into the guide rail. The metal base plate does not.

- 3 Firmly press the Expansion Module into the G700 Media Gateway until it is completely inserted.
- 4 Tighten the two screws on the front panel of the Expansion Module.



### WARNING:

**To prevent access to electrical hazards by unauthorized personnel and to ensure continued compliance to international radiated emissions requirements, all captive screws must be securely tightened such that they cannot be loosened without the use of a tool.**



### WARNING:

**The Avaya G700 Media Gateway must not be operated with any slot open. Empty slots must be covered with the supplied blank plates.**

At this point, you have readied the G700, inserted the S8300, if required, inserted the media modules and the Expansion Module, as required in the planning documents. If more than one unit (G700 and/or Level 2 switches and routers) will be connected in the configuration you are installing, the next step will be to insert an Avaya X330STK Stacking Sub-Module.

## Insert an Avaya X330STK Stacking Module

G700 Media Gateways can be mounted in equipment stacks with routers, switches, or other G700s. The stack is limited to ten elements. To link multiple units, each G700 must be equipped with an Avaya X330STK Stacking Module, which is mounted through the rear panel (back view) of the G700.

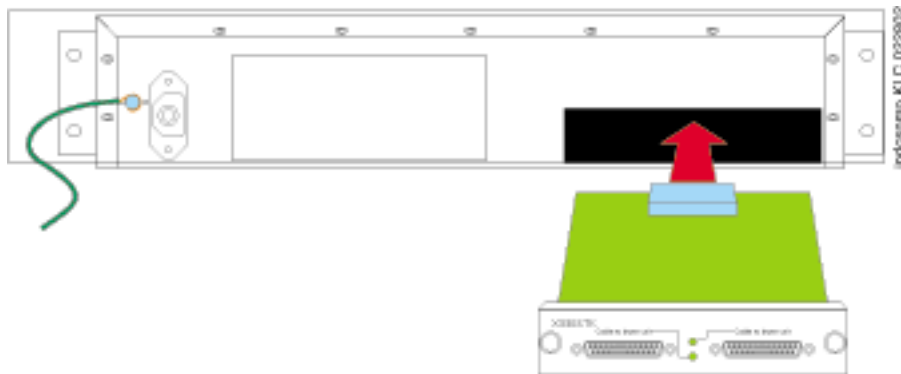
 **CAUTION:**

The Stacking Sub-Module is not hot-swappable. That is, the G700 must be powered off before you insert or remove a Stacking Module. If there is an active S8300 present, the S8300 should be shut down by pressing the Shutdown button. Hold the button in 2–3 seconds until the OK to Remove LED starts flashing. When the LED turns on steady, power can be safely turned off.

### *Insert an Avaya X330STK Stacking Module*

- 1 Remove the blank plate from the back of the G700.
- 2 Insert the Avaya X330STK Stacking Module gently in the bay in the back of the G700, ensuring that the metal base plate is aligned with the guide rails.

**Figure 12: Insert Stacking Module in G700 (back view)**



- 3 Press the Avaya X330STK Stacking Module in firmly until the connector at the back of the module is completely inserted into the internal connector on the G700.
- 4 Tighten the screws on either side of the module.

At this point, the required modules and cabling units have been inserted into the G700 Media Gateway. The next step will be to install cabling.



## Cable Multiple Units

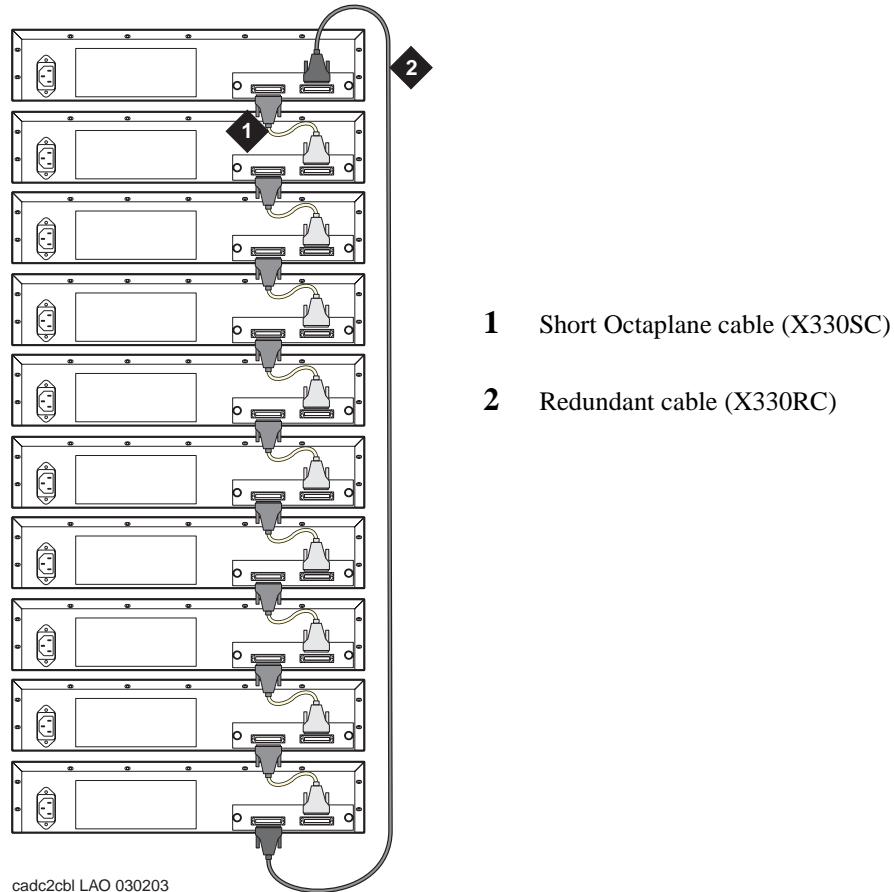
Avaya G700 Media Gateways can be mounted in equipment stacks with routers, switches, or other Media Gateways. These elements are all compatible and are installed similarly. Consult Avaya™ P333T User Guide for installation and cabling information. To link multiple units, each G700 Media Gateway must be equipped with an Avaya X330STK Stacking Module on the rear panel. Then, each unit in the stack is linked to the one above it. Finally, the bottom unit is linked to the top unit. Stacks should always be built from the bottom, and new units should be added at the top. Up to 10 units can be stacked in this way. When deciding where to position the unit, ensure that:

- It is accessible and cables can be connected easily.
- Cabling is away from sources of electrical noise such as radio transmitters, broadcast amplifiers, power lines and fluorescent lighting fixtures.
- Water or moisture cannot enter the case of the unit.
- There is a free flow of air around the unit and the vents in the sides of the case are not blocked.

The two ends of the Octaplane cables incorporate different connectors. Each connector can only be connected to its matching interface. The following cables are used to connect stacked units:

- Short Octaplane cable (Avaya X330SC) - light, ivory-colored cable used to connect adjacent units.
- Long Octaplane and Extra-Long Octaplane cables (Avaya X330LC/X330L-LC) - light, ivory-colored cable used to connect units from two different physical stacks or those separated by more than 12 inches (30 cm).
- Redundant and Long Redundant cables (Avaya X330RC/X330L-RC) - black cable used to connect the top and bottom switches of a stack.

**Figure 13: Cabling Multiple Units in a Single Rack**



**Connect Units within a Single Stack**

- 1** Connect the light grey connector of the short Avaya X330SC cable (12 in, 30 cm) to the port marked “to upper unit” in the bottom-most stack element.
- 2** Connect the dark grey connector of the same short X330SC cable to the port marked “to the lower unit” in the unit above.
- 3** Repeat until you reach the top element in the stack. Up to ten G700s and/or other Cajun devices can be stacked together.  
**To implement stack redundancy:**
- 4** Use the Redundant Cable to connect the port marked “to lower unit” on the bottom element to the port marked “to upper unit” on the top element of the stack.

If you have elements of a stack in two racks, you must use the Avaya X330LC cable to connect them. You may not link more than 10 units to form a stack, but those units can be mounted in more than one rack.

**Link Elements in Multiple Racks**

- 1 Use the long (6ft, 2 m) Avaya X330LC cable to connect elements in two racks.
- 2 Connect the Avaya X330LC cable (dark grey connector) to the port on first unit of the stack marked “to the lower unit.”
- 3 Connect the Avaya X330LC cable (light grey connector) to the port on the last unit in the stack marked “to the upper unit.”

**To implement stack redundancy:**

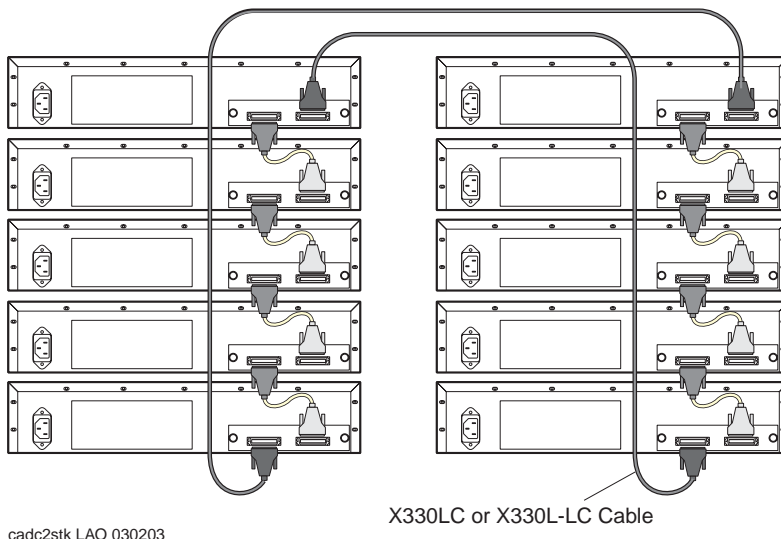
- 4 Connect the dark grey connector of the black Redundant Cable to the port marked “to lower unit” on the bottom unit of the stack.
- 5 Connect the light grey connector of the black Redundancy Cable to the port marked “to upper unit” on top unit of the stack.



**CAUTION:**

Do not cross-connect two stack elements with two Octaplane (light-colored) cables. If you wish to cross-connect for redundancy, use a black redundancy cable.

**Figure 14: Linking Units in Multiple Racks**



cadc2stk LAO 030203

You have now mounted the fully equipped Avaya G700 Media Gateway in the rack, and cabled units together as described in the planning documents. When all the units are mounted, and cabled, you are ready to connect to electrical ground conductors.

## Attach Ground Conductors

To assure safe installation and operation, carefully read all requirements, recommendations and instructions. Pay special attention to all CAUTION, WARNING, and DANGER statements.



**WARNING:**

Make sure that the G700 has a reliable earth ground connection, whether it is connected directly to a branch circuit or to a power distribution strip.



**WARNING:**

Installation in a Restricted Access Location and secure access are required in Finland and Norway.



**CAUTION:**

System grounding must comply with the general rules for grounding provided in Article 250 of the National Electrical Code (NEC), National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA) 70, or the applicable electrical code in the country of installation.

## General Grounding Requirements

**For AC Input:** Two safety grounds are required to ensure safe operation of the G700 Media Gateway — the ground conductor that is part of the AC power cord and the field-installed green/yellow conductor referred to as the Supplementary Ground Conductor. Both safety grounds must be connected to an approved ground. If a power cord accompanies the G700, use that cord whenever possible.

**For DC Input:** The +48Vdc lead provided for DC power input to the G700 Media Gateway must be grounded at the source to an approved ground. The -48Vdc is the active lead. Both leads must be floating at the input to the G700. In addition, the Supplementary Ground Conductor must be installed on the G700 and connected to an approved ground.

The customer must select a location for the G700 Media Gateway installation that is no more than 50 feet (15 m) from an approved ground. If this location requirement is not met, the customer must contact a licensed electrician to install a Supplementary Ground Conductor per Article 250 of the National Electrical Code (NEC).



**WARNING:**

If the installation location is greater than 50 feet (15 m) from an approved ground, do not install the Avaya G700 Media Gateway until a licensed electrician is present to install a Supplementary Ground Conductor.

A 55-foot (16-m) Supplementary Ground Conductor is provided with the equipment, and is constructed of 10 AWG (4.0 mm<sup>2</sup>) wire, with an insulated ring terminal crimped to one end that is suitable for the #8 (M4) stud/screw on the rear of the G700 chassis.

The customer will need to provide a means of connecting this Supplementary Ground Conductor to an approved ground according to Article 250 of the National Electrical Code (NEC).

A ground block is available for use when multiple G700 Media Gateways are being installed. The ground block, intended for rack mounting, has ten terminals available for terminating Supplementary Ground Conductors. Up to ten G700 Media Gateways can be grounded at the block installed close to the equipment (on a rack) and then a single ground conductor can be routed from the same block to an approved ground. If the ground block is to be used, it must be ordered separately.

 **DANGER:**

**Failure to install both grounds will void the Product Safety certifications (UL and the CE Mark) on the product, as well as allow a hazard to be present that could result in death or severe personal injury.**

Because of unreliable earthing concerns in Finland and Norway, the G700 Media Gateway must be installed in a restricted access location. A restricted access location is defined as access that can be gained by only Service Personnel or Customers who have been instructed about the reasons for the restricted access and any safety precautions that must be taken. In these cases, access to the G700 Media Gateway is gained by the use of a tool (such as a lock and key) or other means of security.

 **WARNING:**

**For Installations in Finland and Norway, the Avaya G700 Media Gateway relies on two ground connections (mains plug with an earth contact, and a Supplementary Ground Conductor).**

## Approved Grounds

An approved ground is the closest acceptable medium for grounding the building entrance protector, entrance cable shield, or a single-point ground of electronic telephony equipment. If more than one type of approved ground is available on the premises, the grounds must be bonded together as required in Section 250-81 of the NEC for the US or per the local electrical code regulations in the country of installation.

- **Grounded Building Steel:** The metal frame of the building where it is effectively grounded by one of the following grounds: acceptable metallic water pipe, concrete encased ground, or a ground ring.
- **Acceptable Water Pipe:** A metal underground water pipe, at least 1/2-in. (1.3 cm) in diameter, in direct contact with the earth for at least 10 ft. (3m). The pipe must be electrically continuous (or made electrically continuous by bonding around insulated joints, plastic pipe, or plastic water meters) to the point where the protector ground wire connects. A metallic underground water pipe must be supplemented by the metal frame of the building, a concrete-encased ground, or a ground ring. If these grounds are not available, the water pipe ground can be supplemented by one of the following types of grounds:
  - Other local metal underground systems or structures - Local underground structures such as tanks and piping systems.
  - Rod and pipe electrodes - A 5/8-in. (1.6 cm) solid rod or 3/4-in. (2 cm) conduit or pipe electrode driven to a minimum depth of 8 ft. (2.4 m).
  - Plate electrodes - Must have a minimum of 2 sq. ft. (0.185 sq. m) of metallic surface exposed to the exterior soil.
- **Concrete Encased Ground:** An electrode encased by at least 2 in. (5.1 cm) of concrete and located within and near the bottom of a concrete foundation or footing in direct contact with the earth. The electrode must be at least 20 ft. (6.1 m) of one or more steel reinforcing bars or rods, 1/2-in. (1.3 cm) in diameter, or at least 20 ft. (6.1 m) of bare solid copper, 4 AWG (26mm<sup>2</sup>) wire.

- **Ground Ring:** A buried ground that encircles a building or structure at a depth of at least 2.5 ft (0.76 m) below the earth's surface. The ground ring must be at least 20 ft. (6.1 m) of 2 AWG (35 mm<sup>2</sup>), bare copper wire.
- **Approved Floor Grounds:** Floor grounds are those grounds on each floor of a high-rise building that are suitable for connection to the ground terminal in the riser closet and to the cabinet single-point ground terminal. Approved floor grounds may include the following:
  - Building steel
  - The grounding conductor for the secondary side of the power transformer feeding the floor
  - Metallic water pipes.
  - Power-feed metallic conduit supplying panel boards on the floor.
  - A grounding point specifically provided in the building for that purpose.



**WARNING:**

**If the approved ground or approved floor ground can only be accessed inside a dedicated power equipment room, then connections to this ground must be made by a licensed electrician.**

## Connect the Safety Ground

Proper grounding of the G700 Media Gateway installation safeguards the system, users and service personnel by providing protection from lightning, power surges, AC mains faults, power crosses on central office trunks, and electrostatic discharge (ESD).

Local electrical installation codes must be followed when installing G700 Media Gateways.



**WARNING:**

**Connection of both grounds (through the AC or DC Power Cord and the Supplementary Ground Conductor) is required for safe operation of the G700 Media Gateway.**



**WARNING:**

**An improper ground can cause electrical shock as well as equipment failures and service outages.**

### Attach the Ground Wires

- 1 Remove the ground screw on the rear of the chassis adjacent to the ground symbol:



- 2 Place the ring terminal of the 10 AWG (4.0 mm<sup>2</sup>) Supplementary Ground Conductor on the screw.
- 3 Replace the ground screw to the chassis and securely tighten the screw such that it cannot be loosened without the use of a tool.

**If the ground block has been purchased:** The ground block is provided for use with more than one G700 (or other Cajun devices) in the rack. It is usually mounted by the customer electrician.

- 4 Cut the Supplementary Ground Conductor (which has one end attached to the grounding screw on the chassis) to the length needed to terminate it into one of the terminals of the ground block. Do not coil the Supplementary Ground Conductor.
- 5 Attach one end of the remaining 10 AWG (4mm<sup>2</sup>) ground wire to one of the terminals in the ground block and the other end to an approved ground.
- 6 Cut this ground wire to the length needed to reach the approved ground. Do not coil this wire.  
**If the ground block is not being used, simply:**
- 7 Attach the Supplementary Ground Conductor to an approved ground.
- 8 Connect the AC power cable to the inlet receptacle on the rear of the chassis.

You have now mounted the fully equipped G700 Media Gateway in the rack, cabled units together as described in the planning documents, and connected to electrical ground conductors. When all the units are mounted, cabled, and grounded, you are ready to apply power.

## Connect AC Power

For North American installations, the AC Power Cord terminates on one end with a NEMA-15P plug to connect to the AC main socket-outlet at the wall. For installations in other regions, the plug to be used must comply with the local regulations and be marked as such, be suitable for the current and voltage being used, and contain an earthing pin for connection to ground at the AC mains socket-outlet through the cord.

To prevent accidental interruption of power to the G700 Media Gateway, do not connect the G700 Media Gateway to a switch-controlled AC wall socket-outlet. In addition, Avaya Inc. highly recommends that the customer use a UPS for back-up power.

Advise your customer to verify through a licensed electrician that the ground connection at the AC outlet to be used is attached to an approved ground.

## Power Requirements

The G700 Media Gateway uses an auto-ranging 100-240 Vac power supply, 50 to 60 Hz, 5 A maximum at 100-120 Vac and 2 A maximum at 200-240 Vac. The AC power source is to be single phase, 3-conductor (Line, Neutral and Ground) with a 15 A circuit breaker for 100-120 Vac or a 10 A circuit breaker for 200-240 Vac.

## Test the AC Outlet



### **WARNING:**

**The following recommended test equipment, tests and diagrams are intended only for North American installations at 110 to 125 Volts AC. For installations in other regions, have a licensed electrician verify the ground and voltages.**



### **WARNING:**

**If the AC outlet tests indicate that the power requirements are not met, your customer must contact a licensed electrician. DO NOT install the system until all requirements are met.**

### ***Fault Conditions***

If the AC outlet tests that follow reveal any of the following conditions, they must be corrected BEFORE the system is to be installed.

- Open ground
- Hot and neutral reversed
- Open hot
- Open neutral
- Hot and ground reversed



**WARNING:**

**Hazardous voltages are present during this test. Follow all instructions carefully when working the AC power line voltages.**

### ***Verify Ground Using an Ideal 61-035 Circuit Tester (or equivalent)***

- 1** Plug the circuit tester into the outlet that you want to test.  
If the circuit is properly grounded, the yellow and white lights on the tester illuminate.
- 2** Unplug the tester.



**WARNING:**

**If the tester indicates any type of ground fault, your customer must contact a licensed electrician. DO NOT install the system.**

### ***Verify Voltages Using a Volt-Ohm Millimeter (VOM) (U.S. and countries using 110 to 125 Vac power)***



**WARNING:**

**Hazardous voltages are present during this test. Follow all instructions carefully when working with AC power line voltages.**

- 1** Ensure that the VOM is set to read Volts AC

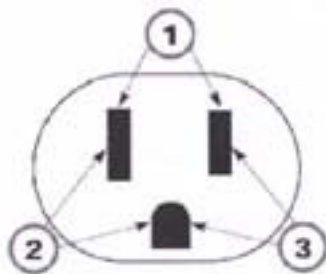
**NOTE:**

The following example is for North American voltages (110 to 125 Vac). Use the appropriate voltages for local power.

- 2** Set the VOM to the lowest scale on which you can read 130 Vac.



- 3 Measure the AC voltages in the following order:



- 1 Phase to neutral should be 110 to 125 Vac.
- 2 Neutral to ground should be less than 1 Vac.
- 3 Phase to ground should be 110 to 125 Vac.

If the voltage readings do not measure the values given, the AC outlet is improperly wired — DO NOT INSTALL THE SYSTEM. Advise the customer to have a licensed electrician correct the problem.

You are now ready to power the system.

### Plug in AC Power

***Once the ground and voltages have been verified to be correct for the installation, connect to AC power.***

- 1 Plug the power cord into the G700
- 2 Plug the power cord into the outlet that was tested.

**NOTE:**

There is no On/Off power switch on the G700 Media Gateway. The AC inlet serves as the disconnect device. To disconnect power from the G700 Media Gateway, remove the power cord plug from the AC inlet.

The G700 Media Gateway will power up. The LEDs on the media modules, the S8300 Media Server, and the G700 Media Gateway will flash at power-up. Each element will conduct a series of self-tests.

- 3 The LEDs on the G700 LED panel will flash, and the red ALM LED will light up until the self-tests on the G700 Media Gateway have completed.
- 4 The LEDs on the S8300 Media Server will light as described in the following sequence:
  - a ALM - RED - lights up, then turns off
  - b TEST - GREEN – lights up, then turns off
  - c ACTIVE - YELLOW – lights up, then turns off
  - d OK To REMOVE - GREEN - lights up, then turns off
  - e LEFT LED in SERVICES port - GREEN (10 MB link speed) lights up, then turns off
  - f LEFT LED in SERVICES port - YELLOW (100 MB link speed) lights up, then turns off
  - g RIGHT LED in SERVICES port - GREEN lights up, then turns off

When you first power up the S8300, the red Major Alarm LED will be lit. During startup, self-tests will run, after which all LEDs will be off. At this point, you can connect to the S8300. There will be another flash of LEDs when Communication Manager starts.

- 5** Verify that:
- media modules: all LEDs are extinguished.

**NOTE:**

If the initial administration of all media modules is not completed, an alarm LED will light.

- The master LED (labeled MSTR) or the system LED (labeled SYS) lights on one and only one module in the stack.
- G700 Media Gateway: the green CPU LED is illuminated when both the P330 stack processor (Layer 2 Switching Processor) and the G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP) are in a normal operational state.

The red ALM LED is illuminated whenever an alarm exists in the G700 Media Gateway Processor. The ALM LED might signal either a hardware failure or a software or firmware condition that could be cleared by resetting the processor. It will also be illuminated because the license file for the S8300 has not yet been installed.

## Check and Connect DC Power

**NOTE:**

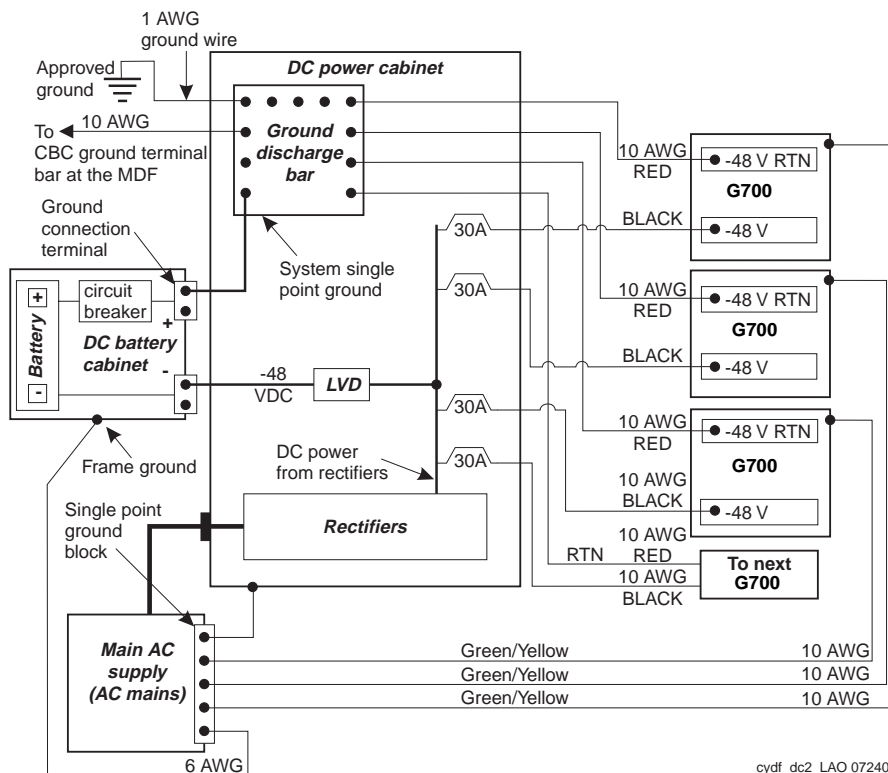
The AC/DC version of the G700 will be available 1st-Quarter 2004.

Perform this check procedure only if you are installing a G700 that is using the DC input-power option rather than AC input-power.

Before you connect the G700 media gateway DC feed cable to the DC power source, check the DC power source using a KS-20599 digital voltmeter (or equivalent). To check DC power:

- 1** Verify that the meter reads between -41Vdc and -56 Vdc across the -48Vdc and -48V Return distribution leads from the DC source.
- 2** Verify that the meter reads 0V between the -48V Return lead of the DC power source and the approved ground.
- 3** If either step 1 or step 2 fails the verification, **DO NOT PROCEED** with step 4. Request that a qualified electrician resolve the problem.
- 4** Connect the DC feed cable for each G700 to the G700 chassis.
- 5** Connect the DC feed cable for each G700 to the DC power source.
  - a** Connect the red insulated 10 AWG lead to the -48Vdc Return (positive) source.
  - b** Connect the black insulated 10 AWG lead to the -48Vdc (negative) source.

Figure 15: DC Wiring Diagram



cydf\_dc2 LAO 072403

You have now completed the initial installation of the G700 Media Gateway.

## **2 Installing Hardware for the G700 Media Gateway and S8300 Media Server**

Installation and Cabling

# 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

This chapter covers the procedures to install a new Avaya G700 Media Gateway with an Avaya S8300 Media Server. The S8300 can be configured as either the primary controller or as a local survivable processor (LSP).

The new S8300 ships with the Communication Manager software installed on the hard drive. The G700 ships with the firmware installed on the G700 processors and media modules. However, you may need to upgrade Communication Manager, G700 firmware, and/or media module firmware if the latest available versions are not currently installed.

If the S8300 is configured as an LSP, the primary controller, running Avaya Communication Manager, can be either another S8300, or an S8500 or S8700 Media Server.

## NOTE:

Procedures to install or upgrade an S8500 or S8700 Media Server are not covered in this document. See *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library*, which is on the Avaya Support website (<http://www.avaya.com/support>) or on the CD, 555-233-825.

The steps to install an S8300 configured as an LSP are the same as the steps to install an S8300 configured as the primary controller, with the following additional considerations:

- The version of Communication Manager on the LSP must be the same as, or later than, the version running on the primary controller.
- For an LSP, you administer Communication Manager translations on the primary controller, *not* on the LSP. The primary controller then copies the translations to the LSP.



## Tip:

The Avaya Installation Wizard (IW) performs tasks automatically starting with [Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop](#) on page 111. However, the IW does *not* install and configure an X330 Expansion module. This task must still be performed as described in this document.

In addition, for an S8300 Media Server, IW administers only the Media Gateway screen (add media-gateway). IW also administers only default values for the IP region. Finally, you must define any LSPs on the S8300 Media Server manually using the procedures in this document.

## Installation Overview

---

### G700 components

A P330 stack processor is built into the G700 Media Gateway. (This processor is also known as the *Layer 2 switching processor*). The G700 also contains an MGP processor, a VoIP processor, and media modules. Updating the firmware for one or more of these processors and/or media modules is a required part of most S8300 software upgrades.

### Software and firmware files

A new S8300 Media Server should already have a current release of Communication Manager software installed on its hard drive. The G700 components should have current releases of firmware installed. It may be necessary to upgrade the S8300 software to a later release, or to install an update (patch), and/or upgrade the G700 and media module firmware.

The file containing the S8300 software and G700 firmware has a \*.tar extension. The \*.tar file is on a CD-ROM that you take to the site. Additional files that may be needed are the most recent versions of the software update (patch) file and G700 firmware files. You may need to obtain these files from the Avaya Support web site.

### System Access

#### Initial Access to the G700

Before the P330 stack processor is configured with an IP address, the only way to access it is with a direct connection from your laptop to the Console port on the G700. With this connection, you can assign the IP addresses to the G700 processors, which can then be accessed over the customer LAN.

#### Access to the S8300 and G700

You can access the S8300 and G700 in several ways with either a direct connection or LAN connection.

**NOTE:**

Before the Upgrade Tool can be used to upgrade software on an LSP or firmware on a G700, as summarized below, the LSP must be administered on the primary controller.

#### ***Direct connection to target S8300***

If you are at the location of the target S8300 (primary or LSP), you can connect directly to the S8300 Services port and:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 software by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Avaya Installation Wizard
  - Or, opening the Web interface and using the main menu
- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by

- Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
- Or, telnet to the S8300 and then telnet to the P330 stack processor

### ***Direct connection to the remote primary server (S8300, S8500, or S8700)***

In this case, the target S8300 is an LSP. If you are at the remote location of the primary server, you can connect directly to the server's Services port and:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 (LSP) software by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
  - Or, telnet to the primary server and then telnet to the P330 stack processor and perform the installation commands

For direct connections, the TFTP server must be on the Customer LAN, not on your laptop.

### ***LAN connections***

If you can connect to the customer's LAN, you can:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 software by
  - Opening the Web interface on the S8300 and using the Avaya Installation Wizard
  - Or, Opening the Web interface on the S8300 and using the main menu
- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by
  - Opening the Web interface on the primary server and using the Upgrade Tool
  - Or, telnet to the P330 stack processor and perform the installation commands

For LAN connections the TFTP server can be your laptop or a customer computer on the LAN.

See "Connection and Login Methods" in Chapter 1 for details on how to connect and log into the G700.

## Before Going to the Customer Site

---

The procedures in this section should be completed before going to the customer site or before starting a remote installation.

### Off-site Tasks

#### Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager

The project manager should provide you with forms that contain all the information needed to prepare for this installation. The information primarily consists of IP addresses, subnet mask addresses, logins, passwords, people to contact, the type of system, and equipment you need to install.

Verify that the information provided by the project manager includes all the information requested in your planning forms.



**Tip:**

Appendix B, Information Checklists, provides several checklists to help you gather the installation and upgrade information.

#### Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary

For an upgrade of an existing G700, the existing license file can usually be reused. However, if the customer is adding feature functionality (for example, adding BRI trunks), or if the upgrade is between major releases (for example, 1.3 to 2.0), you will need the serial number of the G700. To get this number, ask the customer's administrator to log in to the S8300 web page and select **View License Status** from the main menu to display the serial number.

For a new installation, you need the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway in order to complete the creation of the customer's license file on the rfa.avaya.com web site. To get this number, look for the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 chassis. If the unit is delivered directly to the customer and you will not have phone or LAN line access from the customer site to access the rfa.avaya.com web site, this task will require a preliminary trip to the customer site.

#### Check FTP Server for Backing up Data

During the installation and upgrade procedures, you will need to back up the system data to an FTP server. Normally, you will use an FTP server on the customer's LAN for backups. To do this, you will need information on how to get to the backup location — login ID and password, and the IP address and directory path on the FTP server. Check with your project manager or the customer for this information.





**CAUTION:**

Before going to the customer site, make sure that you can use a customer server for backups.

Every S8300 media server and local survivable processor (LSP) requires a current and correct version of a license file in order to provide the expected call-processing service.

The license file specifies the features and services that are available on the S8300 media server, such as the number of ports purchased. The license file contains a software version number, hardware serial number, expiration date, and feature mask. The license file is reinstalled to add or remove call-processing features. New license files may be required when upgrade software is installed.

The Avaya authentication file contains the logins and passwords to access the S8300 media server. This file is updated regularly by Avaya services personnel, if the customer has a maintenance contract. All access to Communication Manager from any login is blocked unless a valid authentication file is present on the S8300 media server.

A new license file and the Avaya authentication file may be installed independently of each other or any other server upgrades.

**NOTE:**

For an upgrade, you do not normally need to install a new authentication file (with a .pwd extension). However, if one is required, follow the same steps as with a license file.

## **License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor**

The license file of the S8300 as an LSP must have a feature set that is equal to or greater than that of the media server that acts as primary controller (an S8300 or S8700). This is necessary so that if control passes to the LSP, it can allow the same level of call processing as that of the primary controller.

Additionally, the LSP must have a version of Communication Manager that is identical to that of the primary controller.

The license file requirements of the LSP should be identified in your planning documentation.

## **Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop**

- 1 Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to create a directory on your laptop for storing license and authentication files (for example, C:\licenses).
- 2 Access the Internet from your laptop and go to [rfa.avaya.com](http://rfa.avaya.com).
- 3 Use the System ID or the SAP ID of the customer to locate the license and authentication files for the customer.
- 4 Check that the license and authentication files are complete. You might need to add the serial number of the customer's G700.
- 5 If the files are not complete, complete them.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300 Before Going to the Customer Site

- 6 Use the download or E-mail capabilities of the RFA web site to download the license and authentication files to your laptop.

#### Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary

This step is normally not necessary for an upgrade of an existing system.

**NOTE:**

ART is available only to Avaya associates. Business Partners call 800-295-0099.

The ART tool is a software tool that generates an IP address for a customer's INADS alarming modem. This IP address is required for configuring the S8300's modem for alarming.

**NOTE:**

You must generate a license and authentication file before you use the ART tool. Also, the ART process is available *only* to Avaya personnel. You need an ART login ID and password, which you can set up at the ART web site. Non-Avaya personnel must contact their service support or customer care center for INADS addresses, if required.

- 1 Access the ART web site on your laptop at <http://art.dr.avaya.com>.
- 2 Select **Administer S8x00 Server products for installation script**, log in, enter the customer information, select **Installation Script**, and click **Start Installation script & IP Addr Admin**.  
A script file is created and downloaded or emailed to you.
- 3 You can use the installation script to automatically set up an IP address and other alarming parameters.

#### Obtain the Static Craft Password

After installing new software and new Authentication file, you will need to use a static craft password to access the customer's system. This static password will enable you to log in to the S8300 with a direct connection to the Services port without the ASG challenge/response. To obtain the static password, call the ASG Conversant number, 800-248-1234 or 720-444-5557 (or 877-295-0099 for Avaya Business Partners), and follow the prompts to get the password. In addition to your credentials, you will need to enter the customer's Product ID or the FL or IL number.

#### Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary

*Skip to the next section* if a software update is not required for this installation or upgrade, or if the software for the required updates are on your software CD.

If one or more updates are required for this installation or upgrade procedure, and the update file is not on your software CD, download the update file from the Avaya Support web site to your laptop:

- 1 On your laptop, create a directory to store the file (for example, c:\S8300download).
- 2 Connect to the LAN using a browser on your laptop or the customer's PC and access <http://www.avaya.com/support> on the Internet to copy the required Communication Manager update file to the laptop.

- 3** At the Avaya support site, select the following sequence of links:
  - Software & Firmware Downloads
  - G700 Media Gateway & S8300 Media Server
  - Software Downloads
  - **Avaya Communication Manager Software Updates for MV x.x.x** (where x.x.x is the release that is currently running on the S8300)
- 4** Locate the file name that matches the load listed in your planning documentation. The file name ends with .tar.gz (*for example only*, 03.0.526.5-5767.tar.gz).
- 5** Double-click the file name. The system displays a File Download window.
- 6** Click on **Save this file to disk**.  
Save the file to an appropriate directory on your laptop.

## On-Site Preparation for the Installation

---

Perform these tasks before starting the software installation on the S8300.

### Install the New License File, If Necessary

For new installations, you typically need to load a licences file.

**NOTE:**

If the S8300 is already set up for remote access, Avaya services personnel can copy new license and authentication files directly into the FTP directory on the server. Avaya personnel will notify you when the new files are in place as agreed (for example, by telephone or E-mail). After they are loaded into the FTP directory, install them using the **License File** and **Authentication File** screens from the S8300 main menu web-page.

**NOTE:**

Before an upload or download, be sure the S8300 FTP directory (`/var/home/ftp/pub`) contains no files with a `.pwd` or `.lic` extension. Only one of these files can exist in a directory. If one exists, move, rename, or delete it.

### If Necessary, Rename Old License and Authentication Files from S8300 FTP Directory

Before an upload or download, be sure the S8300 FTP directory (`/var/home/ftp/pub`) contains no files with a `.pwd` or `.lic` extension. Only one of these files can exist in a directory. If one exists, move, rename, or delete it.

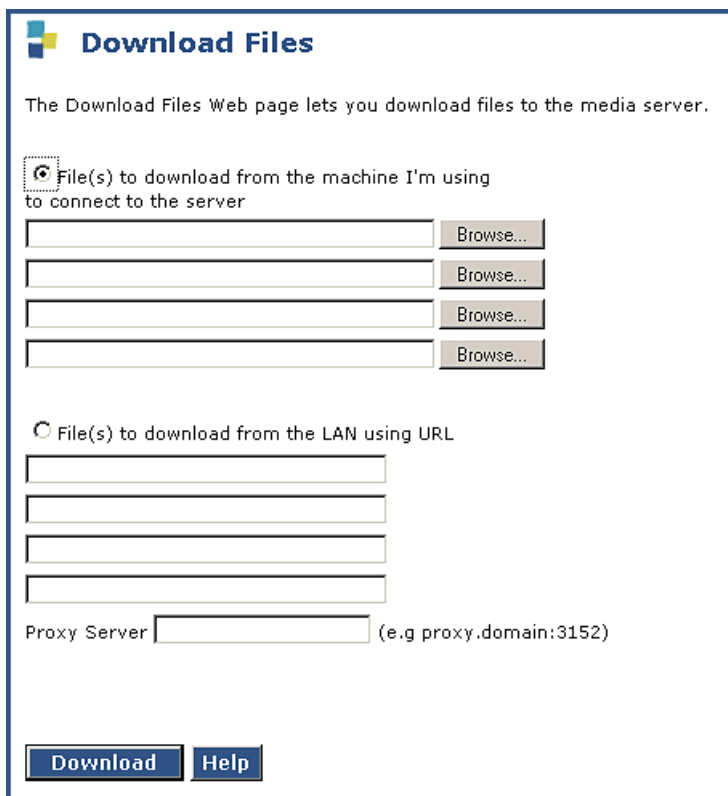
- 1 Log in to a telnet session on the S8300.
- 2 At the command line, type `cd /var/home/ftp/pub` and press **Enter**.
- 3 Type `ls -l` and press **Enter**.  
The system displays a list of files.
- 4 Check the list of files to see if any files with `.lic` or `.pwd` suffixes are in the directory.
- 5 If any `.lic` or `.pwd` files exist, rename them. For example, type `mv <filename>.lic <filename>.lic.old` or `mv <filename>.pwd <filename>.pwd.old` and press **Enter**.
- 6 Leave the telnet session open for a later task.

### Load License File (from Your Laptop)

Use this procedure to transfer the license and password files from the CD or hard drive on your laptop to the S8300 hard drive.

- 1 Log on to the S8300 Web Interface
- 2 In the main menu under Miscellaneous, click **Download Files**.

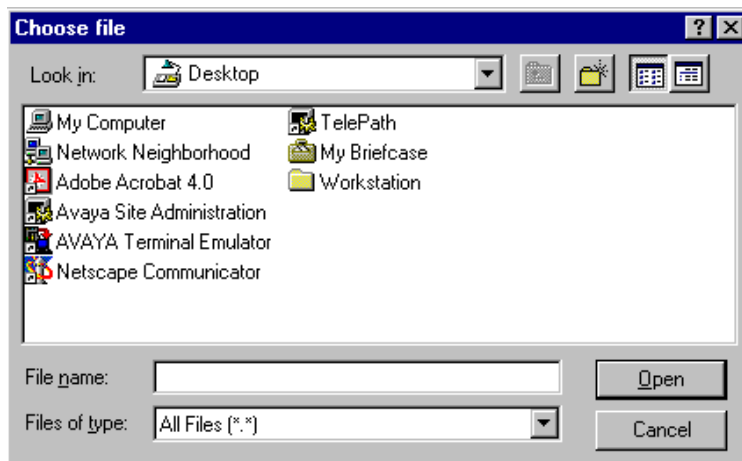
**Download Files Screen**



- 3 Select "Files to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server" and click **Browse** for the first field.

The S8300 displays the Choose File screen, which allows you to select files from your laptop.

**Choose File Screen**



- 4 Locate the customer's license (.lic) file.
- 5 When you have selected the .lic file, click **Open** in the dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse** for the second field.
- 7 Locate the customer's .pwd file on your laptop.

**3** Installing a New G700 with an S8300  
On-Site Preparation for the Installation

- 8** When you have selected the .pwd file, click **Open** in the dialog box.
- 9** When you have finished entering the files to be uploaded, click **Load File**.  
When the files are successfully transferred, the system displays the status screen.

**If Necessary, Install License and Authentication Files**

- 1** Under Security, select **License File**

**License File Screen**

**License File**

The License File Web page allows installation of Avaya license files.

MultiVantage License Mode: Normal  
Network used for License: Carrier MCP  
License Serial Number is 01DR12310260 on carrier MCP

Undo last install  
 Install the license file I previously downloaded  
 Install the license file specified below

File Path    
URL   
Proxy Server  e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 2** Select "Install the license file I previously downloaded" and click **Submit**.  
The system tells you the license is installed successfully.
- 3** Under Security, select **Authentication File**.

## Install Authentication Screen

**Authentication File**

The Authentication File Web page allows installation of Avaya authentication files.

Install the Authentication file I previously downloaded

Install the Authentication file I specified below

File Path

URL

Proxy Server  (e.g. proxy.domain:3152)

- 4 Select "Install the Authentication file I previously downloaded" and click **Install**.  
The system tells you the authentication is installed successfully

## Run Save Translations (Only If New License and/or Authentication Files Installed)

### CAUTION:

This procedure saves the official passwords for the customer's system. If you fail to perform this step now, you may be irretrievably locked out of the system later in the installation when the system reboots.

- 1 In the telnet session, open a SAT session. and log in again as **craft (or dadmin)**.
- 2 At the SAT prompt, type **save translation** and press **Enter**. When the save is finished, the system displays the message, Command successfully completed.

## Determine Necessary Upgrades to the S8300

This procedure determines whether you need to upgrade Communication Manager on the S8300. If you do not need to upgrade Communication Manager, skip to [Configure the S8300](#).

### Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop

Normally, during an upgrade, you will have the CD-ROM that contains the latest software to install. The latest software for the S8300 has a file name that has a .tar extension and reflects the most recent load of software (*For example only:* S8300-02.0-00.0.218.6.tar; for systems with IA770, the filename would be similar to S8300msg-02.0-00.0.218.6.tar). The latest update (patch) software for Communication

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

On-Site Preparation for the Installation

Manager has a .tar.gz extension and a file name that reflects the most recent load of software (for example, 03.0.110.4-4925.tar.gz).

This .tar file will also contain the most recent firmware for the G700 Media Gateway, the various media modules, and the P330 stack processor.



#### Tip:

The Avaya Installation Wizard performs tasks automatically starting with this section.

- 1 Log in to the S8300 Web interface.
- 2 Choose **Download Files** under Miscellaneous on the left pane of the main menu.

### Download Files Screen

**Download Files**

The Download Files Web page lets you download files to the media server.

File(s) to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server

File(s) to download from the LAN using URL

Proxy Server  (e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 3 Select "Files to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server," then click **Browse** for the first file. The S8300 displays the Choose File window, which allows you to select files from your laptop.
- 4 Browse to the *tarfiles* directory on the CD (or to where the .tar files are stored on your laptop). Double-click the filename of the .tar file for the upgrade software (for example, S8300-02.0-00.0.219.1.tar or S8300msg-02.0-00.0.219.1.tar if using IA770). You need only one .tar file for the upgrade software.
- 5 Repeat the previous two steps for each additional file that you want to upload. (For example, the latest software update file, if any).
- 6 Click **Download**.



When the files are successfully transferred, the system displays the Download Files Results screen with the following message: "The following files have been successfully uploaded to the server."



**CAUTION:**

At this point you are finished with the software CD-ROM. ***Remove the CD from your laptop now*** to avoid possible problems the next time your laptop is rebooted.

## Install New Software on the S8300

---

Although this is a new installation and a version of Communication Manager already exists on the S8300, there may be new software loads available that you need to install. If necessary, follow the steps in this section to install the most recent version of Communication Manager.

### Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone

- 1 Under Server click **Server Date/Time**.

#### Server Date/Time Window

**Server Date/Time**

The Server Date/Time Web page lets you reset date and time when the server is used as its own time source.

The current time is: **Wed Aug 20 19:10:00 MDT 2003**

Date  (mm/dd/yyyy)

Select time  (hh:mm)  
*Use 24-hour format*

Time Zone  
America/Denver  
America/Detroit  
America/Dominica  
America/Edmonton  
America/Eirunepe  
America/El\_Salvador  
America/Ensenada  
America/Fort\_Wayne

**Submit** **Help**

- 2 Verify or set the media server's time close enough to the NTS's time, date, and time zone that synchronization can occur (within about 5 minutes).



#### **CAUTION:**

For a new installation, be sure to set the time and time zone before installing the S8300 software. Failure to do so may cause network problems.

### Install New Software

- 1 Launch the Maintenance Web Interface.
- 2 Choose **Install New Software** under Server Upgrades from the left pane of the main menu.  
The S8300 displays the Install New Software screen.

### Choose Software Screen



- 3 On the Choose Software screen, select the software release number that you want to install (for example, the release listed in your planning documentation). Click **Continue**.  
The S8300 displays the Choose License Source screen.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

#### Choose License Source Screen

**Install New Software**

**Progress:**

- Choose Software
- Choose License Source**
- Review Notices
- Begin Installation
- Install in Progress
- Reboot Server
- Reboot In Progress
- Install License Files
- Installation Complete

**Choose License Source**

You must have a software license file before you install this software release. If you do not have this file available, use tools in the main window to transfer it to the system. DO NOT continue this installation until it is available.

Select a source for the license files:

- I will supply the license files myself when prompted later in this process.
- I want to reuse the license files from the currently active partition on this server.

It is not normally necessary to update the authentication information, but if the new software documentation instructs you to, you may update it as well.

- Do not update authentication information.
- Update authentication information as well as license information.

Click **Continue** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to cancel the install.

**Note:** that if the web session times out, you can recover the upgrade by logging in again and clicking the Install New Software link from the main menu.

**Continue** **Cancel** **Help**

- 4 If you have installed the license and authentication files, select the following:
- I want to reuse the license files from the currently active partition on this server.
  - Do not update authentication information.

For a normal installation, the license and authentication files should have been installed at this point. If these files have not been installed, select the following:

- **I will supply the license/authentication files myself when prompted later in this process.**
  - Update authentication information as well as license information.
- 5 Click **Continue**. The system displays the Review Notices screen.

## Review Notices Screen



### Install New Software

**Progress:**

- Choose Software
- Choose License Source
- Review Notices
- Begin Installation
- Install in Progress
- Reboot Server
- Reboot In Progress
- Installation Complete

**Review Notices**



This server will be unavailable for telephony during portions of the installation.



**STOP!** Back up the current data before making any changes. To back up now, switch to the main browser window and select BACK UP NOW from the task menu. Return to this browser window to complete the installation after the data is backed up.

**Warning:** Tripwire is running on your system. Before continuing, you should review the most recent tripwire full audit report and verify there is no unwanted software on your system. When the upgrade procedure is finished, you will need to update the tripwire signature data base. If unwanted software is present prior to the upgrade, it will be incorporated into the new signature data base as valid software. To review the latest tripwire audit report, select "Tripwire Commands" from the main menu, and then select "View tripwire report" and click enter. Then view the latest report.

**Verify Software Configuration Notice**

This server must be properly configured before installing new software. If this server has not been configured, switch to the main browser window and select Configure Server from the task menu. Return to this browser window after you complete the server configuration process.

Click **Continue** to proceed. Click **Cancel** to cancel the install.

**Note:** that if the web session times out, you can recover the upgrade by logging in again and clicking the Install New Software link from the main menu.

Continue
Cancel
Help

- 6 For a new installation, or if you previously ran a backup, you do not need to run a backup at this time. If your planning documents instruct you to enable Tripwire, follow the instructions to reset the signature database.

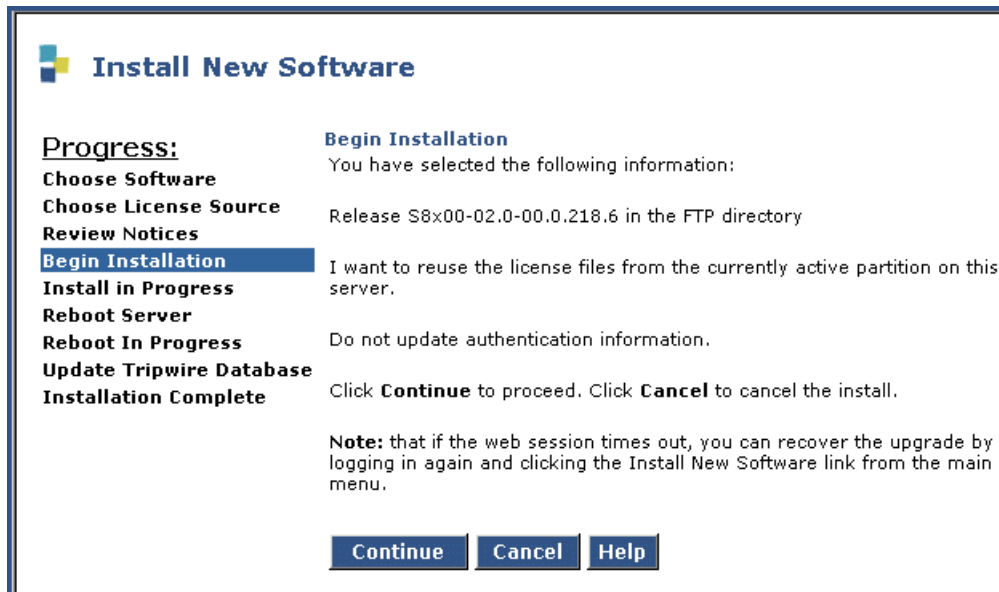
- 7 Click **Continue**.

The S8300 displays the Begin Installation screen, which summarizes the request you have made.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

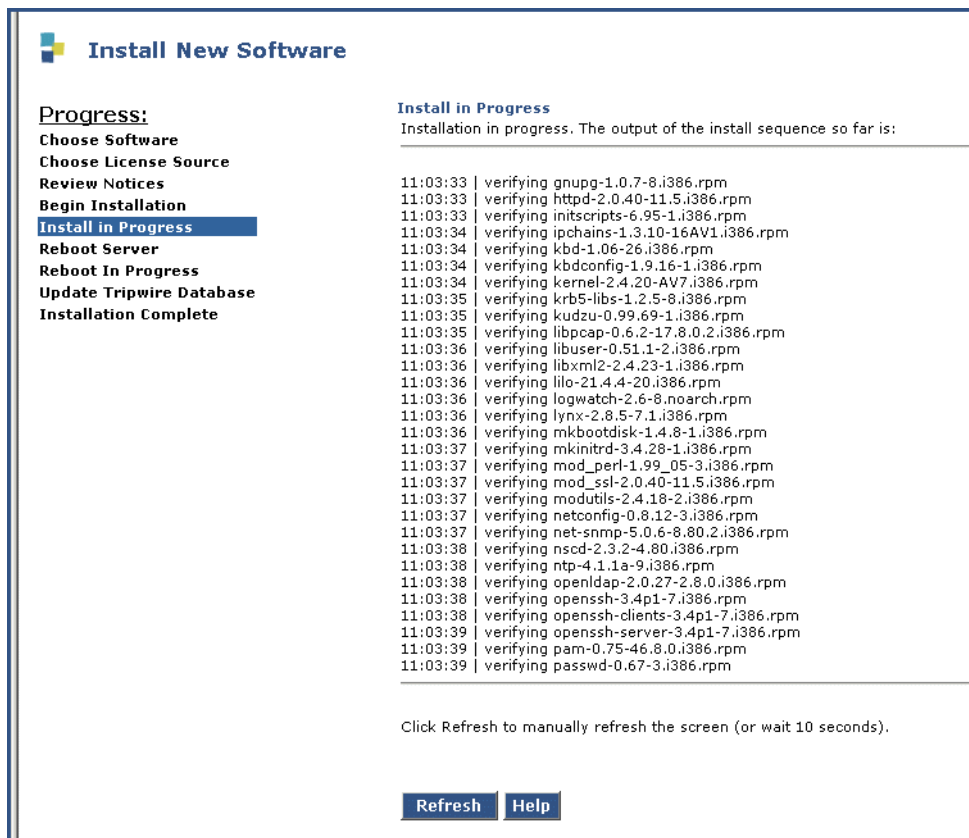
#### Begin Installation Screen



8 At the Begin Installation screen, click **Continue**.

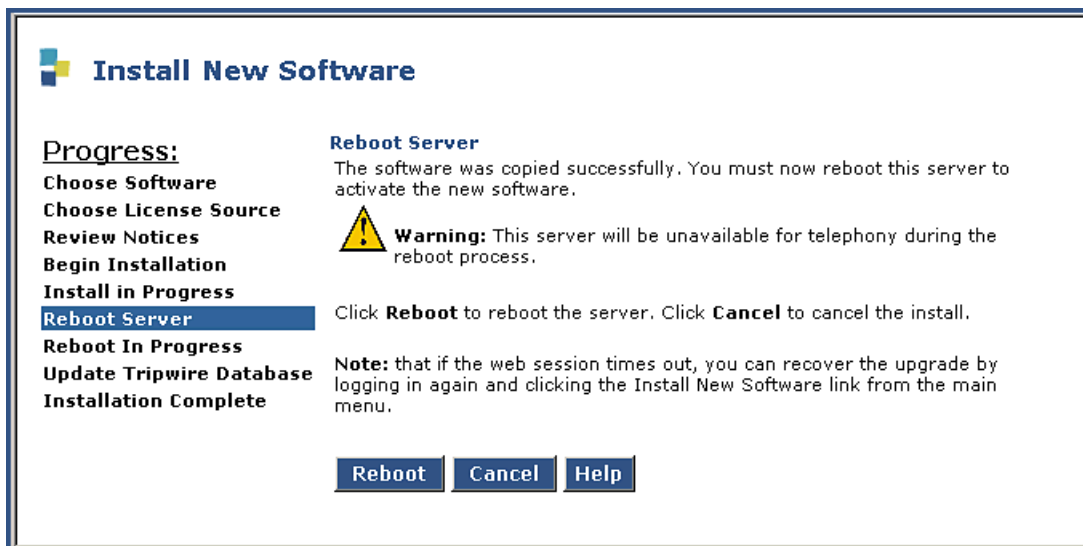
The S8300 displays the Install in Progress screen.

#### Install in Progress Screen



- The installation will take approximately 10 to 20 minutes. The Install in Progress screen refreshes every 10 seconds or on demand by clicking the **Refresh** button. When complete, the S8300 displays the Reboot Server screen.

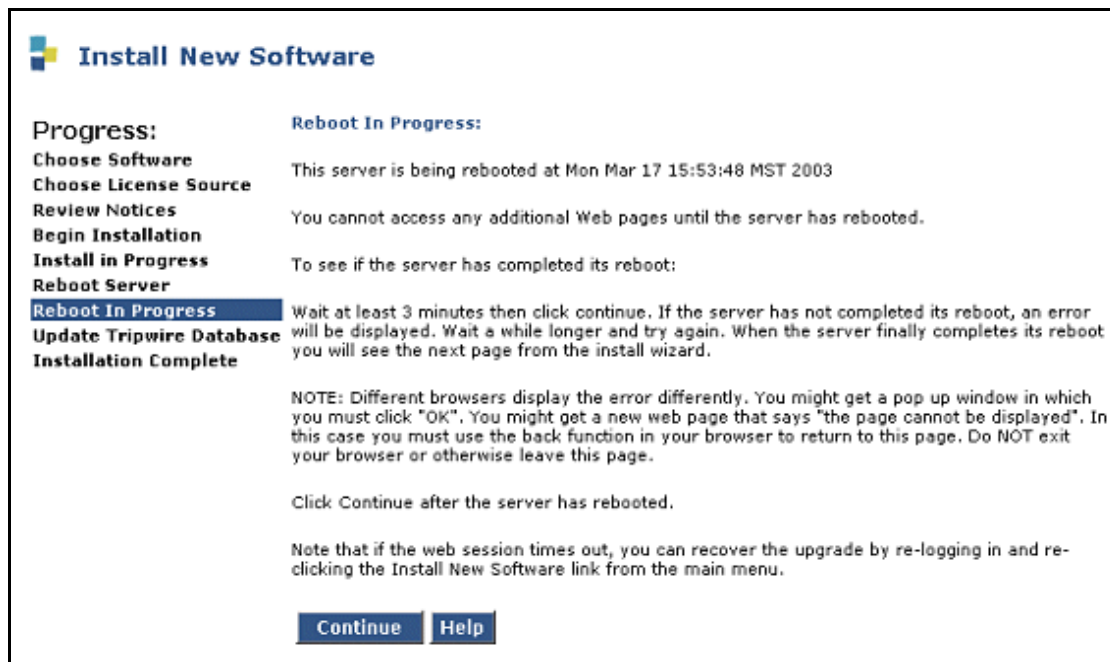
**Reboot Server Window**



- Click **Reboot**.

If IA770 is being used, it may take approximately 5 minutes to shut down IA770 before the reboot begins. The S8300 displays the Reboot in Progress screen.

**Reboot in Progress Screen**



**NOTE:**

The reboot can take 20 minutes or longer. The system does not automatically tell you when the reboot is complete.

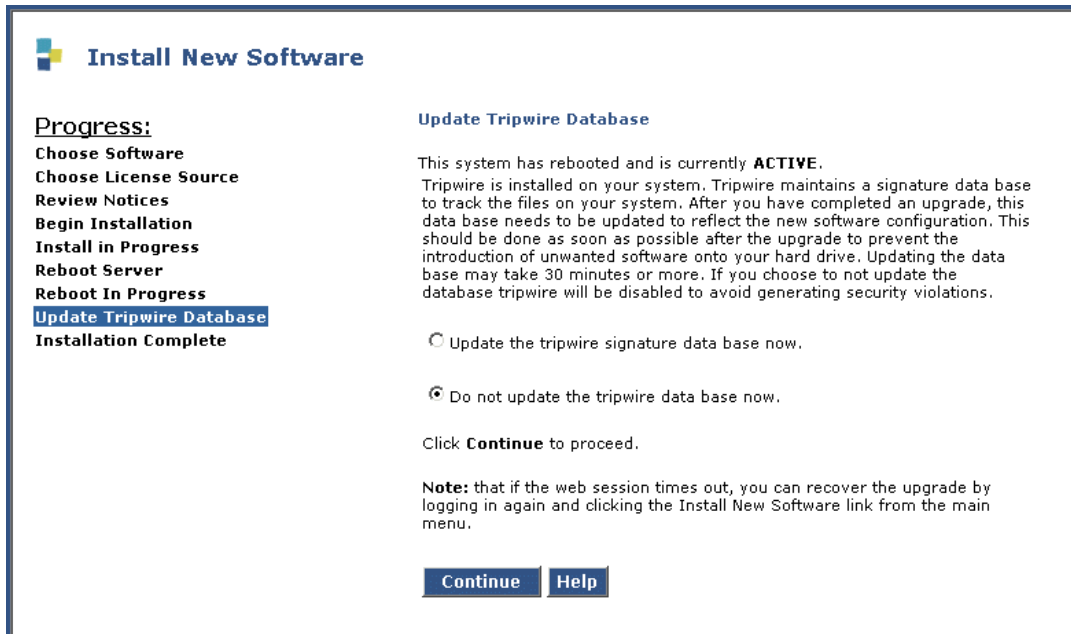
### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

Wait 5 minutes (or about 20 minutes if running IA770) and then click **Continue**. If you click Continue before the reboot is finished, the screen will display "Expired Page." If you see the Expired Page message, refresh the browser. Or, if the Session Timeout screen appears, close the screen, logoff, and log on again. Click the **Pickup** button.

You can also monitor the LEDs on the S8300 for progress on the installation. The Services port jack should have one yellow LED on the left that stays lit. The green LED on the right flashes until the reboot is complete.

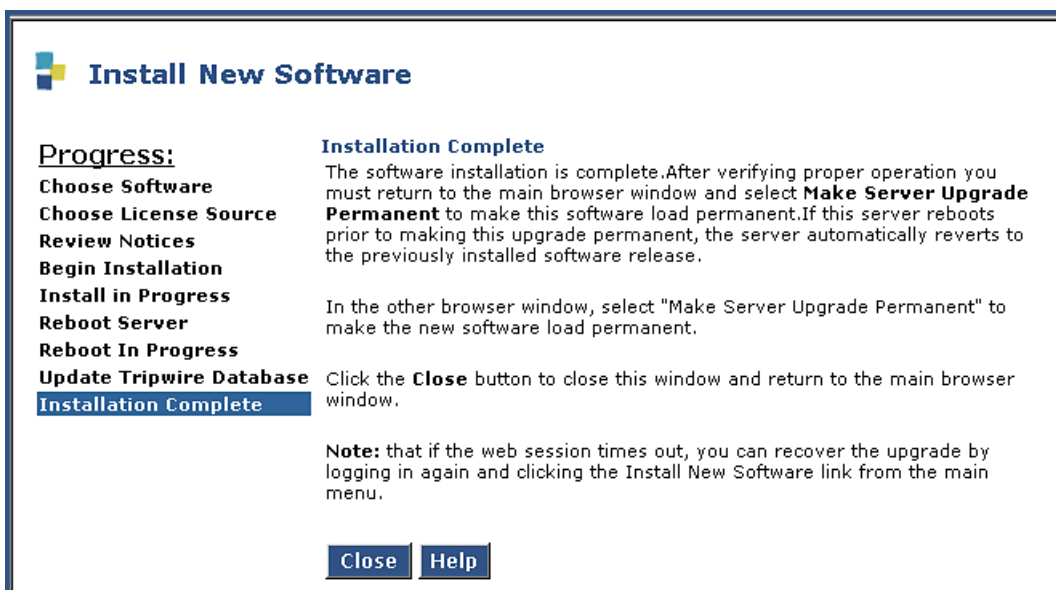
- 11 When the reboot is complete, clicking **Continue** will display the Update Tripwire Database screen.



- 12 Unless instructed in your planning documents to update the tripwire database, select "Do not update the tripwire data base now" and click **Continue**.  
The system displays the Installation Complete screen.



## Installation Complete Screen



- 13 Click **Close**. You are returned to the main menu.
- 14 Under Server, click **Software Version** to verify the new software version.

## Make the Upgrade Permanent

### CAUTION:

You must make the upgrade of the software permanent so that the software is recognized and kept on the S8300. If you fail to make software permanent, then the next time you reboot, old software will become active.

- 1 From the S8300 main menu, under Server Upgrades click **Make Upgrade Permanent**.

The S8300 displays the Make Server Upgrade Permanent window.

- 2 Click **Submit**.

When the new S8300 upgrade software is permanent, the S8300 displays the message: The commit operation completed successfully.

## Install Communication Manager update (patch) files, if any

### NOTE:

Skip this procedure if there are no Communication Manager update files to install.

- 1 From your laptop, start a telnet session to the S8300.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

If the AUDIX installation has not completed, the following warning screen will appear.

```
Red Hat Linux release 8.0 (Psyche)
Kernel 2.4.20-AV7 on an i686
Login: craft
Password:
Last login: Fri Oct 31 09:46:17 from services-laptop

WARNING

CHIA Installation in progress
ACM must remain stopped until completed.
NIS Logins are unavailable during install
Suppress alarm origination? (y/n) [y] █
```



#### CAUTION:

If this warning screen appears, close the telnet session, wait about 5 minutes, and try again.

- 2 At the telnet prompt, type **cd /var/home/ftp/pub** and press **Enter** to access the FTP directory.
- 3 At the prompt, type **ls -ltr** and press **Enter** to list files in the FTP directory.  
The S8300 displays a list of files in the FTP directory.
- 4 Verify that the directory contains the update .tar.gz file you have uploaded, if any.
- 5 Type **update\_unpack <update> .tar.gz**, where *<update>* is the release or issue number of the latest update file. (For example, **00.0.218.4-1003.tar.gz**). Press **Enter**.
- 6 Type **update\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was installed.
- 7 Type **update\_activate <update>**, where *<update>* is the release or issue number of the latest update file. (For example, **00.0.218.4-1003**. Do *not* use the .tar.gz extension at the end of the file name). Press **Enter**.  
  
The S8300 goes through a software reset system 4. The S8300 also may display the message /opt/ecs/sbin/drestart 1 4 command failed. Ignore this message. You must wait until the restart/reset has completed before entering additional commands.  
  
The S8300 displays a message that the update was applied.
- 8 Type **update\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was applied.

### Install IA770 update (patch) files, if any

If IA770 is being used, a post-upgrade update (patch) for IA770 may be required. See the IA770 documentation for procedures to install an update. The documentation can be found on the Avaya Support Web Site at <http://support.avaya.com>. Then click on **Product Documentation** and then **Messaging** and scroll down to the INTUITY document links.

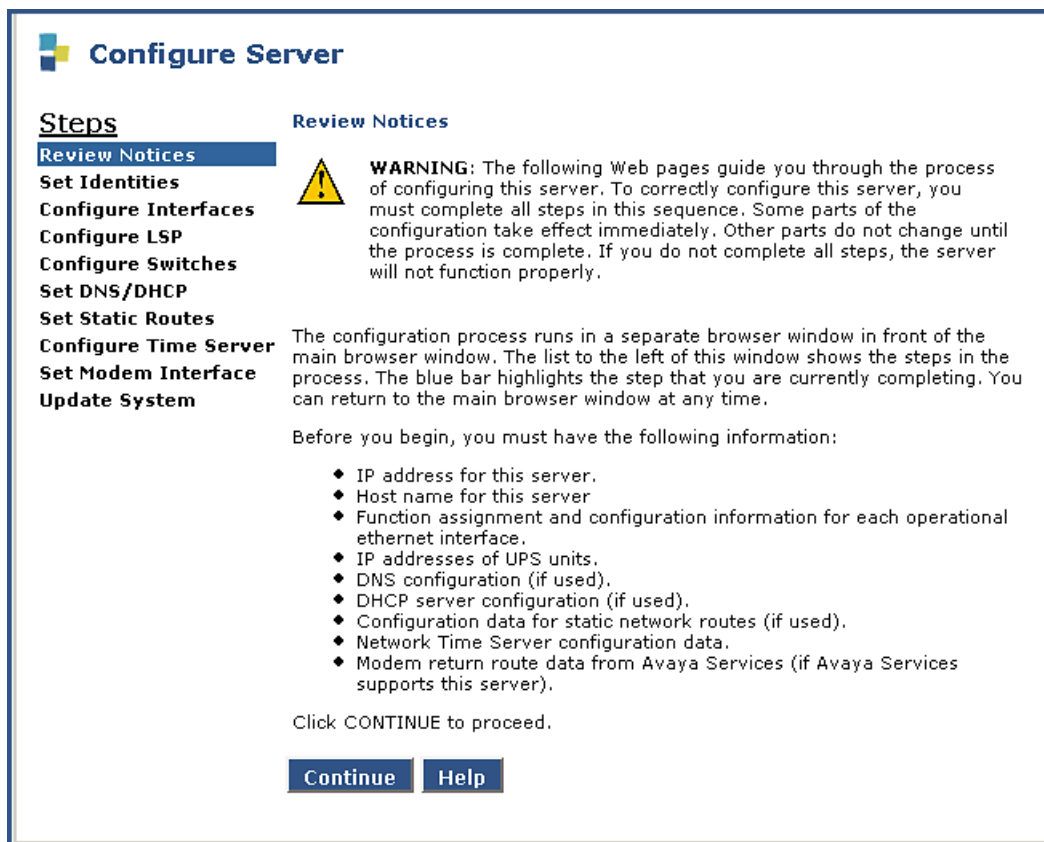
## Configure the S8300

 **CAUTION:**

For a new installation, be sure you have set the time and timezone before proceeding. Failure to do so may cause network problems later.

- 1 On the S8300 Web page main menu, click on **Configure Server** under Server Configuration and Upgrade. The system displays the Configure Server screen.

### Configure Server Screen



- 2 Click **Continue**.

The system displays the **Back Up Data Notice** screen.

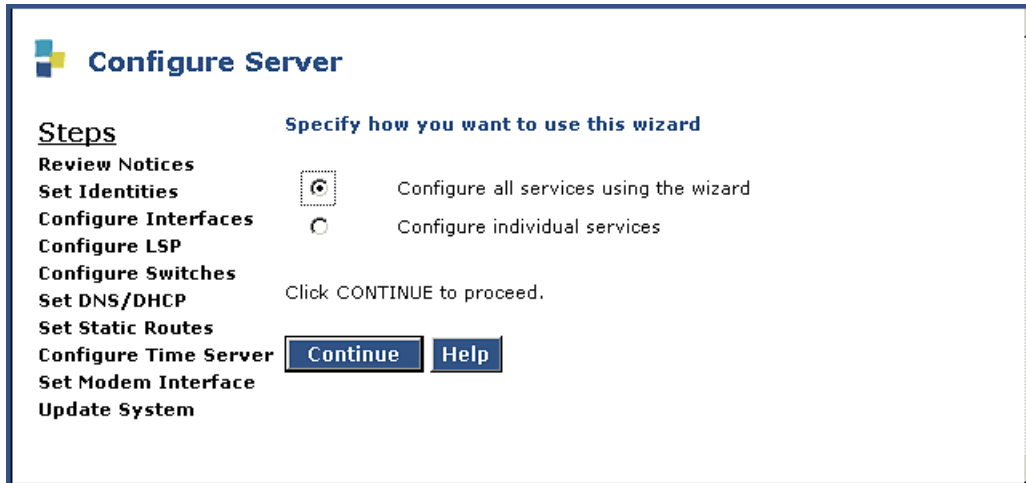
- For a new installation, a backup at this point is unnecessary. You will perform a backup after the installation.
- For an upgrade, perform the backup, as described in [Back up the System](#) on page 168.

- 3 Click **Continue**.

The **Select Method** screen appears.

**3** Installing a New G700 with an S8300  
Install New Software on the S8300

## Select Method Screen



- 4** Click **Configure all services using the wizard**. With this option, the wizard will guide you through the screens to configure all of the IP services.

**NOTE:**

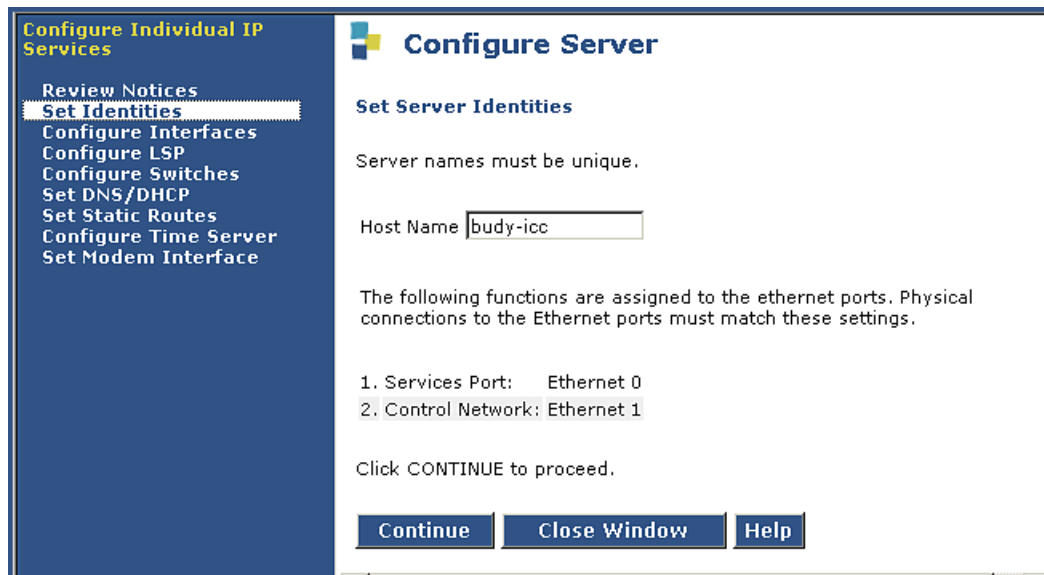
This option is for the built-in configuration wizard, *not* the Avaya Installation Wizard (IW).

If you are upgrading an existing system, you may also click **Configure individual services**. This method is useful after an initial configuration has been completed and one or more services need to be changed.

- 5** Click **Continue**.

The **Set Server Identities** screen appears.

## Set Server Identities Screen



- 6 Enter the host name for this server in the **Host Name** field (see your planning forms).  
The host name uniquely identifies this server.



**CAUTION:**

If the S8300 on the G700 is hosting an IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application *with Digital Networking*, the name *must* be 10 characters or less.

The screen also lists the current physical cabling to the server. For example, the Services laptop is connected to Ethernet interface 0. Ethernet functions are fixed on the S8300 media server and cannot be changed.

- 7 Click **Continue**.

The **Configure Ethernet Interfaces** screen appears.

**3** Installing a New G700 with an S8300  
Install New Software on the S8300

## Configure Ethernet Interfaces Screen

**Configure Individual IP Services**

- Review Notices
- Set Identities
- Configure Interfaces**
- Configure LSP
- Configure Switches
- Set DNS/DHCP
- Set Static Routes
- Configure Time Server
- Set Modem Interface

### Configure Server

#### Configure Ethernet Interfaces

**Ethernet 0: Laptop**

IP address 192.11.13.6  
Subnet mask 255.255.255.252

**Ethernet 1: Control Network**

IP address server1 (budy-icc)   
Gateway   
Subnet mask   
Speed (Current speed : 100 Megabit full duplex) AUTO SENSE

Click CHANGE to change values.

- 8** Use your planning forms to complete the fields for the:
- **IP Address** assigned to the S8300 Media Server. Check your planning forms.
  - **Gateway** with the IP address of the default gateway of the subnet.
  - **Subnet Mask** with the value of the subnet mask of the hosting subnet.
  - **Speed** which should be set to Auto Sense.



**CAUTION:**

Do not guess on the addresses on this screen. If you enter the wrong addresses, service will be disrupted across the customer's network and may be difficult to correct.

- 9** Click **Continue**.

The **Configure Local Survivable Processor** screen appears.

## Configure Local Survivable Processor Screen

**Configure Server**

**Configure Local Survivable Processor**

**Warning:** Changing the role of this server will **wipe out** any **translations** residing on this server and will cause a **MultiVantage reset**. In addition, a change from LSP to non LSP mode and vice versa will cause a **reboot**.

This page alone is not enough to completely change the role of this server. The appropriate **license file** will still need to be downloaded and installed.

This is NOT a local survivable processor.

This is a local survivable processor with a S8700 media server as the primary controller.

Component	IP Address
CLAN IP address of the primary controller	<input type="text"/>
Primary server 1	<input type="text"/>
Primary server 2	<input type="text"/>
Secondary server 1	<input type="text"/> (optional)
Secondary server 2	<input type="text"/> (optional)

This is a local survivable processor with a S8500 media server as the primary controller.

CLAN IP address of the primary controller	<input type="text"/>
Primary controller's IP Address	<input type="text"/>

This is a local survivable processor with a S8300 media server as the primary controller.

Primary controller's IP Address

Click CHANGE to change values.

**Change** **Close Window** **Help**

**10** Select one of the following options:

- This is NOT a local survivable processor.
- This is a local survivable processor (LSP) with an S8700 media server as the primary controller.
- This is a local survivable processor (LSP) with an S8500 media server as the primary controller.
- This is a local survivable processor with a S8300 media server as the primary controller.

**11** If you clicked the LSP option with an S8500 or S8700, complete the additional fields as follows:

**CLAN IP address of the primary controller** — Enter the IP address of any CLAN board in the S8700 media server configuration.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

**IP address of server 1 (required)** — Enter the IP address of the primary S8700 server.

**IP address of server 2 (optional)** — Enter the IP address of the duplicated primary S8700 server. If server 2 is present, this specific IP address must also be entered.

**IP address of secondary server 1 (optional)** — Enter the IP address of the secondary S8700 server.

**IP address of secondary server 2 (optional)** — Enter the IP address of the duplicated secondary S8700 server

#### NOTE:

The CLAN boards must be TN799DP running version 5 or greater firmware. Be sure to check the firmware version for these boards on the S8500 or S8700. For information on how to upgrade the firmware on the S8500 or S8700, please see the section "Upgrade Firmware in Selected Port Cabinet Packs" in *Upgrading the Avaya Media Server Configuration* in the S8700 documentation portion of this documentation CD ("Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825").

12 If you clicked the LSP option with an S8300, simply enter the IP address of the S8300 server.

13 Click **Continue**.

The **Ethernet Adjuncts** screen appears.

## Ethernet Adjuncts Screen

The screenshot shows the 'Configure Server' web interface. On the left is a blue sidebar with a menu of options: 'Configure Individual IP Services', 'Review Notices', 'Set Identities', 'Configure Interfaces', 'Configure LSP', 'Configure Switches' (highlighted), 'Set DNS/DHCP', 'Set Static Routes', 'Configure Time Server', and 'Set Modem Interface'. The main content area is titled 'Configure Server' and contains the 'Ethernet Adjuncts' section. Under 'UPS', there is a dropdown menu for 'Number of UPS Units' currently set to '0'. Below this are three input fields for 'UPS 1': 'IP Address', 'SNMP GET', and 'SNMP SET'. A text prompt says 'Click CHANGE to change values.' At the bottom of the main area are three buttons: 'Change', 'Close Window', and 'Help'.

14 In the Number of UPS Units field, select the number of Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS) units connected to the S8300 Media Server. This number is usually **0** or **1**.

15 If you enter 1 in the Number of UPS Units field, enter its IP address in the UPS 1 IP address field. The system will use this address to trap power loss signals from the UPS.

16 (Optional) If you enter 1 in the Number of UPS Units field, enter the SNMP community strings for the UPS in the SNMP Get and Set fields.

17 Click **Continue**.

The **External DNS Server Configuration** screen appears.



Most corporate networks have one or more domain name service (DNS) servers that associate an IP address with a device's name. When the DNS is administered with the S8300 Media Server name, you will be able to access the S8300 server by name as well as IP address over the corporate network.



**CAUTION:**

If you configure an external DNS server, the DNS will be an extra device that, if not working properly, can cause delays in S8300 access.

**External DNS Server Configuration Screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Configure Server' web interface. On the left is a dark blue sidebar with the title 'Configure Individual IP Services' and a list of menu items: 'Review Notices', 'Set Identities', 'Configure Interfaces', 'Configure LSP', 'Configure Switches', 'Set DNS/DHCP' (highlighted), 'Set Static Routes', 'Configure Time Server', and 'Set Modem Interface'. The main content area is titled 'Configure Server' and contains the 'External DNS Server Configuration' section. A note states: 'Note: If DNS is not used, leave these fields blank.' Below the note are several input fields: 'Name Servers' with three rows for 'IP Address 1', 'IP Address 2', and 'IP Address 3'; 'DNS Domain' with one field containing 'dr.avaya.com'; and 'Search Domain' with five rows labeled 'Search Domain 1' through 'Search Domain 5', with the first containing 'dr.avaya.com'. At the bottom of the form area, it says 'Click CHANGE to change values.' and there are three buttons: 'Change', 'Close Window', and 'Help'.

- 18 Enter the appropriate IP addresses from your planning documentation. Then, click **Continue**.

In the **Name Servers** fields, enter the IP addresses for up to 3 DNS servers on the corporate network. The S8300 Media Server checks the DNS servers in the order in which their addresses are entered for name-to-IP address resolution.

In the **DNS Domain** field, enter the name for the part of the network on which the DNS server(s) reside (for example, mycompany.com). Internet domains are sets of addresses generally organized by location or purpose.

In the **Search Domain** fields, **1** to **5**, enter the names of the domains that will be searched, in order, if a user enters an unqualified or incomplete name (such as a host name only without its domain).

**NOTE:**

For **Search Domain 1**, enter the *same domain name* you entered in the **DNS Domain** field above.

- 19 Click **Continue**.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

The **Static Network Routes** screen appears.

Static Network Routes are used only if the customer has defined additional routes for IP packets other than through the default gateway.

## Set Network Routes Screen

**Configure Individual IP Services**

- Review Notices
- Set Identities
- Configure Interfaces
- Configure LSP
- Configure Switches
- Set DNS/DHCP
- Set Static Routes**
- Configure Time Server
- Set Modem Interface

### Configure Server

#### Static Network Routes (Optional)

Add routes by filling in the fields. Remove routes by deleting information from the fields.

	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface
1.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
9.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Click CHANGE to change values.

**20** Leave these entries blank, unless the planning documentation supplies routing information.

**21** Click **Continue**.

The system displays the **Network Time Server** screen.

The **Network Time Server** screen allows you to set up the Network Time Protocol (NTP) Service.

## Network Time Server Screen

**Configure Individual IP Services**

- Review Notices
- Set Identities
- Configure Interfaces
- Configure LSP
- Configure Switches
- Set DNS/DHCP
- Set Static Routes
- Configure Time Server**
- Set Modem Interface

**Configure Server**

**Network Time Server**

Time of Day Synchronization

Disable NTP, Use Local Clock

Enable NTP, Use Local Clock

Use these Network Time Servers:

Primary  (IP Address or DNS Name)

Trusted Key:  (Leave blank if not used)

Secondary

Trusted Key:  (Leave blank if not used)

Tertiary

Trusted Key:  (Leave blank if not used)

Multicast Client Support  Yes  No

Additional Trusted Keys:

Requested Key:

Control Key:

Install keys file from /var/home/ftp/pub/keys.install

Do not install a new keys file

Click CHANGE to change values.

You will be able to make the following choices, according to the planning documentation:

- Choose **Disable NTP** if the user does not want the Network Time Protocol to run on the S8300 Media Server. Select this option to disable Network Time Protocol (NTP) and use the media server's own clock as a time source. You typically choose this option if this is the only media server in the configuration and it will not be synchronized with an external time source.
- Choose **Enable NTP** if the S8300 Media Server will be the primary NTP server. Optionally, you can provide the address of the survivable S8300 Media Server in the local survivable configuration. Select this option to enable NTP and use the media server's own clock as a time source. You typically choose this option if there is more than one media server in the configuration (for example, this or another media server may be acting as an LSP standby unit), and an external time source is not available to provide synchronization between the units. Select this option to enable NTP and use its own clock as a time source. You need to set up the time clock with Set Server Time/Timezone option. You need to set the server clock using the Set Server Time / Timezone screen. You can do this now, then return to the Configure Server window.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

— Choose **Use these Network Time Servers** to enter up to three time servers. Select this option to enable NTP and be synchronized with an external time source on the corporate network.

**22** If you did not select **Use these Network Time Servers** in the previous step, click **Continue** and go to the next step

If you selected **Use these Network Time Servers** in the previous step, complete the following fields. Specify up to three network time servers by IP address or DNS name in the order in which you want the S8300 Media Server to check them. You should always specify at least two.

**Primary** — Enter an IP address or DNS name. If a trusted key is required, enter a valid key number in the **Trusted Key** field.

**Secondary** — Enter an IP address or DNS name. If a trusted key is required, enter a valid key number in the **Trusted Key** field.

**Tertiary** — Enter an IP address or DNS name. If a trusted key is required, enter a valid key number in the **Trusted Key** field.

**Multicast Client Support** — Select **Yes** if the NTS routinely broadcasts its timing messages to multiple clients. Select **No** if the S8300 Media Server is to poll (directly request the time from) the NTS.

**Additional trusted keys** (optional) — If you want to encrypt the messages between an NTS and the S8300 Media Server, list the valid key numbers, up to 3, provided by your LAN administrator on the pre installation worksheet. Trusted keys function like a checksum to make sure the time packets are valid. Use a blank space as a delimiter if there is more than one key (for example, 2 3 6 to specify valid keys 2, 3, and 6). These numbers are associated with encryption codes in a "keys" file.

**Request key** — Enter a key to send a remote query request. Only 1 key is allowed in this field.

**Control key** — Enter a key to query and request changes to an NTS. Only 1 key is allowed in this field.

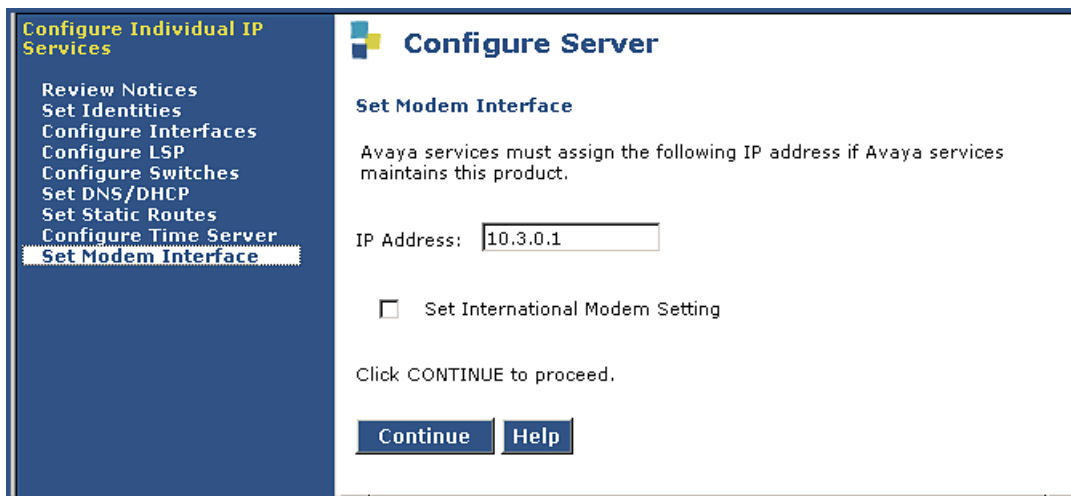
**23** If you have a file named keys.install to allow the media server to communicate with the NTS, select **Install keys from var/home/ftp/keys.install**. If you do not have a keys.install file, select **Do not install a new keys file**.

If you have a keys.install file, upload or create it now, if possible. See [Provide the keys.install File \(If Necessary\)](#) on page 135. If you upload the keys file later, you have to run the Configure Server wizard again to have the system recognize it.

Click **Continue**.

**24** At the next screen, **Set Modem Interface**, you can set up the Modem Interface IP Address for Avaya-provided service.

## Set Modem Interface Screen

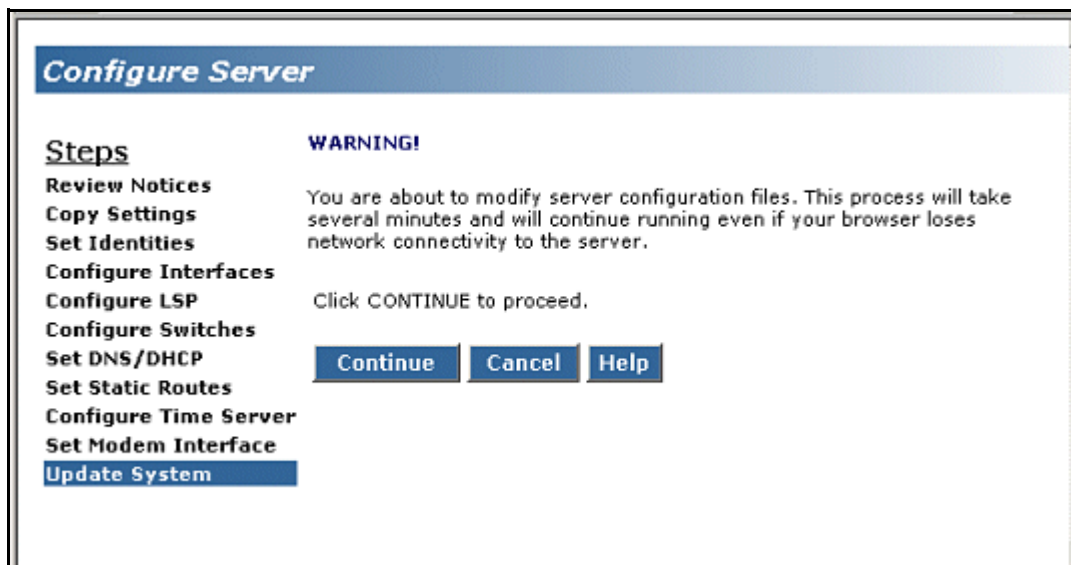


The Modem IP Address for the Avaya INADS alarming is assigned by the ART tool. You should have obtained this address when you performed [Run the Automatic Registration Tool \(ART\) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary](#) on page 106.

Click **Continue**.

The next **Warning** screen indicates that the data entry process has concluded and that the system is ready to be configured.

## Warning Screen



This is the final step in configuring the system. When you click Continue, all the configuration information will be written to disk and implemented. This step normally completes in about 5 minutes.

This is your last chance to cancel or correct the configuration.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Software on the S8300

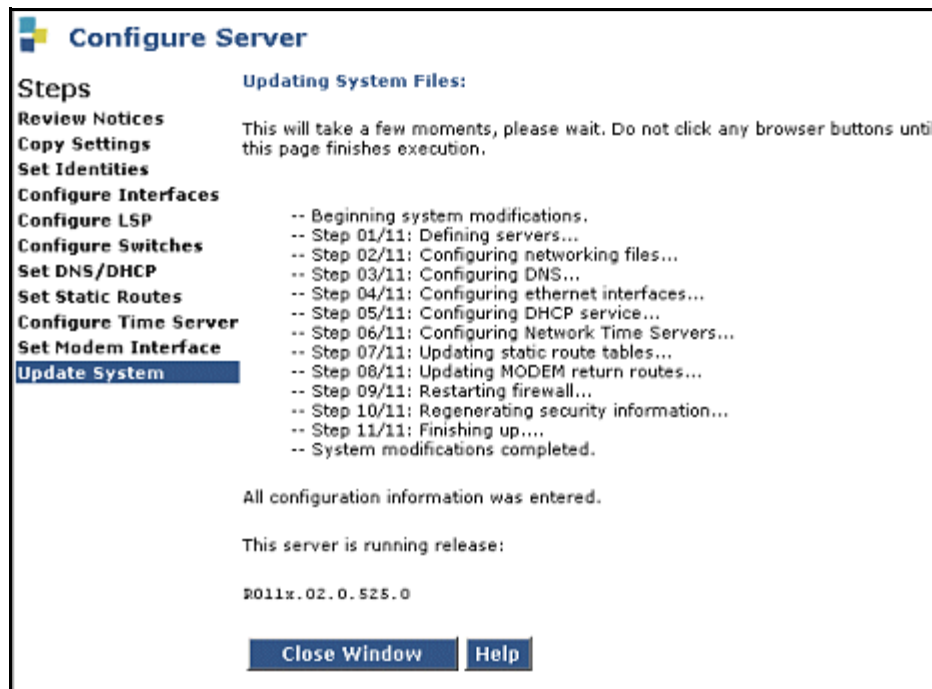
- 25 To check, or possibly change, something you entered on a previous screen, use your browser's **Back** button to page back through the Configure Server screens.
- 26 Check or change the items in question.
- 27 Click the **Continue** button to move forward again, whether you change anything or not. If you don't do this, information in the wizard may not be processed correctly.

#### NOTE:

For any configuration, it is always safe to Cancel the configuration, and run the Configure Server wizard again later from the beginning. You might use this option if you are checking or modifying settings on a server that has already been configured, and there is not a large amount of new information to enter.

- 28 On the Update System screen, if you are satisfied that everything is set correctly, click **Continue**.  
You can watch the progress of the configuration at the **Updating System Files** screen. If the configuration status displays stops updating at some point and the screen appears to freeze, you may have lost contact with the server. In this case, the configuration process will continue and you can log back on and pick up where left off.

## Updating System Files Screen



When the process is complete, you will receive a notification. Click **Close Window** and continue the configuration of the G700 Media Gateway on the command line interface.

## Provide the keys.install File (If Necessary)

Use this procedure only if you selected one of the customer-provided keys options in the previous procedure.

If encryption between the NTS and S8300 Media Server is to be used for additional security, you *must* provide a keys.install file that specifies for each key:

- The key number
- The encryption type
- The key code

If the keys file is short, the network administrator can create one now during configuration if needed:

### **Create the key file**

- 1 On a directly connected laptop or other computer, create a flat-text file named **keys.install** with the correct keys information using any ASCII application.
- 2 Next, upload the keys.install file using the **Upload Files to Server** screen as described earlier.
- 3 When finished, click on the Configure Server wizard window to resume server configuration.

The keys file can be loaded in one of the following ways.

### **Upload the keys file**

If a keys.install file was previously created on or downloaded to the services laptop or another computer on the network, it can be installed now as follows.

- 1 In the main menu under **Miscellaneous**, click the **Upload Files to Server** link.
- 2 Locate the **keys.install** file on your computer or network, then click **Load File**. The file is uploaded to the media server's FTP directory.
- 3 When finished, click on the Configure Server wizard window to resume server configuration.

### **Download or copy the keys file**

Longer files may be transferred from the network time server to the S8300 Media Server as follows:

- 1 Using either the **Download Files to Server** screen or the Transfer files using an FTP procedure to access the keys file listed on your pre installation worksheet.  
In both cases, the file is transferred to the media server's FTP directory.
- 2 When finished, click on the Configure Server wizard window to resume server configuration.
- 3 After the keys.install file is uploaded, select the location where it resides, usually in the **/var/home/ftp** subdirectory. (Services personnel may direct you to use the /tmp directory.)
- 4 If a keys file is not used, or if the correct keys.install file is already installed, select the option to not install a new keys file.

### **Set the media server's time now**

- 1 In the main menu under Server, click **Set Server Time / Timezone**.  
The S8300 displays the Set Server Time/Timezone window.
- 2 Set the media server's time close enough to the NTS's time, date, and time zone that synchronization can occur (within about 5 minutes).

### **3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300**

Install New Software on the S8300

- 3** When finished, click on the Configure Server wizard window to continue.

After NTP is enabled, time changes greater than 15 minutes will disrupt the synchronization with the NTS and NTP will shut down. You need to set the server's clock now so that synchronization can take place.

- 4** When finished, click Continue.



## Configure the G700 Media Gateway

---

This section describes the procedures for assigning IP addresses to the G700 components and for assigning IP routing.

### Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components

**NOTE:**

The Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs this task automatically.

This section describes how to assign the IP addresses and IP routes to the G700 Media Gateway and its components. The IP addresses should be available to you on the IP Addressing Planning Form. The command arguments you will be supplying include:

vlan	–Virtual Local Area Network: a defined network segment that allows users on that segment to have priority services in sharing information with each other.  If the network is not using VLANs, the VLAN should be 1. Otherwise, use the VLAN numbers indicated in your planning forms. The G700 Media Gateway should be assigned the same VLAN as the VLAN to which the Ethernet ports are connected. The P330 stack processor might or might not be assigned to the customer’s network management VLAN.
IP address	–the unique identifier assigned to an entity on the customer LAN
netmask	–the subnet mask for the customer’s LAN segment
destination	–distant networks that the IP route command needs to send packets to. Usually generalized to 0.0.0.0 for networks other than the local segment.
default gateway	–the gateway the ip route command specifies to get to the distant networks

#### **Access the P330 stack processor**

- 1 Set up a direct connection to the G700 Console (serial) port and access the P330 stack processor using Hyperterm (or similar terminal emulation application).
- 2 Login as root.

#### **Assign the IP address to the P330 stack processor**



**CAUTION:**

The **nvr**am **init** command initializes the switch parameters to the factory defaults. This command is normally used only for new installations.

- 1 Initialize NVRAM: type **nvr**am **init**
- 2 Change mode to configure: type **con**figure
- 3 At the P330-1(super)# prompt, type **con**figure.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Configure the G700 Media Gateway

- 4 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **set interface inband <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the P330 stack processor. <vlan> is the vlan number, usually 1, to be established on the S8300 for the G700 Media Gateways. The <ip\_address> <netmask> is the assigned addresses for the P330 stack processor.
- 5 Type reset and press **Enter** to reset the stack.
- 6 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
All LEDs will flash. As the unit powers up, self-tests will be run. When the G700 mpg or P330 stack processor has reset, login again to continue.
- 7 Login at the **Welcome to P330** menu.  
The prompt P330-1(super)# appears.
- 8 Type **configure** to obtain the P330-1(configure)# prompt.

#### ***Establish the IP Routing for the Stack***

- 1 Type **show interface inband** to verify that the Avaya P330 stack server (Layer 2 Switching Processor) has the correct address.
- 2 Type **set ip route 0.0.0.0 <default-gateway>** to set the destination and gateway IP addresses. You will find these addresses in the planning documentation.  
<default-gateway> is the IP address of the customer's network gateway.
- 3 Press **Enter** to save the destination and gateway IP addresses.
- 4 Type **show ip route**.  
The route net and route host tables appear. Verify that the information is correct.

#### ***Check the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway processor***

After you have configured the P330 stack processor, you will assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP). Your first step is to check the serial number of the MGP.

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mpg**.
- 2 At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **show system** to list various attributes of the G700.  
The system displays a list of attributes, as shown in the following example:

### Show System List for G700 Media Gateway

```

MG-001-1(super)# show sys

Uptime(d,h:m:s): 1, 08:17:12

System Name      : -- Empty --
System Location: -- Empty --
System Contact  : -- Empty --
MAC Address     : 00-04-0D-02-04-EF
Serial No      : 02DR07428721
Model No       : G700
HW Vintage     : 00
HW Suffix      : A
FW Vintage     : 230

Media Gateway Power Supplies
          VOLTAGE(V) ACTUAL(V) STATUS
-----
DSP Complex   3.4      3.359   OK
MGP           5.1      5.000   OK
Fans          1.2      0.000   OK
Media Modules -48.0    -47.259 OK
VoIP DSP      1.6      1.570   OK
VoIP 8260     2.5      2.470   OK
Aux           -48.0    0.000   OK
--type q to quit or space key to continue--

MG-???-1(super)#
    
```

- 3 Write the serial number on your planning document. Make sure it matches the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 Media Gateway chassis. If there is a difference, the serial number in the displayed list is correct. You will need this later.

### Assign the IP Address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor

- 1 At the MG-???-n(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 2 Type **nvrाम init** to recondition the processor.

This procedure re initializes the G700 software back to factory defaults so new IP addresses can be stored correctly in the software. It also clears all configuration and administration on the G700 Media Gateway.

The system prompts you to verify that you want to erase the configuration.

- 3 Answer the prompt by typing **y(es)**.  
The G700 Media Gateway re initializes.
- 4 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 5 At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 6 Type **set interface mgp <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway. <vlan> is the vlan to be established on the customer’s local network. This is usually **1**. The <ip\_address> <netmask> is the assigned addresses for the G700 Media Gateway.

 **CAUTION:**

If this G700 contains an S8300 configured as an LSP, use the VLAN administered on the primary controller.

- 7 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Configure the G700 Media Gateway

- 8 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The prompt will change to P330-1(configure)#  
  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 9 When the mgp reset is complete, type **session mgp**.
- 10 At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to reach the configuration level of the command line interface.
- 11 Type **show interface mgp** to verify that the G700 Media Gateway has the correct IP address.

#### **Assign an IP Route for the Default Gateway**

The default gateway is a router or switch that routes packets to destinations outside of the local subnetwork.

- 1 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **set ip route <destination> <netmask> <default\_gateway\_ip\_address>**. Both <destination> and <netmask> are 0.0.0.0 for the default gateway. <default\_gateway\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the router or switch that is designated to handle packets addressed to destinations outside of the local subnetwork.
- 2 Type **show ip route mgp** to view the results.
- 3 Repeat <~Link>step 1 for additional ip routes, if needed. Usually, only a default route is needed. Refer to your planning document.

#### **Assign IP Addresses to the VoIP Resources**

From the G700 Media Gateway Processor command line interface, you will assign IP addresses to the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway and to any installed MM760 VoIP Media Modules.

- 1 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **set interface voip <number> <ip address>**  
For example: **set interface voip v0 132.236.73.3**  
  
<number> is the slot number of the VoIP media module. **v0** designates the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway motherboard. The MM760 VoIP Media Modules are designated according the slot (for example, **v1, v2, v3, v4**) in which the Media Module has been installed.  
<ip address> is the IP address of the VoIP resource.
- 2 Type **show interface** to display a table of all configured interfaces, including all VoIP Media Modules.
- 3 Type **show voip v0** to display the VoIP resource on the motherboard.

#### **NOTE:**

It is not necessary to configure the VLAN, netmask, or IP routes for VoIP engines. The media gateway parameters are applied automatically.

#### **Check for IP Connections**

After you have assigned IP addresses to the P330 Stack Processor (Layer 2 Switching Processor), the G700 Media Gateway MGP, Media Modules, and the VoIP resources, do the following procedure to validate the IP connections.

### Run the ping command

- 1 At the MG-???-n(config)# prompt, type **ping mgp <IP\_address>**

where <IP\_address> is the address of an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server, the VoIP engine, or any other functioning endpoint accessible on the customer's LAN. It is recommended to ping endpoints on both the same subnet and a different subnet.

Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

### Ping MGP Results

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping mgp 135.122.49.55
PING 135.122.49.55: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=0. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=1. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=2. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=3. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=4. time=0. ms
----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip (ms) min/avg/max = 0/0/0
```

- 2 Check that the same number of packets transmitted were also received.
- 3 Type **ping voip v0 <IP\_address>**, where <IP\_address> is the address of the G700, or any other functioning endpoint on the customer's LAN. Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

### Ping VoIP Results

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping voip v0 135.122.49.55

----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0 packet loss
round-trip(ms) min/avg/max = 0/1/0
```

## Set up the Controller List for the G700 Media Gateway

### NOTE:

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs this task automatically.

To complete the configuration of the G700 Media Gateway, you need to administer a list of primary and alternate controllers. This list begins with the IP address of the primary controller. In the event that the G700 Media Gateway loses contact with its primary controller, it will seek to re-register with the primary controller first, then with the other controllers on this list. The other controllers are S8500 or S8700 Media Servers that can act as the primary controller, or S8300 Media Servers configured as Local Survivable Processors (LSPs).

Up to four IP addresses separated by commas can be entered to form the controller list.

- 1 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type the following commands to designate the primary, secondary, and LSP controllers for this G700:

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Configure the G700 Media Gateway

**clear mgc list**

**set mgc list <ip\_address> [,<ip\_address> [,<ip\_address> [,<ip\_address>]]]**

where, the first <ip\_address> is the IP address of the primary controller for this G700. If the primary controller is an S8700, this is the IP address of a C-LAN board that is connected to a pair of duplicated S8700s. If the Primary controller is an S8300, this is the IP address of the S8300.

The next three <ip\_address> parameters are optional IP addresses of up to three alternate controllers. Each of the three optional controllers can be an S8700 duplicated pair or an S8300 configured as an LSP, depending on the G700's primary controller.



#### CAUTION:

If you need to change the mgc list, you must run **clear mgc list** before running **set mgc list** again.

The following table describes the possible optional controllers for an S8300 and S8700 primary controller:

Primary Server	Controller IP Addresses
S8300	<b>First:</b> IP address of the S8300 primary controller. <b>Next three:</b> one, two, or three IP addresses of S8300s configured as LSPs.
S8500 or S8700	<b>First:</b> IP address of the C-LAN for the S8500 or S8700 primary controller. <b>Next three:</b> one, two, or three IP addresses of alternate C-LANs and/or LSPs.

For an S8500 or S8700 primary controller, the last three IP addresses in the list can be either the addresses of C-LANS (which are connected to the same S8500 or pair of S8700s that act as primary controllers) or addresses of LSPs. If you enter a combination of both, you must list C-LANS first and the LSPs last, *after* the C-LANS.

- 2 Type **reset mgp** at the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt to reset the G700 Media Gateway processor.

A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.

- 3 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.

The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.

The system ultimately returns you to the P330-1 (configure) prompt.

At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.

At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.

#### NOTE:

Because the G700 media gateway has registered with its primary controller, the prompt name has changed; for example, to MG-001-1.

Type **show mgc** to display the list of available servers and their IP addresses.

For example:

### Show Call Controller Status Screen

```
MG-001-1(configure)# show mgc
CALL CONTROLLER STATUS
-----
Registered           : YES
Active Controller    : 135.9.71.95
H248 Link Status     : UP
H248 Link Error Code: 0x0
MGC List Management : Static

CONFIGURED MGC HOST                DHCP SPECIFIED MGC HOST
-----
135.9.71.95                        -- Not Available --
- Not Available --                  -- Not Available --
- Not Available --                  -- Not Available --
- Not Available --                  -- Not Available --
```

The Gateway will have registered with the primary controller, if present. If the primary controller is running and has been administered properly, the Registered field says **YES** and the H248 Link Status says **UP**. If the controller is not running, the Registered field says **NO** and the H248 Link Status says **DOWN**.

### Set the LSP Transition Points

You must set the time that the G700 searches, in the event of a network problem, for primary controllers (for example, additional CLAN connections) with which to register. After this search time has elapsed, the G700 will search for an LSP with which to register. You must also set the total time the G700 searches for either a primary controller and an LSP, after which the G700 resets. And finally, you must define how many primary controllers, from 1 to 4, are in the controller list you just defined.

- 1 At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times primary-search <search-time>** where *<search-time>* is the time in minutes that the G700 searches for a primary controller before looking for an LSP. The range is from **1** to **60**.
- 2 At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times total-search <search-time>** where *<search-time>* is the time in minutes that the G700 searches for both primary controllers or LSPs. The range is from **1** to **60**.
- 3 At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times transition-point <#\_of\_primary>** where *<#\_of\_primary>* is the number of primary controllers in the controller list. If the primary controller is an S8500 or S8700, the range is from **1** to **4**. If the primary controller is an S8300, *<#\_of\_primary>* must be **1**.

**3** **Installing a New G700 with an S8300**  
Configure the G700 Media Gateway

## **Configure an X330 Expansion Module (If Necessary)**

**NOTE:**

You cannot use the IW to perform this task.

- 1** See the *Avaya X330W-2DS1 Access Router Module Quick Start Guide*. This document is available at the Avaya Support website:

[Support](#) > [Technical Database](#) > [LAN, Backbone, and Edge Access Switches](#) > [P330 Stackable Switching System](#) > All Documents

- 2** Select the Quick Start Guide for X330WAN 2DS1



# Install New Firmware on the G700

This section describes the procedures to install firmware on the G700 Media Gateway processors and media modules.

## Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory

Before proceeding with the G700 firmware installation, you should check the tftpboot directory on the TFTP server to make sure the firmware versions match those listed in the planning documentation.

### Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700

Conduct the following procedure to compare software versions running on the G700 processors and media modules with the versions in you planning documents. If the versions do not match, new firmware for those components is necessary.

**Determine if new firmware for the P330 stack processor is necessary.**

- 1 At either the P330-1(super)# or P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **dir**.

The system displays the list of software.

#### Directory List for P300 Processor

M#	file	ver num	file type	file location	file description
1	module-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Module Configuration
1	stack-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Stack Configuration
1	EW_Archive	3.8.6	SW Web Image	NV-Ram	WEB Download
1	Booter_Image	3.2.5	SW BootImage	NV-Ram	Booter Image

- 2 Check the version number (ver num) of the EW\_Archive file to see if it matches the Release Letter. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.
- 3 Type **show image version**

The system displays the list of software.

#### Show Image Version List for P330 Processor

Mod	Module-Type	Bank	Version
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	A	0.0.0
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	B	3.9.0

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Firmware on the G700

- 4 Check the version number of the stack software image file in Band B to see if it matches the your planning document. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.

**Determine if new firmware is required for the MGP, VoIP Module, and installed media modules.**

- 1 Type **session mgp**
- 2 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The system displays the list of software.

#### Show MG List\_Config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	210(B)	2
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	52	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	12	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	54	N/A

- 3 Refer to the list to check the FW vintage number of the G700. In the TYPE column, find G700, then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the vintage number in your planning forms. If not, you must install new firmware on the G700 Media Gateway. Also check if the release number in the FW VINTAGE column contains (A) or (B) to designate the software bank. If the list shows B, you will upgrade A. If the list shows A, you will upgrade B.
- 4 Refer to the VOIP FW column and row for slot V0 (same row occupied by the G700 information) to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in your planning forms. If not, you must also upgrade the G700 Media Gateway motherboard VoIP module.

#### NOTE:

The VoIP processor on the motherboard is upgraded using the same firmware image file as the VoIP media modules; for example, the file mm760v8.fdl is vintage #8.

- 5 Check the FW VINTAGE column for vintages of each of the installed Media Modules: MM710, MM711, MM712, MM720, and/or MM760 to see if they match the FW vintages in the planning forms. If not, you must upgrade them, as well.

### Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor

#### Install P330 stack processor firmware

- 1 From your S8300 telnet session, telnet back to the P330 stack processor:  
Type **telnet <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>**, where <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> is the IP address of the P330 stack master processor on the customer's LAN.

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp SW\_image <file> EW\_archive <ew\_file> <tftp\_server\_address> <Module#>**

where

<file> is the full-path name for the image file with format and vintage number similar to viisa3\_8\_2.exe,

<ew\_file> is the full-path name for the embedded web application file with format similar to p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe,

<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and

<Module#> is the number, 1 through 10, of the media gateway in the stack. If there is only one G700 Media Gateway, the number is 1.

- 2 To verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns:
  - type **show image version <module #>** and check the version number in the Version column for Bank B.
  - type **dir <module #>** and check the version number in the ver num column for the EW\_Archive file.
- 3 Type **reset <module #>**

## Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor

### Install MGP firmware

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp** to reach the G700 Media Gateway processor.
- 2 Type **configure** at the MG-???-1(super)# prompt to enter configuration mode, which will change the prompt to MG-???-1(configure)#.
- 3 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mgp bootimage** to determine which disk partition (bank) is in the Active Now column. You will update the bank that is *not* listed as Active Now. The system displays the following screen:

#### Example: Show mgp bootimage

<u>FLASH MEMORY</u>	<u>IMAGE VERSION</u>
Bank A	109
Bank B	210
<u>ACTIVE NOW</u>	<u>ACTIVE AFTER REBOOT</u>
Bank B	Bank B

- 4 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp mgp-image <bank> <filename> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** to transfer the mgp image from the tftp server to the G700, where  
 <bank> is the bank that is *not* Active Now (Bank A in the example).

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300

Install New Firmware on the G700

*<filename>* is the full path name of the mgp firmware image file, which begins with mgp and will be similar to the name mgp\_8\_0.bin.

*<tftp\_server\_ip\_address>* is the IP address of the S8300. See the following example:

```
copy tftp mgp-image a mgp_8_0.bin 195.123.49.54.
```

The screen will show the progress.

- 5 Type **set mgp bootimage <bank>** where *<bank>* is the same letter you entered in the previous step.
- 6 At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 7 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 8 When the P330-1(super)# prompt appears, type **session mgp**.
- 9 At the MGP-??-1(super)# prompt, type **configure**.
- 10 Verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns.  
Type **show mg list\_config**. The system displays the list of software.

#### Example: Show mg list\_config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP	FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230 (A)	67	
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A	
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A	
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A	
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A	

### Install New Firmware on the Media Modules

For upgrades of active media modules, you need to take the media modules out of service before initiating the upgrade process. To do this, go to a SAT session on the primary controller and issue a busyout command.

#### NOTE:

Skip this busyout procedure if the media modules are not in service; for example during an initial installation.

#### *Busyout board (for active media modules)*

- 1 Go to a SAT session on the primary controller and enter the command,  
**busyout board vx**  
where *x* is the slot number of the media module to be upgraded.

- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.
- 3 Repeat for each media module to be upgraded.

**Install media module firmware**

- 1 Be sure that you have checked for the current vintage of the VoIP Module for the v0 slot (on the G700 motherboard) (see [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#)). This VoIP module does not occupy a physical position like other Media Modules.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 3 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.
- 4 Type **copy tftp mm-image v<slot #> <filename mm> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>**  
 where <slot #> is the slot of the specific media module as identified when you performed [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#),  
 <filename mm> the full-path name of the media module firmware file in a format such mm712v58.fdl, and  
 <tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the ip address of the S8300.  
 Two or three minutes will be required for most upgrades. The VoIP Media Module upgrade takes approximately 5 minutes. Screen messages indicate when the transfer is complete.
- 5 After you have upgraded all the media modules, verify that the new versions are present. At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**  
 The list of software appears

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230(A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

- 6 In the TYPE column, find the particular media module (v1 through v4), then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the planning documentation. Note that slot V1 can contain either a media module or the S8300, which will show as Type "ICC".
- 7 Check the VOIP FW column and row for slot v0 to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in the planning documentation.
- 8 Type **reset <module #>** where <module #> is the number of the G700 in the stack.
- 9 When the reset is finished, type **show mm** to verify the upgrade.

**Release board (if media module was busied out)**

- 1 When the upgrade procedure is complete, go to the SAT session and release the board: type **release board vx** where x is the slot number of the upgraded media module.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.

**3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300**  
Install New Firmware on the G700

**NOTE:**

If you see the response, Board Not Inserted, this means that the media module is still rebooting. Wait one minute and repeat the **release board** command.

- 3** Repeat the **release board** command for each media module that was busied out.

# Administer Communication Manager

---

Perform one of the following two administration procedures in this section:

- [The Primary Controller is an S8300](#), or
- [The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700 \(the S8300 Is an LSP\)](#)

## The Primary Controller is an S8300



### CAUTION:

This administration applies only to an S8300 that serves as the primary controller for the target G700. The S8300 primary controller can be in the target G700 or in another, possibly remote, G700. If the S8300 is an LSP, do *not* administer Communication Manager on it. Translations are automatically copied to the LSP from the S8300 primary controller.

If the primary controller is an S8500 or S8700, skip this section and go to [The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700 \(the S8300 Is an LSP\)](#) on page 155

This document covers only the administration of Communication Manager required for the G700 Media Gateway to communicate with the primary controller over a customer's network. For the majority of administration required, see “*Administrator's Guide to Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-506*,” or “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504*.”

In this section, you will use the SAT interface to:

- Assign Node Names for LSPs
- Define the IP Network Region
- Add a Media Gateway.



### CAUTION:

Before continuing, be sure you have saved translations in Communication Manager.

### **Reset the System**

- 1 Telnet to the S8300, log in, and open a SAT session (type **sat** or **dsat**).
- 2 At the SAT prompt, type **reset system 4**  
The system reboots.
- 3 After the reboot is complete, telnet to the S8300, login, and open a SAT session.

## Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the LSPs

If the S8300 network configuration includes LSPs, they must be specified on the Node Names form.

### **Assign node names**

- 1 At the S8300 SAT prompt, type **change node-names ip** to open the Node Names screen.

### Example Node Names Screen

```
change node-names ip Page 1 of 1
```

IP NODE NAMES			
Name	IP Address	Name	IP Address
default_____	0__0__0__0__	_____	____.____.____.____
node-10-lsp	192.168.1__50	_____	____.____.____.____
node-11-lsp	192.168.1__51	_____	____.____.____.____
=====	____.____.____.____	=====	____.____.____.____
=====	____.____.____.____	=====	____.____.____.____
=====	____.____.____.____	=====	____.____.____.____

- 2** Enter the name and IP addresses for the LSPs.
- 3** Press **F3** (**ENTER**) when complete.

## Administer Network Regions

Before assigning an IP network region to a G700, you must define network region on the IP Network Region form. After a network region is defined, you can assign it to the various network elements (servers, gateways, IP phones).

The information you need to do this should be provided in your planning documentation. Use the system defaults if the planning documentation does not specify otherwise.

For a G700 with an S8300 as primary controller, there will usually be one network region, defined as **1**. The procedure below uses 1 for the network region number as an example but the procedure applies for any network region number from 1 to 250.

### Define IP network region 1

 **CAUTION:**

Defining IP network regions can be quite complex. For detailed information on the use and administration of IP network regions, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 1** At the SAT prompt, type **change ip-network-region 1**.  
The S8300 displays the IP Network Region screen.



### IP Network Region Screen

```

change ip-network-region 1                               Page 1 of 19
                                                    IP NETWORK REGION
  Region: 1
  Location:                               Home Domain:
    Name:
  AUDIO PARAMETERS                                     Intra-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
    Codec Set: 1                                       Inter-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
  UDP Port Min: 2048                                    IP Audio Hairpinning? y
  UDP Port Max: 3028                                    RTCP Reporting Enabled? n
                                                    RTCP MONITOR SERVER PARAMETERS
  DiffServ/TOS PARAMETERS                             Use Default Server Parameters? y
    Call Control PHB Value: 34
    Audio PHB Value: 46
  802.1P/Q PARAMETERS
    Call Control 802.1p Priority: 7
    Audio 802.1p Priority: 6
  H.323 IP ENDPOINTS                                  AUDIO RESOURCE RESERVATION PARAMETERS
    H.323 Link Bounce Recovery? y                      RSVP Enabled? n
    Idle Traffic Interval (sec): 20
    Keep-Alive Interval (sec): 5
    Keep-Alive Count: 5
  
```

- 2 If necessary, complete the fields as described in “Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.”

**NOTE:**

It is strongly recommended to use the defaults in the screen. However, for the RTCP Enabled and RSVP Enabled fields, the entry should be **n** (no).

- 3 Press **F3 (ENTER)** to submit the screen.

### Associate LSPs with Network Regions

If the primary controller has LSPs, you can associate each LSP with one or more network regions. In the event of a network failure, IP telephones assigned to a network region will register with an LSP associated with that region.

This procedure associates up to six LSPs with a network region.

#### Associate LSPs with a network region

- 1 On the IP Network Region screen, go to page 2.

#### IP Network Region Screen, page 3

```

change ip-network-region 1                               Page 2 of 19
                                                    IP NETWORK REGION
LSP NAMES IN PRIORITY ORDER
1  node-10-LSP_____
2  _____
3  _____
4  _____
5  _____
6  _____
  
```

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300 Administer Communication Manager

- 2 Enter the names of up to six LSPs to be associated with region 1. The LSP names must be the same as administered on the Node Names form.
- 3 Submit the form.
- 4 Repeat for each network region with which you want to associate LSPs.

## Administer IP Interfaces

This procedure assigns network region 1, as an example, to the S8300 Media Server.

### *Assign the network region to the S8300*

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change ip-interfaces procr**.  
The S8300 displays the IP Interfaces screen for the media server.

### IP Interfaces Screen

```
change ip-interfaces procr                                     Page 1 of 1
                                                             IP INTERFACES
                                                             Type: PROCR
                                                             Node Name: procr
                                                             IP Address: 135.9.41.146
                                                             Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Enable Ethernet Port?
Network Region: 1
```

- 2 The field Eth Port should indicate **Y** (yes). The Node Name should be the IP address of the S8300 Media Server.

## Administer the LSP Form

If the primary controller has LSPs, you must enter the LSP node names on the LSP form to enable the LSPs to get translations updates from the primary controller. Once the LSPs are successfully entered on the LSP form, their status can be viewed with the **display lsp** command.

### **NOTE:**

The LSP node names must be administered on the node-names-ip form before they can be entered on the LSP form.

### *Add LSP names to the LSP form*

- 1 At the S8300 SAT prompt, type **change lsp** to open the LSP form.

**LSP Screen**

```
change lsp
```

LOCAL SURVIVABLE PROCESSOR				
Number	NAME	IP Address	Service State?	Translations Updated
1	node-10-LSP	192.168.1.50	in-service	14:21 5/4/2003
2	_____		out-of-service	
3	_____		out-of-service	
4	_____		out-of-service	
5	_____		out-of-service	
6	_____		out-of-service	
7	_____		out-of-service	
8	_____		out-of-service	
9	_____		out-of-service	
10	_____		out-of-service	
11	_____		out-of-service	
12	_____		out-of-service	
13	_____		out-of-service	
14	_____		out-of-service	
15	_____		out-of-service	
16	_____		out-of-service	

Page 1 of 16

2 Enter the node name for each LSP supported by the primary controller and submit the form.

**The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700  
(the S8300 Is an LSP)**



**CAUTION:**

This administration applies only to an S8500 or S8700 that serves as the primary controller for the target G700. Do not administer Communication Manager on the S8300 (LSP). Translations are automatically copied to the LSP from the S8700 primary controller after a **save translations** command or a data backup.

If the primary controller is an S8300, skip this section and go to [The Primary Controller is an S8300](#) on page 151.

**NOTE:**

Some of the procedures in this section should have been completed previously as part of a normal S8500 or S8700 installation.

This document covers only the administration of Communication Manager required for the G700 Media Gateway to communicate with the primary controller over a customer’s network. For the majority of required administration, see “Administrator’s Guide to Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-506,” or “Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.”

In this section, you will use the SAT interface to:

- Assign Node Names
- Define the IP Network Region
- Add a Media Gateway

**NOTE:**

For information on installing the CLAN boards on the S8500 or S8700 port networks and complete information on installing an S8700 Media Server, see the Installation documentation on the “Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825.”

**Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the C-LANs and LSPs**

**NOTE:**

The CLAN boards must be TN799DP running version 5 or greater firmware. Be sure to check the firmware version for these boards on the S8700. For information on how to upgrade the firmware on the S8700, please see the section "Upgrade Firmware in Selected Port Cabinet Packs" in *Upgrading the Avaya Media Server Configuration* in the S8700 documentation portion of this documentation CD, “Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-325.”

**Assign node names and IP addresses**

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change node-names ip** to open the Node Names screen.

**Example Node Names Screen**

change node-names ip		Page 1 of 1	
IP NODE NAMES			
Name	IP Address	Name	IP Address
default_____	0__ . 0__ . 0__ . 0__	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-1-clan_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 124	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-2-clan_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 97	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-10-lsp_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 50	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-11-lsp_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 51	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
=====	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
=====	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
=====	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __

- 2 Enter the name and IP address for the C-LANs and LSPs.
- 3 Press **F3 (ENTER)** when complete.

**Administer Network Regions**

Before assigning an IP network region to a G700, you must define network region on the IP Network Region form. After a network region is defined, you can assign it to the various network elements (servers, gateways, IP phones).

The information you need to do this should be provided in your planning documentation. Use the system defaults if the planning documentation does not specify otherwise.

For a G700 with an S8300 LSP and an S8500 or S8700 as the primary controller, there may be more than one network region, since there can be up to 250 G700 Media Gateways connected to the S8500 or S8700 with thousands of telephones in the network. In this case, you define a network region for each CLAN board on the S8500 or S8700 port networks, though they may also have the same network region.

The G700, in this case, may also share the same network region as the CLAN board(s). However, it may have a different network region because of the geographic distances of the connections between the G700

and the S8500 or S8700. The G700 network region may also differ because of the nature of the endpoints connected to it.

### Define IP network regions for the G700 and CLAN board(s)



#### CAUTION:

Defining IP network regions can be quite complex. For detailed information on the use and administration of IP network regions, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 1 On the SAT screen of the primary controller for the G700 Media Gateway, type **change ip-network-region <network\_region>**, where the <network\_region> is the region you will assign to the G700 Media Gateway. This region number may or may not match the network region of the S8500 or S8700 CLAN boards.

The system displays the IP Network Region screen.

### IP Network Region Screen

```

change ip-network-region 1                               Page 1 of 19
                                                    IP NETWORK REGION
  Region: 1
Location:                               Home Domain:
  Name:
AUDIO PARAMETERS                                     Intra-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
  Codec Set: 1                                       Inter-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
UDP Port Min: 2048                                   IP Audio Hairpinning? y
UDP Port Max: 3028                                   RTCP Reporting Enabled? n
                                                    RTCP MONITOR SERVER PARAMETERS
  DiffServ/TOS PARAMETERS                             Use Default Server Parameters? y
  Call Control PHB Value: 34
    Audio PHB Value: 46
802.1P/Q PARAMETERS
  Call Control 802.1p Priority: 7
    Audio 802.1p Priority: 6
H.323 IP ENDPOINTS                                   AUDIO RESOURCE RESERVATION PARAMETERS
  H.323 Link Bounce Recovery? y                       RSVP Enabled? n
Idle Traffic Interval (sec): 20
  Keep-Alive Interval (sec): 5
  Keep-Alive Count: 5

```

- 2 Complete the fields as described in “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

#### NOTE:

It is strongly recommended to use the defaults in the screen.

- 3 If the network region of the G700 (1 in this example) is different from that of the S8500 or S8700 CLAN board(s), you must interconnect the two regions. Press **NextPage** twice to display page 3, Inter Network Region Connection Management.

The system displays page 3 of the IP Network Region screen. This screen shows the source region (1) and the first 15 destination network region numbers. (Pages 4–19 show destination regions 16–250).

### IP Network Region Screen, Page 3

```
display ip-network-region 1                               Page 3 of 19
Inter Network Region Connection Management

src dst
rgn rgn      codec-set  direct-WAN  WAN-BW-limits  Intervening-regions
1  1          1
1  2
1  3
1  4
1  5
1  6
1  7
1  8
1  9          3
1 10
1 11
1 12
1 13
1 14
1 15
```

- 4** Type the number for the type of codec set (1–7) that the S8500 or S8700 will use to interconnect the G700 and the C-LAN board(s) in the row corresponding to the region of the C-LAN. In this example, the C-LAN is in region 9 and codec-set type 3 is to be used for the interconnection between region 1 and region 9. (In this example, codec type 1 is used for communication within region 1)

The SAT command, **list ip-codec-set**, lists the types of codecs available on this server.

For more detail about the Inter Network Region Connection Management form, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 5** Press **F3 (ENTER)** when complete.

### Assign LSPs to the Network Regions

If the primary controller has LSPs, you can assign the LSPs to network regions. In the event of a network failure, IP telephones assigned to a network region will register with the LSPs assigned to that region.

This procedure assigns up to six LSPs to a network region.

#### **Assign LSPs to a network region**

- 1** On the IP Network Region screen, go to page 3.

### IP Network Region Screen, page 3

```
change ip-network-region 1                               Page 2 of 19
IP Network Region

LSP NAMES IN PRIORITY ORDER
1  node-10-LSP_____
2  _____
3  _____
4  _____
5  _____
6  _____
```

- 2 Enter the names of up to six LSPs to be assigned to region 1. The LSP names must be the same as administered on the Node Names form.
- 3 Submit the form.
- 4 Repeat for each network region to which you want to assign LSPs.

## Administer IP Interfaces

### Define the IP interfaces of the S8500 or S8700 port network CLAN boards

**NOTE:**

This should have already been established as a part of normal S8500 or S8700 installation.

- 1 Type **change ip-interfaces** to open the IP Interfaces screen.

### IP Interfaces Screen

```

change ip-interfaces procr                                     Page 1 of 1

                                IP INTERFACES

                                Type: C-LAN
                                Slot: 01A03
                                Code/Suffix: TN799 d
                                Node Name: procr
                                IP Address: 135.9.41.146
                                Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
                                Gateway Address: 135.9.41.254
                                Enable Ethernet Port? y
                                Network Region: 1
                                VLAN: 0

                                Number of CLAN Sockets Before Warning: 400
    
```

- 2 Complete the fields as described the in the following table.

Field	Conditions/Comments
Type	Either C-LAN.
Slot	The slot location for the circuit pack.
Code/Suffix	Display only. This field is automatically populated with TN799 for C-LAN.
Node name	The unique node name for the IP interface. The node name here must already be administered on the Node Names screen.
IP Address	The IP address (on the customer LAN) of the C-LAN.
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask associated with the IP address for this IP interface. For more information on IP addresses and subnetting, see <i>“Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504”</i> .
Gateway Address	The address of a network node that serves as the default gateway for the IP interface.

**3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300**  
Administer Communication Manager

Field	Conditions/Comments
Enable Ethernet Port?	The Ethernet port must be enabled ( <b>y</b> ) before it can be used. The port must be disabled ( <b>n</b> ) before changes can be made to its attributes on this screen.
Network Region	The region number for this IP interface.
VLAN	The VLAN number assigned to the C-LAN, if any.
Number of CLAN Sockets Before Warning	The threshold for the number of sockets used by this C-LAN that triggers a warning message to be sent to the error log.

2 of 2

**3** Close the screen.

### Administer the LSP Form

If the primary server has LSPs, you must enter the LSP node names on the LSP form to enable the LSPs to get translations updates from the primary controller. Once the LSPs are successfully entered on the LSP form, their status can be viewed with the **display lsp** command.

**NOTE:**

The LSP node names must be administered on the node-names-ip form before they can be entered on the LSP form.

#### Add LSP names to the LSP form

**1** At the SAT prompt, type **change lsp** to open the LSP form.

#### LSP Screen

```

change lsp                                     Page 1 of 16
                LOCAL SURVIVABLE PROCESSOR
Number NAME          IP Address          Service          Translations
                State?          Updated
1      node-10-LSP_  192.168.1.50    in-service      14:21 5/4/2003
2      _____
3      _____    out-of-service
4      _____    out-of-service
5      _____    out-of-service
6      _____    out-of-service
7      _____    out-of-service
8      _____    out-of-service
9      _____    out-of-service
10     _____    out-of-service
11     _____    out-of-service
12     _____    out-of-service
13     _____    out-of-service
14     _____    out-of-service
15     _____    out-of-service
16     _____    out-of-service

```

**2** Enter the node name for each LSP supported by the primary controller and submit the form.



## Administer the Media Gateway

To perform the procedures in this section, telnet to the primary controller, log in, and open a SAT session.

 **CAUTION:**

Before administering a media gateway, make sure that the gateway has been fully configured.

### Add Media Gateway

- At the SAT prompt, type **add media-gateway <number>** where <number> is the gateway number from 1 to *n*. (*n* is 50 for an S8300 and 250 for an S8500 or S8700).

The S8300 displays the Media Gateway screen.

### Add Media Gateway Screen

```

change media-gateway 1                               Page 1 of 1
                MEDIA GATEWAY
      Number: 1                                     IP Address: 135.9.41.150
      Type: g700                                   FW Version/HW Vintage: 21.13.0 /0
      Name: Swainsons                             MAC Address:
      Serial No: 012X06230551                     Encrypt Link? y
      Network Region: 1                           Location: 1
      Registered? n                               Controller IP Address:
                                                Site Data:

      Slot  Module Type          Name
      V1:
      V2:
      V3:
      V4:

      V8:
      V9:
  
```

- Complete the Name field with the hostname assigned to the G700 Media Gateway.
- Complete the Identifier field with the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway. You can obtain the serial number by typing the **show system** command at the MGP command line.

 **CAUTION:**

Be sure the serial number for the G700 Media Gateway you enter in this procedure matches *exactly* the serial number displayed in the **show system** command. The serial number is case-sensitive, and if entered incorrectly, will prevent the S8300 Media Server from communicating with the G700 Media Gateway.

- Complete the Network Region field with the value supplied in the planning documentation.
- If specifically requested by the customer or your planning documents, type **gateway-announcements** in the V9 field. This field allows you to enable announcements on the G700 Media Gateway. V9 is a virtual slot. There is no announcement board associated with it. The announcements for the G700 are available in the G700 firmware and are administered in the same way as announcements on the TN2301 circuit pack used on S8500 or S8700 port networks.

If there are multiple G700 Media Gateways sharing announcements, then enable announcements on the G700 whose trunks will receive the announcements most often.

- Press **F3 (ENTER)** to save your changes.

### 3 Installing a New G700 with an S8300 Administer Communication Manager

If properly administered, the G700 should register with the primary controller within 1–2 minutes. The IP Address, MAC Address, and Module Type fields are populated automatically after the G700 Media Gateway registers with the server.

- 7 Type **change media-gateway** to view the Media Gateway form.

#### Media Gateway Screen (After Registration with Primary Controller)

```
change media-gateway 1                               Page 1 of 1
                                         MEDIA GATEWAY
      Number: 1                                     IP Address: 135.9.41.150
      Type: g700                                   FW Version/HW Vintage: 21.13.0 /0
      Name: Swainsons                             MAC Address: 00:04:0d:02:06:ca
      Serial No: 012X06230551                     Encrypt Link? y
Network Region: 1                                 Location: 1
Registered? y                                   Controller IP Address: 135.9.41.146
                                         Site Data:

Slot  Module Type                                Name
V1:   S8300                                       ICC MM
V2:   MM712                                       DCP MM
V3:   MM711                                       ANA MM
V4:   MM710                                       T1/E1 MM

V8:
V9:
```

The media modules installed in the G700 are listed next to their slot numbers.

To verify that a G700 Media Gateway has been successfully added:

#### Verify Changes

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **list media-gateway**.

#### List Media-Gateway Screen

```
list media-gateway
                                         MEDIA-GATEWAY REPORT
Number  Name          Serial No/      IP Address/      Type  NetRgn  Reg?
        Name          FW Ver/HW Vint  Cntrl IP Addr
-----  -
1       LabA          01DR07128730   135.177.49.57   g700  1       y
        Data MG2     21 .13 .0 /0   135.177.49.59
2       Data MG2     02DR01130356   135.177.49.90   g350  1       n
        Data MG2     11 .2 .0 /0    135.177.49.40
```

- 2 Verify that the G700 Media Gateway has registered.

The **y** in the registered field signifies that the G700 Media Gateway has registered. If the G700 should become unregistered, the **y** will become an **n**, but the IP address will remain assigned to the G700 Media Gateway. If the G700 has never been registered, the IP Address field will be blank.

If the G700 fails to register, two common causes might be:

- The serial number added as the identifier for the G700 is wrong. To check, log back into the G700 gateway and type **show system**. Check the serial number that appears.
- There is no IP connection between the G700 and the S8300. To check, type **show mgc** and then **ping mgp <controller\_address>**.

### ***Enable Announcements, If Necessary***

- 1** *Only if specifically requested by the customer or your planning documents,* at the SAT prompt, type **enable announcement-board <gateway\_number> V9**, where <gateway\_number> is the number of the G700 Media Gateway you just added and **V9** is the virtual slot (for example, **2V9** means Media Gateway number 2, slot V9).
- 2** Press **ENTER** to enable announcements.

The system displays the message Command successfully completed.

### ***Save Communication Manager Translations***

Save translations again after all Communication Manager administration is complete.

- At the SAT prompt, type **save translation**.

## Considerations for IP Phones Supported by a Local Survivable Processor

---

A DHCP server assigns IP addresses to IP endpoints dynamically. Avaya IP phones perform a DHCP discover request to receive an IP address, as well as receive parameters necessary to function correctly. These parameters include the location of the call control server, the location of the TFTP server, as well as the directory on the TFTP server from which the phone receives its upgrades.

When preparing a DHCP server to work with Avaya IP phones, there is an option that must be administered to allow the Avaya phone to receive the DHCP offer. This option is “site-specific-option-number” (sson) 176. Different DHCP servers allow for this administration in different ways, but the sson option must be mapped to 176. Then the option can be set up to send the information desired to the Avaya phones for the intended activity.

The sson option sends a string that includes the IP address of the Avaya Call Controller with which the phone will register (“MCIPADD=www.xxx.yyy.zzz”). In an S8500 or S8700 system, this is a CLAN address; in an S8300 system, this is the IP address of the S8300. Multiple addresses can be administered to allow for LSP failover. The second address in the MCIPADD list may be an IP address for a second S8700 CLAN board or an LSP. If a second CLAN board is used, then the third address must be the LSP, and any subsequent addresses should be alternate LSPs. Local LSPs should appear first in the list, with remote LSPs later in the list as possible back ups.

If an IP phone loses its connection to the primary controller, it will try to register with an LSP associated with its network region (as defined on page 3 of the IP Network Region form). However, if the phone resets, it loses this information and goes to the DHCP server for a controller. If the only controller in the MCIPADD list is the primary controller, and if the connection to the primary controller is down, the phone cannot register. Having an LSP in the MCIPADD list gives the IP phones an alternate controller in this situation.

**NOTE:**

It is strongly recommended that at least one LSP be administered in the MCIPADD list.

Also included in the sson option string is the “MCPORT=1719”. This is the port the phone will listen on for signalling traffic to the call controller. Next is the tftp server field. This field indicates to the phone where it is to receive firmware updates, along with the tftp directory field.

All phones for which the DHCP server has an LSP as the second address in the MCIPADD list should be administered to be in the same network region. Or, if administered to be in different network regions, the network regions involved should be interconnected. Use the ip-network-map form on the primary controller to put the IP phones in the same network region. On the ip-network-map form, a range of IP addresses (or a subnet) can be specified to be in a single network region. Enter the IP address range, or subnet, that contains the IP addresses of the IP phones and enter the desired network region number for that address range. The same address range or subnet must then be administered on the DHCP server. If it is not desired that all the phones be in the same network region, the form “ip-network-region #” should be used to interconnect all the network regions that contain those phones.

## Transition of Control from Primary Controller to LSP

When the network connection between the G700 and the S8500 or S8700 goes down, control of endpoints connected to the G700 goes to the next point in the primary controller list, which will be either a second CLAN board or the LSP. At this point, the S8500 or S8700 alarms to notify the customer and services personnel that the network connection between the S8500 or S8700 and G700 has problems. If control passes to the LSP, the LSP's license allows it to support the G700 endpoints for up to 10 days, within which the network problems should be resolved.

The customer must pass control back to the S8500 or S8700 manually, by selecting **Shutdown this server** from the S8300 web page (includes selecting the option to restart after shutdown), or a technician must run **reset system 4** from the Linux command line. When the system reboots, the G700 and its endpoints reregister with the primary controller, in this case the S8500 or S8700.

## Set Up SNMP Alarming on the G700

---

Setting up SNMP alarm reporting involves two main tasks:

- Configuring the primary server to report alarms to a services support agency
- Configuring the G700 Media Gateway to send its traps to a network management system (NMS), which can be the primary server (S8300, S8500, or S8700).

The primary server may be an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server. The media server supports two methods for reporting alarms. Either, both, or no alarm-reporting method may be used at a given site.

- **OSS Method.** The server's software applications and hardware devices under its control can generate Operations Support System (OSS) alarms. These alarms are recorded in the server logs, and may be reported to Avaya's Initialization and Administration System (INADS) or another services support agency over the server's modem interface.

To activate OSS alarm notification: The server requires a USB connection to a modem that is connected to an analog line. The modem must be configured using the Web Interface, in the Set Modem Interface screen, and enabled to send and receive calls using the Enable/Disable Modem screen. Configuration of the OSS alarming method can only be done using Linux shell commands.

- **SNMP Method.** SNMP traps may be sent in User Datagram Protocol (UDP) to a corporate network management system (NMS) using the Configure Trap Destinations screen. The OSS and SNMP alarm-notification methods operate independently of each other; either or both may be used. Currently, the following NMSs are supported:
  - Avaya Fault and Performance Manager, as a standalone application, or integrated within
  - Avaya MultiService™ Network Manager
  - HP Openview

To activate SNMP alarm notification: On the server Web Interface, use the Configure Trap Destinations screen to set up SNMP destinations in the corporate NMS.

### **Add INADS phone numbers and Enable alarms to INADS**

The following procedure, using the primary server's Linux shell commands, administers the dial-out modem to send alarms in the OSS method. In this example, the primary server is an S8300, and the services support agency is Avaya's Initialization and Administration System (INADS).

Perform this task after all Communication Manager administration is complete.

#### **NOTE:**

Do these steps only if the S8300 is the primary controller and the customer has a maintenance contract with Avaya. Use the information you acquired from the ART tool (see [Run the Automatic Registration Tool \(ART\) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary](#)). Also, a USB modem must have already been installed.

- 1 With a direct connection to the S8300 Services port, start a Telnet session and log in as **craft (or dadmin)**.
- 2 At the prompt, type **almcall -f INADS phone number -s <second-number>** and press **Enter**.
- 3 At the prompt, type **almenable -d b -s y** and press **Enter**.
- 4 Type **almenable** and press **Enter** to verify that the alarms are enabled.

- 5 Log off.

### Configure an SNMP Community String for Traps

Configuring the G700 Media Gateway to send SNMP traps to the primary server can be accomplished by two commands:

- P330 stack processor CLI command **set snmp community trap [community string]**
- Media Gateway Processor (MGP) CLI command **set snmp trap <IP address> enable**

SNMP requires community strings to be used for each SNMP 'request'. You can set only three community strings on the G700 — one each for read requests, write requests, and traps. The command for traps is:

**set snmp community trap [community string].**

- 1 Telnet to the P330 stack processor.
- 2 Log in as **root**.
- 3 At the P330-1(super)# prompt, type **set snmp community trap [community string]** and press **Enter**.
- 4 Type **exit**

### Configure the Destination for G700 SNMP Traps

Events occurring on the G700 cause SNMP traps to be generated. The G700 MGP can be configured to send SNMP traps to any network management system (NMS) in the network, including the primary server (S8300, S8500, or S8700). The MGP CLI **set snmp trap** command is the way to configure the NMS network element that will receive those traps.

The command syntax is:

```
set SNMP trap <IP address> {enable|disable}  
[{all|power|temp|app|module|config|voice|operations}]
```

where **<IP address>** is the IP address of the NMS trap receiver that will be receiving the traps from the G700, and

**[*{all|power|temp|app|module|config|voice|operations}*]** indicates the groups whose traps will be sent to the specified receiver. If no keywords follow the IP address entry, then 'all' traps will be enabled for the specified receiver.

If 'enable' or 'disable' is used without a trap designation keyword, then 'all' traps is assumed. Up to ten trap receivers can be configured.

- 1 At the P330-1(super)# prompt, type **session mgp**
- 2 At the mg-xxx-n(super-user)# prompt, type **configure** and press **Enter**.
- 3 At the mg-xxx-n(configure)# prompt, type **set snmp trap <IP address> enable** and press **Enter**.
- 4 Type **exit**

## Complete the Installation of S8300 (if the Primary Controller)

---

Consult the planning documentation to obtain the necessary information to complete the installation. Part of the final process will be to:

- Connect and administer test endpoints
- Test the endpoints
- Administer Communication Manager for trunks, features, networking, or other items required by the customer.
- Complete the electrical installation
- Enable adjunct systems

### ***Register the system***

Follow the existing process and procedures to register the S8300.

### ***Back up the System***

- 1** Make sure you have the IP address of the customer's FTP backup server.
- 2** On the S8300 main menu, select **Backup Now**.  
The system displays the Backup Now screen.
- 3** Select the type of data you want to back up by selecting the appropriate data set.
- 4** Select a backup method, normally **FTP**, to indicate the destination to which the system sends the backup data.
- 5** Complete the following fields:
  - User name.** You must enter a valid user name to enable the media server to log in to the FTP server. If you want to use the anonymous account, type "anonymous" in this field. If you do not want to use the anonymous account, type the actual user name in this field.
  - Password.** You must enter a password that is valid for the user name you entered. If you are using anonymous as the user name, you must use your email address as the password. However, the FTP site may have a different convention.
  - Host name.** Enter the DNS name or IP address of the FTP server to which the backup data is sent. To enter an IP address, use the dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.11.13.6).
  - Directory.** Enter the directory on the corporate repository to which you want to copy the backup file. When you enter a forward slash (/) in the directory field, the system copies the backup file to the default directory. The default directory for backup data on the FTP server is /var/home/ftp. If you do not want to use the default directory, you must enter the path name for the directory.
- 6** Click **Start Backup**.  
The system displays the results of your backup procedure on the Backup Now results screen.



## Complete the Installation Process

---

Consult the planning documentation to obtain the necessary information to complete the installation. Part of the final process will be to:

- Connect and administer test endpoints.
- Test the endpoints.
- Complete the electrical installation
- Enable adjunct systems

This completes the installation of the G700 Media Gateway with and S8300 Media Server.

**3** **Installing a New G700 with an S8300**  
Complete the Installation Process

# 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

This chapter covers the procedures to install the firmware on a new Avaya G700 Media Gateway without an Avaya S8300 Media Server. The G700 is controlled by an external primary server running Avaya Communication Manager. The primary server can be an Avaya S8500 or S8700 Media Server or an S8300 residing in another G700.

**NOTE:**

Procedures to install or upgrade an S8500 or S8700 Media Server are not covered in this document. See *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library*, which is on the Avaya Support website (<http://www.avaya.com/support>) or on the CD, 555-233-825.

**Tip:**

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs these tasks automatically: , , [Check for IP Connections](#), and [Set the LSP Transition Points](#) sections. However, the GIW does *not* configure an X330 Expansion module. This task you must still perform as described in this document.

## Installation Overview

---

### System Components

#### G700 components

A P330 stack processor is built into the G700 Media Gateway. (This processor is also known as the *Layer 2 switching processor*). The G700 also contains an MGP processor, a VoIP processor, up to four media modules, and possibly an expansion module. Installing the firmware for one or more of these processors and/or media modules is a required part of most new installations.

#### Firmware files

You should obtain the firmware files for the G700 before going on-site. You can obtain the firmware files in bundled form on a CD or you can go to the Avaya Support website and download the individual firmware files onto your services laptop.

#### TFTP Server

To install firmware on a G700 without an S8300 or LSP, you must first copy the firmware files to an external TFTP server on the customer LAN. The TFTP server can be a customer computer or it can be set up on your services laptop.

## Initial Access to the G700

Before the P330 stack processor is configured with an IP address, the only way to access it is with a direct connection from your laptop to the Console port on the G700. With this connection, you can assign the IP addresses to the G700 processors, which can then be accessed over the customer LAN.

## Access to the S8300 and G700

You can access the S8300 and G700 in several ways with either a direct connection or LAN connection.

### **NOTE:**

Before the Upgrade Tool can be used to upgrade software on an LSP or firmware on a G700, as summarized below, the LSP must be administered on the primary controller.

### ***Direct connection to target S8300***

If you are at the location of the target S8300 (primary or LSP), you can connect directly to the S8300 Services port and:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 software by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Avaya Installation Wizard
  - Or, opening the Web interface and using the main menu
- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
  - Or, telnet to the S8300 and then telnet to the P330 stack processor

### ***Direct connection to the remote primary server (S8300, S8500, or S8700)***

In this case, the target S8300 is an LSP. If you are at the remote location of the primary server, you can connect directly to the server's Services port and:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 (LSP) software by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by
  - Opening the Web interface and using the Upgrade Tool
  - Or, telnet to the primary server and then telnet to the P330 stack processor and perform the installation commands

For direct connections, the TFTP server must be on the Customer LAN, not on your laptop.

### ***LAN connections***

If you can connect to the customer's LAN, you can:

- 1** Upgrade the S8300 software by
  - Opening the Web interface on the S8300 and using the Avaya Installation Wizard
  - Or, Opening the Web interface on the S8300 and using the main menu

- 2** Upgrade the G700 firmware by
  - Opening the Web interface on the primary server and using the Upgrade Tool
  - Or, telnet to the P330 stack processor and perform the installation commands

For LAN connections the TFTP server can be your laptop or a customer computer on the LAN.

See "Connection and Login Methods" in Chapter 1 for details on how to connect and log into the G700.

## Before Going to the Customer Site

---

The procedures in this section should be completed before going to the customer site or before starting a remote installation.

### Off-site Tasks

#### Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager

The project manager should provide you with forms that contain all the information needed to prepare for this installation. The information primarily consists of IP addresses, subnet mask addresses, logins, passwords, people to contact, the type of system, and equipment you need to install.

Verify that the information provided by the project manager includes all the information requested in your planning forms.



**Tip:**

Appendix B, Information Checklists, provides several checklists to help you gather the installation and upgrade information.

#### Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary

For an upgrade of an existing G700, the existing license file can usually be reused. However, if the customer is adding feature functionality (for example, adding BRI trunks), or if the upgrade is between major releases (for example, 1.3 to 2.0), you will need the serial number of the G700. To get this number, ask the customer's administrator to log in to the S8300 web page and select **View License Status** from the main menu to display the serial number.

For a new installation, you need the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway in order to complete the creation of the customer's license file on the rfa.avaya.com web site. To get this number, look for the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 chassis. If the unit is delivered directly to the customer and you will not have phone or LAN line access from the customer site to access the rfa.avaya.com web site, this task will require a preliminary trip to the customer site.

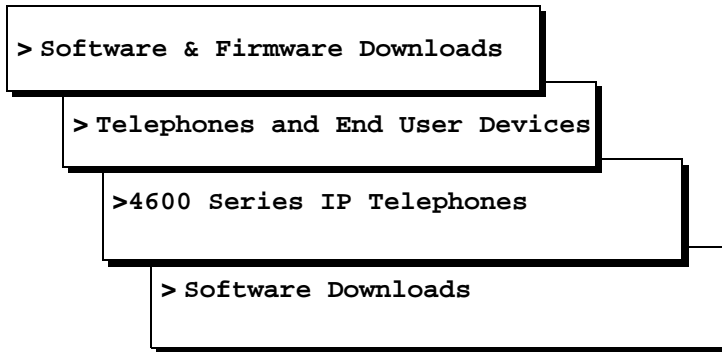
#### Set Up the TFTP Server on Your Laptop or on a Customer PC, if Necessary

A tar.gz file, which you obtain from a CD-ROM or a website, contains new G700 software. To load this software on a G700 Media Gateway, you must place this tar.gz file either on your laptop or on a PC connected to the customer's LAN. Later, you will log in to the G700 and use its TFTP capability to pull the new software from your laptop or the customer's PC. As a result, either the customer must configure a TFTP server on a PC connected to the customer's LAN or you, the installer, must set up your laptop as a TFTP server and later connect it to the customer's LAN.

**NOTE:**

A Linux or Unix TFTP server should be used only if the customer already has an existing one. In these cases, you download the tar.gz file to your laptop and give it to the customer for proper placement and execution.

- 1 On the hard drive of your laptop or the customer's PC, create a directory into which you will load the G700 software. It is recommended that you create a directory called C:\tftp.
- 2 Connect to the LAN using a browser on your laptop or the customer's PC and access [http:// www.avaya.com/support](http://www.avaya.com/support) on the Internet.
- 3 At the Avaya support site, select the following sequence of menu options:



- 4 Double-click on one of the links listed with "TFTP Server"; for example, **4630 IP Telephone R 1.73 and TFTP Server**.
- 5 Scroll to bottom of page to find the TFTP Server Application file, `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe`.
- 6 Double-click on the program and download it to your laptop or the customer PC that will serve as the TFTP server. Remember where the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` file is installed on your laptop or PC and write it down.
- 7 You may also wish to download and view or print the file `iptel.pdf`, which provides instructions on installing the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` for Windows servers.
- 8 After downloading the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` file to the PC, double-click it and follow instructions to install it. By default, the installation program creates the directory, `C:\Program Files\Walusoft\TFTPSuite` that contains the application files.
- 9 When the file has been installed, go to the directory where the software was installed and double-click the file `tftpserver32.exe` to open the program.  
The TFTP Server window appears. It reflects the IP address of the PC in the upper border, plus port 69.
- 10 Enable the TFTP server as follows:
  - Click on System from menu bar and select setup.
  - The server option window appears.
  - Select the Outbound tab, and enter `C:\tftp` - (or your alternate tftp location) for the outbound file path.
  - Under Options tab, enter **69** in the Use Port field (default).
  - Select **No Incoming** (default). However, if you wish to copy files as a backup prior to performing an upgrade of software, leave this field unchecked.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300 Before Going to the Customer Site

- Select the Inbound tab, and enter C:\tftp (or your alternate tftp location) for the inbound file path.
- Click **OK**.

### Download G700 Firmware Files to Your TFTP Directory

To install new firmware for the G700 processors and the media modules, you first need to move the new firmware files to a directory on the TFTP server. The installation program reads the new firmware files from this directory on the TFTP server.

Perform one of the two procedures in this section, depending on whether you have a bundled tar.gz file on a CD or wish to download individual firmware files from the Avaya Support website.

#### For a Bundled Firmware File

##### **NOTE:**

Your laptop (or the customer's PC) must have WinZip or other file zipping software for this procedure.

##### ***Copy the tar.gz File from CD-ROM to Your TFTP Directory and Unzip It***

- 1** Insert the G700 software CD into your laptop or PC CD-ROM drive.
- 2** Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to access the files on the CD-ROM drive.
- 3** Copy the tar.gz file (G700-11.3-0009.0.tar.gz or similar identifier) to the C:\tftp directory (or your alternate tftp location).
- 4** Use winZIP or another zipfile tool to unzip the file. You may need to unzip an additional tar.gz file embedded in the original file. You should continue to unzip tar.gz files until you see listed files with extensions as shown in the table "Firmware File Formats" below.

#### For Individual Firmware Files

##### ***Download the Firmware Files from the Web to Your TFTP Directory***

##### **NOTE:**

The sequence of links on the website may be somewhat different than described here.

- 1** Access the [www.avaya.com/support](http://www.avaya.com/support) website.
- 2** At the Avaya support site, click on **Software & Firmware Downloads** and then click on the following sequence:
  - > **G700 Media Gateway & S8300 Media Server.**
  - > **Firmware Downloads**
  - > **G700 Firmware Downloads.**

The system displays a list of firmware files.

- 3** Locate the file names that match the files listed in your planning documentation. The file names will approximate those listed in the following table:



**Firmware File Formats**

<b>Component</b>	<b>Firmware Version Format</b>	<b>Example</b>
P330 Stack Processor	viisa<version id>	viisa3_12_1.exe
P330 Stack Processor	p330<version id>	p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe
G700 Media Gateway	mgp<version id>	mgp_8_0.bin
VoIP Media Module and Motherboard VoIP	mm760<version id>	mm760v3.fdl
DCP Media Module	mm712<version id>	mm712v2.fdl
Analog Port/Trunk Media Module	mm711<version id>	mm711v4.fdl
E1/T1 Media Module	mm710<version id>	mm710v3.fdl
BRI Media Module	mm720<version id>	mm720v2.fdl

- 4** Double-click the file name.  
 The system displays a File Download window.
- 5** Click on **Save this file to disk.**
- 6** Save the file to the C:\tftp directory (or your alternate tftp location).
- 7** Use Winzip or another zip file tool to unzip the file, if necessary.

## Configure the G700

---



### Tip:

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs tasks automatically in the , , [Check for IP Connections](#), and [Set the LSP Transition Points](#) sections. However, the GIW does *not* configure an X330 Expansion module. This task you must still perform as described in this document.

For a new installation of a G700 Media Gateway, you must complete the following configuration tasks:

- Assign IP addresses to the G700 processors
- Assign IP routes for the gateway
- Set up the controller list

### Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components

#### NOTE:

The Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs this task automatically.

This section describes how to assign the IP addresses and IP routes to the G700 Media Gateway and its components. The IP addresses should be available to you on the IP Addressing Planning Form. The command arguments you will be supplying include:

vlan	–Virtual Local Area Network: a defined network segment that allows users on that segment to have priority services in sharing information with each other.  If the network is not using VLANs, the VLAN should be 1. Otherwise, use the VLAN numbers indicated in your planning forms. The G700 Media Gateway should be assigned the same VLAN as the VLAN to which the Ethernet ports are connected. The P330 stack processor might or might not be assigned to the customer’s network management VLAN.
IP address	–the unique identifier assigned to an entity on the customer LAN
netmask	–the subnet mask for the customer’s LAN segment
destination	–distant networks that the IP route command needs to send packets to. Usually generalized to 0.0.0.0 for networks other than the local segment.
default gateway	–the gateway the ip route command specifies to get to the distant networks

#### **Access the P330 stack processor**

- 1 Set up a direct connection to the G700 Console (serial) port and access the P330 stack processor using Hyperterm (or similar terminal emulation application).
- 2 Login as root.

### Assign the IP address to the P330 stack processor



#### CAUTION:

The **nvr**am **init** command initializes the switch parameters to the factory defaults. This command is normally used only for new installations.

- 1** Initialize NVRAM: type **nvr**am **init**
- 2** Change mode to configure: type **con**figure
- 3** At the P330-1(super)# prompt, type **con**figure.
- 4** At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **set interface inband <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the P330 stack processor. *<vlan>* is the vlan number, usually 1, to be established on the S8300 for the G700 Media Gateways. The *<ip\_address> <netmask>* is the assigned addresses for the P330 stack processor.
- 5** Type reset and press **Enter** to reset the stack.
- 6** Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
 All LEDs will flash. As the unit powers up, self-tests will be run. When the G700 mpg or P330 stack processor has reset, login again to continue.
- 7** Login at the **Welcome to P330** menu.  
 The prompt P330-1(super)# appears.
- 8** Type **con**figure to obtain the P330-1(configure)# prompt.

### Establish the IP Routing for the Stack

- 1** Type **show interface inband** to verify that the Avaya P330 stack server (Layer 2 Switching Processor) has the correct address.
- 2** Type **set ip route 0.0.0.0 <default-gateway>** to set the destination and gateway IP addresses. You will find these addresses in the planning documentation.  
*<default-gateway>* is the IP address of the customer's network gateway.
- 3** Press **Enter** to save the destination and gateway IP addresses.
- 4** Type **show ip route**.  
 The route net and route host tables appear. Verify that the information is correct.

### Check the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway processor

After you have configured the P330 stack processor, you will assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP). Your first step is to check the serial number of the MGP.

- 1** At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mpg**.
- 2** At the MG-??-1(super)# prompt, type **show system** to list various attributes of the G700.  
 The system displays a list of attributes, as shown in the following example:

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

Configure the G700

### Show System List for G700 Media Gateway

```
MG-001-1(super)# show sys

Uptime(d,h:m:s): 1, 08:17:12

System Name      : -- Empty --
System Location  : -- Empty --
System Contact   : -- Empty --
MAC Address      : 00-04-0D-02-04-EF
Serial No        : 02DR07428721
Model No         : G700
HW Vintage       : 00
HW Suffix        : A
FW Vintage       : 230

Media Gateway Power Supplies
          VOLTAGE(V) ACTUAL(V) STATUS
-----
DSP Complex     3.4      3.359   OK
MGP              5.1      5.000   OK
Fans             1.2      0.000   OK
Media Modules   -48.0     -47.259  OK
VoIP DSP         1.6      1.570   OK
VoIP 8260        2.5      2.470   OK
Aux              -48.0      0.000   OK
--type q to quit or space key to continue--

MG-???-1(super)#
```

- 3 Write the serial number on your planning document. Make sure it matches the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 Media Gateway chassis. If there is a difference, the serial number in the displayed list is correct. You will need this later.

### Assign the IP Address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor

- 1 At the MG-???-n(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 2 Type **nvrn init** to recondition the processor.

This procedure re initializes the G700 software back to factory defaults so new IP addresses can be stored correctly in the software. It also clears all configuration and administration on the G700 Media Gateway.

The system prompts you to verify that you want to erase the configuration.

- 3 Answer the prompt by typing **y(es)**.  
The G700 Media Gateway re initializes.
- 4 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 5 At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 6 Type **set interface mgp <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway. <vlan> is the vlan to be established on the customer's local network. This is usually **1**. The <ip\_address> <netmask> is the assigned addresses for the G700 Media Gateway.

#### CAUTION:

If this G700 contains an S8300 configured as an LSP, use the VLAN administered on the primary controller.

- 7 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.

- 8** Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
 The prompt will change to P330-1(configure)#  
 The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 9** When the mgp reset is complete, type **session mgp**.
- 10** At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to reach the configuration level of the command line interface.
- 11** Type **show interface mgp** to verify that the G700 Media Gateway has the correct IP address.

### **Assign an IP Route for the Default Gateway**

The default gateway is a router or switch that routes packets to destinations outside of the local subnetwork.

- 1** At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **set ip route <destination> <netmask> <default\_gateway\_ip\_address>**. Both <destination> and <netmask> are 0.0.0.0 for the default gateway. <default\_gateway\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the router or switch that is designated to handle packets addressed to destinations outside of the local subnetwork.
- 2** Type **show ip route mgp** to view the results.
- 3** Repeat <~Link>step 1 for additional ip routes, if needed. Usually, only a default route is needed. Refer to your planning document.

### **Assign IP Addresses to the VoIP Resources**

From the G700 Media Gateway Processor command line interface, you will assign IP addresses to the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway and to any installed MM760 VoIP Media Modules.

- 1** At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type **set interface voip <number> <ip address>**  
 For example: **set interface voip v0 132.236.73.3**  
 <number> is the slot number of the VoIP media module. **v0** designates the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway motherboard. The MM760 VoIP Media Modules are designated according the slot (for example, **v1, v2, v3, v4**) in which the Media Module has been installed.  
 <ip address> is the IP address of the VoIP resource.
- 2** Type **show interface** to display a table of all configured interfaces, including all VoIP Media Modules.
- 3** Type **show voip v0** to display the VoIP resource on the motherboard.

#### **NOTE:**

It is not necessary to configure the VLAN, netmask, or IP routes for VoIP engines. The media gateway parameters are applied automatically.

### **Check for IP Connections**

After you have assigned IP addresses to the P330 Stack Processor (Layer 2 Switching Processor), the G700 Media Gateway MGP, Media Modules, and the VoIP resources, do the following procedure to validate the IP connections.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

### Configure the G700

#### Run the ping command

- 1 At the MG-???-n(config)# prompt, type **ping mgp <IP\_address>**

where *<IP\_address>* is the address of an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server, the VoIP engine, or any other functioning endpoint accessible on the customer's LAN. It is recommended to ping endpoints on both the same subnet and a different subnet.

Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

#### Ping MGP Results

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping mgp 135.122.49.55
PING 135.122.49.55: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=0. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=1. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=2. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=3. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=4. time=0. ms
----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip (ms) min/avg/max = 0/0/0
```

- 2 Check that the same number of packets transmitted were also received.
- 3 Type **ping voip v0 <IP\_address>**, where *<IP\_address>* is the address of the G700, or any other functioning endpoint on the customer's LAN. Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

#### Ping VoIP Results

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping voip v0 135.122.49.55

----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0 packet loss
round-trip(ms) min/avg/max = 0/1/0
```

## Assign the IP Addresses of the G700 Media Gateway Components



### Tip:

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs this task automatically.

This section describes how to assign the IP addresses and IP routes to the G700 Media Gateway and its components. The IP addresses should be available to you on the IP Addressing Planning Form. The command arguments you will be supplying include:

vlan	–Virtual Local Area Network: a defined network segment that allows users on that segment to have priority services in sharing information with each other.  If the network is not using VLANs, the VLAN should be 1. Otherwise, use the VLAN numbers indicated in your planning forms. The G700 Media Gateway should be assigned the same VLAN as the VLAN to which the Ethernet ports are connected. The P330 stack processor might or might not be assigned to the customer’s network management VLAN.
IP address	–the unique identifier assigned to an entity on the customer LAN
netmask	–the subnet mask for the customer’s LAN segment
destination	–distant networks that the IP route command needs to send packets to. Usually generalized to 0.0.0.0 for networks other than the local segment.
default gateway	–the gateway the ip route command specifies to get to the distant networks

### Access the P330 stack processor

- 1 Set up a direct connection to the G700 Console (serial) port and access the P330 stack processor using Hyperterm (or similar terminal emulation application).
- 2 Login as root.

### Assign the IP address to the P330 stack processor

- 1 At the P330-1(configuration)# prompt, type **set interface inband <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the P330 stack processor. <vlan> is the vlan number, usually 1, to be established on the S8300 for the G700 Media Gateways. The <ip\_address> <netmask> is the assigned addresses for the P330 stack processor.
- 2 Type `reset` and press **Enter** to reset the stack.
- 3 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
  
All LEDs will flash. As the unit powers up, self-tests will be run. When the G700 mpg or P330 stack processor has reset, login again to continue.
- 4 Login at the **Welcome to P330** menu.  
  
The prompt P330-1(super)# appears.
- 5 Type **configure** to obtain the P330-1(configuration)# prompt.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

Configure the G700

### **Establish the IP Routing for the Stack**

- 1 Type **show interface inband** to verify that the Avaya P330 stack server (Layer 2 Switching Processor) has the correct address.
- 2 Type **set ip route 0.0.0.0 <default-gateway>** to specify the gateway to handle addresses outside of the local subnet.  
<default-gateway> is the IP address of the customer's default network gateway. This address should be available in the planning documentation.
- 3 Press **Enter** to save the destination and gateway IP addresses.
- 4 Type **show ip route**.  
The route net and route host tables appear. Verify that the information is correct.

### **Check the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway processor**

After you have configured the P330 stack processor, you will assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP). Your first step is to check the serial number of the MGP.

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 2 At the MG-???-1(super)# prompt, type **show system** to list various attributes of the G700.

The system displays a list of attributes, as shown in the following example:

### **Show System List for G700 Media Gateway**

```
MG-001-1(super)# show sys

Uptime(d,h:m:s): 1, 08:17:12

System Name      : -- Empty --
System Location  : -- Empty --
System Contact   : -- Empty --
MAC Address      : 00-04-0D-02-04-EF
Serial No        : 02DR07428721
Model No         : G700
HW Vintage       : 00
HW Suffix        : A
FW Vintage       : 230

Media Gateway Power Supplies
          VOLTAGE(V)  ACTUAL(V)  STATUS
-----
DSP Complex     3.4          3.359    OK
MGP              5.1          5.000    OK
Fans            1.2          0.000    OK
Media Modules  -48.0        -47.259   OK
VoIP DSP         1.6          1.570    OK
VoIP 8260        2.5          2.470    OK
Aux             -48.0         0.000    OK
--type q to quit or space key to continue--

MG-???-1(super)#
```

- 3 Write the serial number on your planning document. Make sure it matches the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 Media Gateway chassis. If there is a difference, the serial number in the displayed list is correct. You will need this later.



**Assign the IP Address to the G700 Media Gateway Processor**

If, after you have assigned an IP address to the G700 processor, you telnet directly to the G700 Media Gateway processor, you will need to login, and the login name and password will be provided in the planning documentation.

- 1** At the `MG-???-n(super)#` prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 2** Type **nvram init** to recondition the processor. (This command ensures that any existing configuration information is cleared so you can enter the IP address and IP route information).  
The system prompts you to verify that you want to erase the configuration.
- 3** Answer the prompt by typing **y(es)**.  
This procedure re initializes the G700 software back to factory defaults so new IP addresses can be stored correctly in the software. It also clears all configuration and administration on the G700 Media Gateway.  
The G700 Media Gateway re initializes.
- 4** At the `P330-1(configure)#` prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 5** At the `MG-???-1(super)#` prompt, type **configure** to change to configuration mode.
- 6** Type **set interface mgp <vlan> <ip\_address> <netmask>** to assign an IP address to the G700 Media Gateway. <vlan> is the vlan to be established on the customer's local network. This is usually **1**. The <ip\_address> <netmask> is the assigned addresses for the G700 Media Gateway.

**CAUTION:**

If this G700 contains an S8300 configured as an LSP, use the VLAN administered on the primary controller.

- 7** At the `MG-???-n(configure)#` prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 8** Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the media modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the media modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 9** Log in again at the **Welcome to P330** menu.
- 10** At the `P330-1(configure)#` prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 11** At the `MG-???-1(super)#` prompt, type **configure** to reach the configuration level of the command line interface.
- 12** Type **show interface mgp** to verify that the G700 Media Gateway has the correct IP address.

**Assign the Default IP Route to the G700 Media Gateway**

- 1** At the `MG-???-n(configure)#` prompt, type **set ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 <default\_gateway>** to specify the gateway to handle addresses outside of the local subnet. <default\_gateway> is the IP address of the default network gateway. This address should be available in the planning documentation.
- 2** Type **show ip route mgp** to view the results.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

### Configure the G700

- 3 Repeat [Step 1](#) for additional ip routes, if needed. Usually, only a default route is needed. Refer to your planning document.

#### Assign IP Addresses to the VoIP Resources

From the G700 Media Gateway Processor command line interface, you will assign IP addresses to the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway and to any installed MM760 VoIP Media Modules.

- 1 At the `MG-???-n(configure)#` prompt, type **set interface voip <number> <ip address>**  
<number> is the slot number of the VoIP media module. **v0** designates the VoIP resource resident on the G700 Media Gateway motherboard. The MM760 VoIP Media Modules are designated according the slot (for example, **v1**, **v2**, **v3**, **v4**) in which the media module has been installed. <ip address> is the IP address of the VoIP resource.

For example: **set interface voip v0 132.236.73.3**

- 2 Type **show interface** to display a table of all configured interfaces, including all VoIP Media Modules.
- 3 Type **show voip v0** to display the VoIP resource on the motherboard.

#### NOTE:

It is not necessary to configure the VLAN, netmask, or IP routes for VoIP engines. The media gateway parameters are applied automatically.

#### Check for IP Connections

After you have assigned IP addresses to the P330 Stack Processor (Layer 2 Switching Processor), the G700 Media Gateway MGP, media modules, and the VoIP resources, do the following procedure to validate the IP connections.

#### Run the ping command

- 1 At the `MG-???-n(config)#` prompt, type **ping mgp <IP\_address>**  
where <IP\_address> is the address of an S8300, S8500, or S8700 Media Server, the VoIP engine, or any other functioning endpoint accessible on the customer's LAN. It is recommended to ping endpoints on both the same subnet and a different subnet.

Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

#### Ping MGP Results

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping mgp 135.122.49.55
PING 135.122.49.55: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=0. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=1. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=2. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=3. time=0. ms
64 bytes from 135.122.49.55: icmp_seq=4. time=0. ms
----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip (ms) min/avg/max = 0/0/0
```

- 2 Check that the same number of packets transmitted were also received.

- 3 Type **ping voip v0 <IP\_address>**, where <IP\_address> is the address of the G700, or any other functioning endpoint on the customer's LAN.

Ping results appear on the screen, similar to the following example.

### **Ping VoIP Results**

```
MG-???-1(configure)# ping voip v0 135.122.49.55

----135.122.49.55 PING Statistics----
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0 packet loss
round-trip(ms) min/avg/max = 0/1/0
```

## **Set up the Controller List for the G700 Media Gateway**

### **NOTE:**

The Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) performs this task automatically.

To complete the configuration of the G700 Media Gateway, you need to administer a list of primary and alternate controllers. This list begins with the IP address of the primary controller. In the event that the G700 Media Gateway loses contact with its primary controller, it will seek to re-register with the primary controller first, then with the other controllers on this list. The other controllers are S8500 or S8700 Media Servers that can act as the primary controller, or S8300 Media Servers configured as Local Survivable Processors (LSPs).

Up to four IP addresses separated by commas can be entered to form the controller list.

- 1 At the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt, type the following commands to designate the primary, secondary, and LSP controllers for this G700:

**clear mgc list**

**set mgc list <ip\_address> [,<ip\_address> [,<ip\_address> [,<ip\_address>]]]**

where, the first <ip\_address> is the IP address of the primary controller for this G700. If the primary controller is an S8700, this is the IP address of a C-LAN board that is connected to a pair of duplicated S8700s. If the Primary controller is an S8300, this is the IP address of the S8300.

The next three <ip\_address> parameters are optional IP addresses of up to three alternate controllers. Each of the three optional controllers can be an S8700 duplicated pair or an S8300 configured as an LSP, depending on the G700's primary controller.



### **CAUTION:**

If you need to change the mgc list, you must run **clear mgc list** before running **set mgc list** again.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

### Configure the G700

The following table describes the possible optional controllers for an S8300 and S8700 primary controller:

Primary Server	Controller IP Addresses
S8300	<b>First:</b> IP address of the S8300 primary controller. <b>Next three:</b> one, two, or three IP addresses of S8300s configured as LSPs.
S8500 or S8700	<b>First:</b> IP address of the C-LAN for the S8500 or S8700 primary controller. <b>Next three:</b> one, two, or three IP addresses of alternate C-LANs and/or LSPs.

For an S8500 or S8700 primary controller, the last three IP addresses in the list can be either the addresses of C-LANS (which are connected to the same S8500 or pair of S8700s that act as primary controllers) or addresses of LSPs. If you enter a combination of both, you must list C-LANs first and the LSPs last, *after* the C-LANs.

- 2 Type **reset mgp** at the MG-???-n(configure)# prompt to reset the G700 Media Gateway processor.

A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.

- 3 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.

The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.

The system ultimately returns you to the P330-1 (configure) prompt.

At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.

At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.

#### NOTE:

Because the G700 media gateway has registered with its primary controller, the prompt name has changed; for example, to MG-001-1.

Type **show mgc** to display the list of available servers and their IP addresses.

For example:

## Show Call Controller Status Screen

```

MG-001-1(configure)# show mgc
CALL CONTROLLER STATUS
-----
Registered           : YES
Active Controller    : 135.9.71.95
H248 Link Status     : UP
H248 Link Error Code: 0x0
MGC List Management  : Static

CONFIGURED MGC HOST           DHCP SPECIFIED MGC HOST
-----
135.9.71.95                   -- Not Available --
- Not Available --           -- Not Available --
- Not Available --           -- Not Available --
- Not Available --           -- Not Available --

```

The Gateway will have registered with the primary controller, if present. If the primary controller is running and has been administered properly, the Registered field says **YES** and the H248 Link Status says **UP**. If the controller is not running, the Registered field says **NO** and the H248 Link Status says **DOWN**.

## Set the LSP Transition Points

You must set the time that the G700 searches, in the event of a network problem, for primary controllers (for example, additional CLAN connections) with which to register. After this search time has elapsed, the G700 will search for an LSP with which to register. You must also set the total time the G700 searches for either a primary controller and an LSP, after which the G700 resets. And finally, you must define how many primary controllers, from 1 to 4, are in the controller list you just defined.

- 1** At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times primary-search <search-time>** where <search-time> is the time in minutes that the G700 searches for a primary controller before looking for an LSP. The range is from **1** to **60**.
- 2** At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times total-search <search-time>** where <search-time> is the time in minutes that the G700 searches for both primary controllers or LSPs. The range is from **1** to **60**.
- 3** At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **set mgp reset-times transition-point <#\_of\_primary>** where <#\_of\_primary> is the number of primary controllers in the controller list. If the primary controller is an S8500 or S8700, the range is from **1** to **4**. If the primary controller is an S8300, <#\_of\_primary> must be **1**.

#### **4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300** Configure the G700

### **Configure an X330 Expansion Module (If Necessary)**

**NOTE:**

You cannot use the IW to perform this task.

- 1** See the *Avaya X330W-2DS1 Access Router Module Quick Start Guide*. This document is available at the Avaya Support website:  
[Support > Technical Database > LAN, Backbone, and Edge Access Switches > P330 Stackable Switching System > All Documents](#)
- 2** Select the Quick Start Guide for X330WAN 2DS1

## Prepare to Install Firmware on the G700

---

Before installing new firmware on the G700 processors and medial modules need to:

- Have the firmware files loaded on a TFTP server
- Determine which G700 components need new firmware

as described in this section.

### Access the P330 Stack Processor

See [Connection and Login Methods](#) on page 45 for details on how to set up a connection and login.

Log on to the P330 stack processor using one of the following methods:

- Using a LAN connection, telnet to the IP address of the P330 stack processor and log in.
- If you are *not* using your laptop as the TFTP server, you can connect your Laptop directly to the G700 Console (Serial) Port. Then use HyperTerm or a similar terminal emulation application to log in to the P330 stack processor Command Line Interface.

You are now logged-in at the Supervisor level with prompt `P330-1(super)#`.

### Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory

Before proceeding with the G700 firmware installation, you should check the tftpboot directory on the TFTP server to make sure the firmware versions match those listed in the planning documentation.

### Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700

Conduct the following procedure to compare software versions running on the G700 processors and media modules with the versions in you planning documents. If the versions do not match, new firmware for those components is necessary.

***Determine if new firmware for the P330 stack processor is necessary.***

- 1** At either the `P330-1(super)#` or `P330-1(configure)#` prompt, type **dir**.

The system displays the list of software.

**4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300**  
 Prepare to Install Firmware on the G700

**Directory List for P300 Processor**

M#	file	ver num	file type	file location	file description
1	module-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Module Configuration
1	stack-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Stack Configuration
1	EW_Archive	3.8.6	SW Web Image	NV-Ram	WEB Download
1	Booter_Image	3.2.5	SW BootImage	NV-Ram	Booter Image

- 2 Check the version number (ver num) of the EW\_Archive file to see if it matches the Release Letter. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.
- 3 Type **show image version**

The system displays the list of software.

**Show Image Version List for P330 Processor**

Mod	Module-Type	Bank	Version
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	A	0.0.0
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	B	3.9.0

- 4 Check the version number of the stack software image file in Band B to see if it matches the your planning document. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.

**Determine if new firmware is required for the MGP, VoIP Module, and installed media modules.**

- 1 Type **session mgp**
- 2 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The system displays the list of software.

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	210(B)	2
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	52	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	12	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	54	N/A

- 3 Refer to the list to check the FW vintage number of the G700. In the TYPE column, find G700, then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the vintage number in your planning forms. If not, you must install new firmware on the G700 Media



Gateway. Also check if the release number in the FW VINTAGE column contains (A) or (B) to designate the software bank. If the list shows B, you will upgrade A. If the list shows A, you will upgrade B.

- 4** Refer to the VOIP FW column and row for slot V0 (same row occupied by the G700 information) to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in your planning forms. If not, you must also upgrade the G700 Media Gateway motherboard VoIP module.

**NOTE:**

The VoIP processor on the motherboard is upgraded using the same firmware image file as the VoIP media modules; for example, the file mm760v8.fdl is vintage #8.

- 5** Check the FW VINTAGE column for vintages of each of the installed Media Modules: MM710, MM711, MM712, MM720, and/or MM760 to see if they match the FW vintages in the planning forms. If not, you must upgrade them, as well.

## Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway

---

Follow the procedures in this section to install firmware on the G700 processors and media modules.

### Firmware Installation Procedures

#### Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor

##### *Install P330 stack processor firmware*

- 1 Access the P330 stack processor.
- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp SW\_image <file> EW\_archive <ew\_file> <tftp\_server\_address> <Module#>** where  
<file> is the full-path name for the image file with format and vintage number similar to viisa3\_8\_2.exe,  
  
<ew\_file> is the full-path name for the embedded web application file with format similar to p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe,  
  
<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and  
  
<Module#> is the number, 1 through 10, of the media gateway in the stack. If there is only one G700 Media Gateway, the number is 1.
- 2 To verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns:
  - type **show image version <module #>** and check the version number in the Version column for Bank B.
  - type **dir <module #>** and check the version number in the ver num column for the EW\_Archive file.
- 3 Type **reset <module #>**

#### Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor

##### *Install MGP firmware*

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp** to reach the G700 Media Gateway processor.
- 2 Type **configure** at the MG-??-1(super)# prompt to enter configuration mode, which will change the prompt to MG-??-1(configure)#.
- 3 At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mgp bootimage** to determine which disk partition (bank) is in the Active Now column. You will update the bank that is *not* listed as Active Now. The system displays the following screen:

**Example: Show mgp bootimage**

<u>FLASH MEMORY</u>	<u>IMAGE VERSION</u>
Bank A	109
Bank B	210
<u>ACTIVE NOW</u>	<u>ACTIVE AFTER REBOOT</u>
Bank B	Bank B

- 4 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp mgp-image <bank> <filename> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** to transfer the mgp image from the tftp server to the G700, where
  - <bank> is the bank that is *not* Active Now (Bank A in the example).
  - <filename> is the full path name of the mgp firmware image file, which begins with mgp and will be similar to the name mgp\_8\_0.bin.
  - <tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the S8300. See the following example:  
copy tftp mgp-image a mgp\_8\_0.bin 195.123.49.54.
  - The screen will show the progress.
- 5 Type **set mgp bootimage <bank>** where <bank> is the same letter you entered in the previous step.
- 6 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 7 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 8 When the P330-1(super)# prompt appears, type **session mgp**.
- 9 At the MGP-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure**.
- 10 Verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns.  
Type **show mg list\_config**. The system displays the list of software.

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway

### Example: Show mg list\_config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230 (A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

## Install New Firmware on the Media Modules

For upgrades of active media modules, you need to take the media modules out of service before initiating the upgrade process. To do this, go to a SAT session on the primary controller and issue a busyout command.

### NOTE:

Skip this busyout procedure if the media modules are not in service; for example during an initial installation.

### **Busyout board (for active media modules)**

- 1 Go to a SAT session on the primary controller and enter the command, **busyout board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the media module to be upgraded.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.
- 3 Repeat for each media module to be upgraded.

### **Install media module firmware**

- 1 Be sure that you have checked for the current vintage of the VoIP Module for the v0 slot (on the G700 motherboard) (see [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#)). This VoIP module does not occupy a physical position like other Media Modules.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 3 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.
- 4 Type **copy tftp mm-image v<slot #> <filename mm> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** where *<slot #>* is the slot of the specific media module as identified when you performed [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#),

*<filename mm>* the full-path name of the media module firmware file in a format such mm712v58.fdl, and

*<tftp\_server\_ip\_address>* is the ip address of the S8300.

Two or three minutes will be required for most upgrades. The VoIP Media Module upgrade takes approximately 5 minutes. Screen messages indicate when the transfer is complete.

- 5** After you have upgraded all the media modules, verify that the new versions are present. At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The list of software appears

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230(A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

- 6** In the TYPE column, find the particular media module (v1 through v4), then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the planning documentation. Note that slot V1 can contain either a media module or the S8300, which will show as Type "ICC".
- 7** Check the VOIP FW column and row for slot v0 to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in the planning documentation.
- 8** Type **reset <module #>** where <module #> is the number of the G700 in the stack.
- 9** When the reset is finished, type **show mm** to verify the upgrade.

**Release board (if media module was busied out)**

- 1** When the upgrade procedure is complete, go to the SAT session and release the board: type **release board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the upgraded media module.
- 2** Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.

**NOTE:**

If you see the response, Board Not Inserted, this means that the media module is still rebooting. Wait one minute and repeat the **release board** command.

- 3** Repeat the **release board** command for each media module that was busied out.

# Administer Communication Manager

Perform one of the two administration procedures in this section:

- When the [The Primary Controller is an S8300](#), or
- When the [The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700](#)

## The Primary Controller is an S8300

This document covers only the administration of Communication Manager required for the G700 Media Gateway to communicate with the primary controller over a customer's network. For the majority of administration required, see "Administrator's Guide to Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-506," or "Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504."

In this section, you will use the SAT interface to:

- Assign Node Names for LSPs
- Define the IP Network Region
- Add a Media Gateway.



### CAUTION:

Before continuing, be sure you have saved translations in Communication Manager.

### Reset the System

- 1 Telnet to the S8300, log in, and open a SAT session (type **sat** or **dsat**).
- 2 At the SAT prompt, type **reset system 4**  
The system reboots.
- 3 After the reboot is complete, telnet to the S8300, login, and open a SAT session.

## Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the LSPs

If the S8300 network configuration includes LSPs, they must be specified on the Node Names form.

### Assign node names

- 1 At the S8300 SAT prompt, type **change node-names ip** to open the Node Names screen.

### Example Node Names Screen

```
change node-names ip                                     Page 1 of 1
                                                         IP NODE NAMES
Name             IP Address      Name             IP Address
default         0.0.0.0         _____      _____._____.____
node-10-lsp     192.168.1.50   _____      _____._____.____
node-11-lsp     192.168.1.51   _____      _____._____.____
_____         _____._____.____ _____      _____._____.____
_____         _____._____.____ _____      _____._____.____
_____         _____._____.____ _____      _____._____.____
```

- 2 Enter the name and IP addresses for the LSPs.
- 3 Press F3 (ENTER) when complete.

## Administer Network Regions

Before assigning an IP network region to a G700, you must define network region on the IP Network Region form. After a network region is defined, you can assign it to the various network elements (servers, gateways, IP phones).

The information you need to do this should be provided in your planning documentation. Use the system defaults if the planning documentation does not specify otherwise.

For a G700 with an S8300 as primary controller, there will usually be one network region, defined as 1. The procedure below uses 1 for the network region number as an example but the procedure applies for any network region number from 1 to 250.

### Define IP network region 1



#### CAUTION:

Defining IP network regions can be quite complex. For detailed information on the use and administration of IP network regions, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change ip-network-region 1**.

The S8300 displays the IP Network Region screen.

### IP Network Region Screen

```

change ip-network-region 1                               Page 1 of 19
                                     IP NETWORK REGION
Region: 1
Location:                               Home Domain:
Name:
AUDIO PARAMETERS                                     Intra-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
Inter-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
Codec Set: 1                                         IP Audio Hairpinning? y
UDP Port Min: 2048
UDP Port Max: 3028                                   RTCP Reporting Enabled? n
RTCP MONITOR SERVER PARAMETERS
DiffServ/TOS PARAMETERS                             Use Default Server Parameters? y
Call Control PHB Value: 34
Audio PHB Value: 46
802.1P/Q PARAMETERS
Call Control 802.1p Priority: 7
Audio 802.1p Priority: 6                             AUDIO RESOURCE RESERVATION PARAMETERS
H.323 IP ENDPOINTS                                   RSVP Enabled? n
H.323 Link Bounce Recovery? y
Idle Traffic Interval (sec): 20
Keep-Alive Interval (sec): 5
Keep-Alive Count: 5
  
```

- 2 If necessary, complete the fields as described in “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

#### NOTE:

It is strongly recommended to use the defaults in the screen. However, for the RTCP Enabled and RSVP Enabled fields, the entry should be **n** (no).

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300

### Administer Communication Manager

- 3 Press **F3 (ENTER)** to submit the screen.

## Associate LSPs with Network Regions

If the primary controller has LSPs, you can associate each LSP with one or more network regions. In the event of a network failure, IP telephones assigned to a network region will register with an LSP associated with that region.

This procedure associates up to six LSPs with a network region.

### *Associate LSPs with a network region*

- 1 On the IP Network Region screen, go to page 2.

#### IP Network Region Screen, page 3

```
change ip-network-region 1                               Page 2 of 19
                                                    IP NETWORK REGION
LSP NAMES IN PRIORITY ORDER
1  node-10-LSP_____
2  _____
3  _____
4  _____
5  _____
6  _____
```

- 2 Enter the names of up to six LSPs to be associated with region 1. The LSP names must be the same as administered on the Node Names form.
- 3 Submit the form.
- 4 Repeat for each network region with which you want to associate LSPs.

## Administer IP Interfaces

This procedure assigns network region 1, as an example, to the S8300 Media Server.

### *Assign the network region to the S8300*

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change ip-interfaces procr**.  
The S8300 displays the IP Interfaces screen for the media server.

#### IP Interfaces Screen

```
change ip-interfaces procr                               Page 1 of 1
                                                    IP INTERFACES
Type: PROCR
Node Name: procr
IP Address: 135.9.41.146
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Enable Ethernet Port?
Network Region: 1
```



- The field Eth Port should indicate **Y** (yes). The Node Name should be the IP address of the S8300 Media Server.

## Administer the LSP Form

If the primary controller has LSPs, you must enter the LSP node names on the LSP form to enable the LSPs to get translations updates from the primary controller. Once the LSPs are successfully entered on the LSP form, their status can be viewed with the **display lsp** command.

### NOTE:

The LSP node names must be administered on the node-names-ip form before they can be entered on the LSP form.

### Add LSP names to the LSP form

- At the S8300 SAT prompt, type **change lsp** to open the LSP form.

### LSP Screen

```
change lsp
```

Number	NAME	IP Address	LOCAL SURVIVABLE PROCESSOR Service State?	Page 1 of 16 Translations Updated
1	<u>node-10-LSP_</u>	192.168.1.50	in-service	14:21 5/4/2003
2	_____		out-of-service	
3	_____		out-of-service	
4	_____		out-of-service	
5	_____		out-of-service	
6	_____		out-of-service	
7	_____		out-of-service	
8	_____		out-of-service	
9	_____		out-of-service	
10	_____		out-of-service	
11	_____		out-of-service	
12	_____		out-of-service	
13	_____		out-of-service	
14	_____		out-of-service	
15	_____		out-of-service	
16	_____		out-of-service	

- Enter the node name for each LSP supported by the primary controller and submit the form.

## The Primary Controller is an S8500 or S8700

If the primary controller is an S8500 or S8700.

This document covers only the administration of Communication Manager required for the G700 Media Gateway to communicate with the primary controller over a customer's network. For the majority of required administration, see "*Administrator's Guide to Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-506,*" or "*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*"

In this section, you will use the SAT interface to:

- Assign Node Names
- Define the IP Network Region
- Add a Media Gateway

**NOTE:**

For information on installing the CLAN boards on the S8500 or S8700 port networks and complete information on installing an S8700 Media Server, see the Installation documentation on the “Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825.”

### Assign Node Names and IP Addresses for the C-LANs and LSPs

**NOTE:**

The CLAN boards must be TN799DP running version 5 or greater firmware. Be sure to check the firmware version for these boards on the S8700. For information on how to upgrade the firmware on the S8700, please see the section "Upgrade Firmware in Selected Port Cabinet Packs" in *Upgrading the Avaya Media Server Configuration* in the S8700 documentation portion of this documentation CD, “Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-325.”

#### Assign node names and IP addresses

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change node-names ip** to open the Node Names screen.

#### Example Node Names Screen

change node-names ip		Page 1 of 1	
IP NODE NAMES			
Name	IP Address	Name	IP Address
default_____	0__ . 0__ . 0__ . 0__	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-1-clan_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 124	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-2-clan_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 97	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-10-lsp_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 50	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
node-11-lsp_____	192 . 168 . 1__ . 51	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
_____	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
_____	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __
_____	__ . __ . __ . __	_____	__ . __ . __ . __

- 2 Enter the name and IP address for the C-LANs and LSPs.
- 3 Press **F3 (ENTER)** when complete.

### Administer Network Regions

Before assigning an IP network region to a G700, you must define network region on the IP Network Region form. After a network region is defined, you can assign it to the various network elements (servers, gateways, IP phones).

The information you need to do this should be provided in your planning documentation. Use the system defaults if the planning documentation does not specify otherwise.

For a G700 with an S8300 LSP and an S8500 or S8700 as the primary controller, there may be more than one network region, since there can be up to 250 G700 Media Gateways connected to the S8500 or S8700 with thousands of telephones in the network. In this case, you define a network region for each CLAN board on the S8500 or S8700 port networks, though they may also have the same network region.

The G700, in this case, may also share the same network region as the CLAN board(s). However, it may have a different network region because of the geographic distances of the connections between the G700

and the S8500 or S8700. The G700 network region may also differ because of the nature of the endpoints connected to it.

**Define IP network regions for the G700 and CLAN board(s)**

 **CAUTION:**

Defining IP network regions can be quite complex. For detailed information on the use and administration of IP network regions, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 1 On the SAT screen of the primary controller for the G700 Media Gateway, type **change ip-network-region <network\_region>**, where the <network\_region> is the region you will assign to the G700 Media Gateway. This region number may or may not match the network region of the S8500 or S8700 CLAN boards.

The system displays the IP Network Region screen.

**IP Network Region Screen**

```

change ip-network-region 1                               Page 1 of 19
                                                    IP NETWORK REGION
  Region: 1
Location:                               Home Domain:
  Name:
AUDIO PARAMETERS                                     Intra-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
  Codec Set: 1                                       Inter-region IP-IP Direct Audio: yes
UDP Port Min: 2048                                   IP Audio Hairpinning? y
UDP Port Max: 3028                                   RTCP Reporting Enabled? n
                                                    RTCP MONITOR SERVER PARAMETERS
  DiffServ/TOS PARAMETERS                             Use Default Server Parameters? y
  Call Control PHB Value: 34
    Audio PHB Value: 46
802.1P/Q PARAMETERS
  Call Control 802.1p Priority: 7
    Audio 802.1p Priority: 6
H.323 IP ENDPOINTS                                   AUDIO RESOURCE RESERVATION PARAMETERS
  H.323 Link Bounce Recovery? y                       RSVP Enabled? n
Idle Traffic Interval (sec): 20
  Keep-Alive Interval (sec): 5
  Keep-Alive Count: 5
  
```

- 2 Complete the fields as described in “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

**NOTE:**

It is strongly recommended to use the defaults in the screen.

- 3 If the network region of the G700 (1 in this example) is different from that of the S8500 or S8700 CLAN board(s), you must interconnect the two regions. Press **NextPage** twice to display page 3, Inter Network Region Connection Management.

The system displays page 3 of the IP Network Region screen. This screen shows the source region (1) and the first 15 destination network region numbers. (Pages 4–19 show destination regions 16–250).

## 4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300 Administer Communication Manager

### IP Network Region Screen, Page 3

```
display ip-network-region 1                               Page 3 of 19
Inter Network Region Connection Management

src dst
rgn rgn      codec-set  direct-WAN  WAN-BW-limits  Intervening-regions
1 1          1
1 2
1 3
1 4
1 5
1 6
1 7
1 8
1 9          3
1 10
1 11
1 12
1 13
1 14
1 15
```

- 4 Type the number for the type of codec set (1–7) that the S8500 or S8700 will use to interconnect the G700 and the C-LAN board(s) in the row corresponding to the region of the C-LAN. In this example, the C-LAN is in region 9 and codec-set type 3 is to be used for the interconnection between region 1 and region 9. (In this example, codec type 1 is used for communication within region 1)

The SAT command, **list ip-codec-set**, lists the types of codecs available on this server.

For more detail about the Inter Network Region Connection Management form, see “*Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504.*”

- 5 Press **F3 (ENTER)** when complete.

### Assign LSPs to the Network Regions

If the primary controller has LSPs, you can assign the LSPs to network regions. In the event of a network failure, IP telephones assigned to a network region will register with the LSPs assigned to that region.

This procedure assigns up to six LSPs to a network region.

#### **Assign LSPs to a network region**

- 1 On the IP Network Region screen, go to page 3.

#### **IP Network Region Screen, page 3**

```
change ip-network-region 1                               Page 2 of 19
IP Network Region

LSP NAMES IN PRIORITY ORDER
1  node-10-LSP_____
2  _____
3  _____
4  _____
5  _____
6  _____
```

- 2 Enter the names of up to six LSPs to be assigned to region 1. The LSP names must be the same as administered on the Node Names form.
- 3 Submit the form.
- 4 Repeat for each network region to which you want to assign LSPs.

## Administer IP Interfaces

### Define the IP interfaces of the S8500 or S8700 port network CLAN boards

**NOTE:**

This should have already been established as a part of normal S8500 or S8700 installation.

- 1 Type **change ip-interfaces** to open the IP Interfaces screen.

### IP Interfaces Screen

```

change ip-interfaces procr                                     Page 1 of 1

                                IP INTERFACES

                                Type: C-LAN
                                Slot: 01A03
                                Code/Suffix: TN799 d
                                Node Name: procr
                                IP Address: 135.9.41.146
                                Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
                                Gateway Address: 135.9.41.254
                                Enable Ethernet Port? y
                                Network Region: 1
                                VLAN: 0

                                Number of CLAN Sockets Before Warning: 400
    
```

- 2 Complete the fields as described the in the following table.

Field	Conditions/Comments
Type	Either C-LAN.
Slot	The slot location for the circuit pack.
Code/Suffix	Display only. This field is automatically populated with TN799 for C-LAN.
Node name	The unique node name for the IP interface. The node name here must already be administered on the Node Names screen.
IP Address	The IP address (on the customer LAN) of the C-LAN.
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask associated with the IP address for this IP interface. For more information on IP addresses and subnetting, see <i>“Administration for Network Connectivity for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-504”</i> .
Gateway Address	The address of a network node that serves as the default gateway for the IP interface.

*1 of 2*

**4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300**  
Administer Communication Manager

Field	Conditions/Comments
Enable Ethernet Port?	The Ethernet port must be enabled ( <b>y</b> ) before it can be used. The port must be disabled ( <b>n</b> ) before changes can be made to its attributes on this screen.
Network Region	The region number for this IP interface.
VLAN	The VLAN number assigned to the C-LAN, if any.
Number of CLAN Sockets Before Warning	The threshold for the number of sockets used by this C-LAN that triggers a warning message to be sent to the error log.

2 of 2

**3** Close the screen.

### Administer the LSP Form

If the primary server has LSPs, you must enter the LSP node names on the LSP form to enable the LSPs to get translations updates from the primary controller. Once the LSPs are successfully entered on the LSP form, their status can be viewed with the **display lsp** command.

**NOTE:**

The LSP node names must be administered on the node-names-ip form before they can be entered on the LSP form.

#### Add LSP names to the LSP form

**1** At the SAT prompt, type **change lsp** to open the LSP form.

#### LSP Screen

```

change lsp                                     Page 1 of 16
                LOCAL SURVIVABLE PROCESSOR
Number NAME          IP Address          Service          Translations
                State?          Updated
1   node-10-LSP_    192.168.1.50    in-service      14:21 5/4/2003
2   _____    _____    out-of-service
3   _____    _____    out-of-service
4   _____    _____    out-of-service
5   _____    _____    out-of-service
6   _____    _____    out-of-service
7   _____    _____    out-of-service
8   _____    _____    out-of-service
9   _____    _____    out-of-service
10  _____    _____    out-of-service
11  _____    _____    out-of-service
12  _____    _____    out-of-service
13  _____    _____    out-of-service
14  _____    _____    out-of-service
15  _____    _____    out-of-service
16  _____    _____    out-of-service

```

**2** Enter the node name for each LSP supported by the primary controller and submit the form.

To perform the procedures in this section, telnet to the primary controller, log in, and open a SAT session.

 **CAUTION:**

Before administering a media gateway, make sure that the gateway has been fully configured.

**Add Media Gateway**

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **add media-gateway <number>** where <number> is the gateway number from 1 to *n*. (*n* is 50 for an S8300 and 250 for an S8500 or S8700).

The S8300 displays the Media Gateway screen.

**Add Media Gateway Screen**

```

change media-gateway 1                                     Page 1 of 1
                                MEDIA GATEWAY
      Number: 1                                           IP Address: 135.9.41.150
      Type: g700                                         FW Version/HW Vintage: 21.13.0 /0
      Name: Swainsons                                    MAC Address:
      Serial No: 012X06230551                            Encrypt Link? y
Network Region: 1                                       Location: 1
      Registered? n                                     Controller IP Address:
                                                    Site Data:

      Slot  Module Type          Name
      V1:
      V2:
      V3:
      V4:

      V8:
      V9:
  
```

- 2 Complete the Name field with the hostname assigned to the G700 Media Gateway.
- 3 Complete the Identifier field with the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway. You can obtain the serial number by typing the **show system** command at the MGP command line.

 **CAUTION:**

Be sure the serial number for the G700 Media Gateway you enter in this procedure matches *exactly* the serial number displayed in the **show system** command. The serial number is case-sensitive, and if entered incorrectly, will prevent the S8300 Media Server from communicating with the G700 Media Gateway.

- 4 Complete the Network Region field with the value supplied in the planning documentation.
- 5 If specifically requested by the customer or your planning documents, type **gateway-announcements** in the V9 field. This field allows you to enable announcements on the G700 Media Gateway. V9 is a virtual slot. There is no announcement board associated with it. The announcements for the G700 are available in the G700 firmware and are administered in the same way as announcements on the TN2301 circuit pack used on S8500 or S8700 port networks.

If there are multiple G700 Media Gateways sharing announcements, then enable announcements on the G700 whose trunks will receive the announcements most often.

- 6 Press **F3 (ENTER)** to save your changes.  
 If properly administered, the G700 should register with the primary controller within 1–2 minutes. The IP Address, MAC Address, and Module Type fields are populated automatically after the G700 Media Gateway registers with the server.

- 7 Type **change media-gateway** to view the Media Gateway form.

### Media Gateway Screen (After Registration with Primary Controller)

```
change media-gateway 1                                     Page 1 of 1
                                     MEDIA GATEWAY
Number: 1                                           IP Address: 135.9.41.150
Type: g700                                         FW Version/HW Vintage: 21.13.0 /0
Name: Swainsons                                   MAC Address: 00:04:0d:02:06:ca
Serial No: 012X06230551                           Encrypt Link? y
Network Region: 1                                 Location: 1
Registered? y                                     Controller IP Address: 135.9.41.146
                                                Site Data:

Slot  Module Type          Name
V1:   S8300                ICC MM
V2:   MM712                DCP MM
V3:   MM711                ANA MM
V4:   MM710                T1/E1 MM

V8:
V9:
```

The media modules installed in the G700 are listed next to their slot numbers.

To verify that a G700 Media Gateway has been successfully added:

#### Verify Changes

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **list media-gateway**.

#### List Media-Gateway Screen

```
list media-gateway
                                     MEDIA-GATEWAY REPORT
Number  Name          Serial No/      IP Address/      Type  NetRgn  Reg?
       Name          FW Ver/HW Vint  Cntrl IP Addr
-----
1      LabA          01DR07128730   135.177.49.57   g700  1        y
                         21 .13 .0 /0   135.177.49.59
2      Data MG2     02DR01130356   135.177.49.90   g350  1        n
                         11 .2  .0 /0   135.177.49.40
```

- 2 Verify that the G700 Media Gateway has registered.

The **y** in the registered field signifies that the G700 Media Gateway has registered. If the G700 should become unregistered, the **y** will become an **n**, but the IP address will remain assigned to the G700 Media Gateway. If the G700 has never been registered, the IP Address field will be blank.

If the G700 fails to register, two common causes might be:

- The serial number added as the identifier for the G700 is wrong. To check, log back into the G700 gateway and type **show system**. Check the serial number that appears.
- There is no IP connection between the G700 and the S8300. To check, type **show mgc** and then **ping mgp <controller\_address>**.



### ***Enable Announcements, If Necessary***

- 1 Only if specifically requested by the customer or your planning documents, at the SAT prompt, type **enable announcement-board <gateway\_number> V9**, where <gateway\_number> is the number of the G700 Media Gateway you just added and **V9** is the virtual slot (for example, **2V9** means Media Gateway number 2, slot V9).
- 2 Press **ENTER** to enable announcements.  
The system displays the message Command successfully completed.

### ***Save Communication Manager Translations***

Save translations again after all Communication Manager administration is complete.

- At the SAT prompt, type **save translation**.

## **Complete the Installation Process**

---

Consult the planning documentation to obtain the necessary information to complete the installation. Part of the final process will be to:

- Connect and administer test endpoints.
- Test the endpoints.
- Complete the electrical installation
- Enable adjunct systems

This completes the upgrade procedures.

**4 Installing a New G700 without an S8300**  
Complete the Installation Process

# 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

This chapter covers the procedures to upgrade the software on an installed Avaya S8300 Media Server from release 1.x to 2.0. It also covers the procedures to upgrade the firmware on an installed Avaya G700 Media Gateway. The S8300 can be configured as either the primary controller or as a local survivable processor (LSP). When the S8300 is an LSP, the primary controller running Avaya Communication Manager can be either another S8300 or an Avaya S8500 or S8700 Media Server.

The steps to upgrade an S8300 configured as an LSP are the same as the steps to upgrade an S8300 configured as the primary controller, with the following additional considerations:

- The version of Communication Manager running on the LSP must be the same as, or later than, the version running on the primary controller.
- If upgrading both the primary controller and the LSP, the LSP must be upgraded first. Then, with Communication Manager turned off on the LSP, the primary controller is upgraded.

Upgrading Communication Manager from a pre-2.0 release to Release 2.0 requires upgrading the operating system to a newer version of Red Hat Linux. The upgrade process includes remastering (reformatting) the hard drive and loading the new software and operating system from a CD-ROM containing the new operating system and Release 2.0 of Communication Manager.



### CAUTION:

This upgrade procedure, including remastering the hard drive on the S8300, requires a service interruption of approximately 4 hours, or up to 6 hours if IA770 is being used.

### NOTE:

This upgrade procedure requires the use of an external USB CD-ROM drive.



### Tip:

Due to the necessary reformatting of the S8300 hard drive for the new operating system, the Avaya Installation Wizard (IW) cannot support upgrades of Communication Manager from a pre-2.0 release to a 2.0(+) release. However, the IW and the Upgrade Tool can still be used for the media gateway and media module firmware upgrades.

## System Access

To access the S8300 on-site, you will normally connect the technician's laptop directly to the Services port on the S8300 using a crossover cable. See [Connection and Login Methods](#) on page 45 for instructions on accessing the S8300 and G700.

## Task Summary

---

### Before Going to the Site

- [Get USB CD-ROM Drive](#) on page 214
- [If Upgrading from Release 1.1, Fill in the EPW](#) on page 214
- [Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager](#) on page 214
- [Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary](#) on page 214
- [Check Number of Allocated Ports](#) on page 215
- [Check FTP Server for Backing up Data](#) on page 215
- [Get Software/Firmware Files](#) on page 215
- [Download Software Update \(patch\) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary](#) on page 216
- [Complete the RFA Process \(Obtain license and password file\)](#) on page 217

### On-site Preparation Tasks

- [Check Current Software Release](#) on page 220
- [Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the S8300 is the Primary Controller](#) on page 221
- [Get IA770 \(AUDIX\) Data and Stop IA770 \(if IA770 is being used\)](#) on page 224
- [Back up recovery system files](#) on page 224
- [Record Configuration Information](#) on page 226
- [Install the Pre-Upgrade Software Update \(patch\)](#) on page 227
- [Back Up the System Files \(Linux Migration Web Procedure\)](#) on page 229

### S8300 Upgrade Tasks

- [Copy Remastering Program \(RP\) file to the S8300 hard drive](#) on page 232
- [Install the RP software](#) on page 232
- [Set Telnet Parameters](#) on page 233
- [Remaster Hard Drive and Install the Upgrade Software](#) on page 233
- [Verify Software Version](#) on page 236
- [Copy Files to the S8300](#) on page 236
- [Configure the Network Parameters](#) on page 238
- [If Upgrading from a Pre-1.2 Release](#) on page 239
- [Verify Connectivity](#) on page 240
- [Restore the Linux Migration Backup File](#) on page 240
- [If IA770 Is Being Used, Ensure that Messaging Is Disabled](#) on page 243
- [Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone](#) on page 243

- [Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager Update File from Your Laptop, if any](#) on page 244
- [Verify Media Server Configuration](#) on page 245
- [Install the New License File](#) on page 246
- [Install the New Authentication File](#) on page 247
- [Save Translations](#) on page 247
- [Verify Operation](#) on page 249

## G700 Upgrade Using the Wizards

- [Using the Installation Wizard](#) on page 250
- [Using the Upgrade Tool](#) on page 250

## G700 Manual Upgrade Tasks

### G700 Pre-upgrade Tasks

- [Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory](#) on page 250
- [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#) on page 251

### G700 Upgrade Tasks

- [Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor](#) on page 252
- [Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor](#) on page 253
- [Install New Firmware on the Media Modules](#) on page 254
- [Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways](#) on page 256

## Post-Upgrade Tasks

- [Install and Restart IA770](#) on page 257
- [Save Translations](#) on page 259
- [Install IA770 update \(patch\) files, if any](#) on page 259
- [Check Media Modules](#) on page 260
- [Enable Scheduled Maintenance](#) on page 260
- [Busy Out Trunks](#) on page 260
- [Check for Translation Corruption](#) on page 260
- [Resolve Alarms](#) on page 260
- [Re-enable Alarm Origination](#) on page 261
- [Back up the System](#) on page 261
- [Restart LSPs \(if any\)](#) on page 261

## Before Going to the Customer Site

---

The procedures in this section should be completed before going to the customer site or before starting a remote installation.

### Get USB CD-ROM Drive

Upgrading Communication Manager on an S8300 from release 1.x to release 2.0 requires an external USB CD-ROM Drive. Be sure that you have the drive before going to the customer site.

### Collect Upgrade Information

#### If Upgrading from Release 1.1, Fill in the EPW

If you upgrading from release 1.1, you will need to do a complete configuration of the S8300 after the upgrade to release 2.0. The most efficient way to do this is to fill in the Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet (EPW) and use the Avaya Installation Wizard to complete the server configuration task. You should download the latest version of the EPW from <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw/> to your laptop. You can fill in most or all of the configuration information before going to the site. Any missing information can be added to the EPW at the site by viewing the configuration screens using the Maintenance Web Interface before the upgrade.

#### Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager

The project manager should provide you with forms that contain all the information needed to prepare for this installation. The information primarily consists of IP addresses, subnet mask addresses, logins, passwords, people to contact, the type of system, and equipment you need to install.

Verify that the information provided by the project manager includes all the information requested in your planning forms.



**Tip:**

[Appendix B, “Information Checklists”](#) provides several checklists to help you gather the installation and upgrade information.

#### Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary

For an upgrade of an existing G700, the existing license file can usually be reused. However, if the customer is adding feature functionality (for example, adding BRI trunks), or if the upgrade is between major releases (for example, 1.3 to 2.0), you will need the serial number of the G700. To get this number, ask the customer’s administrator to log in to the S8300 web page and select **View License Status** from the main menu to display the serial number.

For a new installation, you need the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway in order to complete the creation of the customer's license file on the rfa.avaya.com web site. To get this number, look for the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 chassis. If the unit is delivered directly to the customer and you will not have phone or LAN line access from the customer site to access the rfa.avaya.com web site, this task will require a preliminary trip to the customer site.

## Check Number of Allocated Ports

Release 2.0 of Communication Manager supports a maximum of 900 ports if the S8300 is a primary controller. If the existing system has more than 900 ports allocated, then there may be a problem with the upgrade and you need to escalate.

Ask the customer to check the system for the maximum number of ports. This can be done via the SAT command, **display system-parameters customer options**. Verify that the Maximum Ports: field is 900 or less.

## Check FTP Server for Backing up Data

During the installation and upgrade procedures, you will need to back up the system data to an FTP server. Normally, you will use an FTP server on the customer's LAN for backups. To do this, you will need information on how to get to the backup location — login ID and password, and the IP address and directory path on the FTP server. Check with your project manager or the customer for this information.



### CAUTION:

Before going to the customer site, make sure that you can use a customer server for backups.

## Get Software/Firmware Files

The file containing the software for the S8300 has a \*.tar extension and contains both the S8300 software and the G700 firmware. The \*.tar file is on a CD-ROM that you take to the site. Additional files that may be needed are license and authentication files and the most recent versions of the software update (patch) files and G700 firmware files.

The process for upgrading to Release 2.0 of Communication Manager varies slightly, depending on the release you are upgrading from.

**Table 6: Upgrade requirements depending on pre-upgrade release**

Software Release Before Upgrade to Release 2.0	Upgrade Requirement
Release 1.1.x and all other 1.x.x releases not listed below R011x.01.xxx.x	No pre-upgrade update (patch) required. You need to back up only translation files. Once the hard drive is remastered and the new software is installed, you must reconfigure the media server as if it were a new installation using the Avaya Installation Wizard.
Release 1.2.x, 1.3.0. R011x.02.110.4 R011x.03.526.6	You must apply a pre-upgrade update (patch) to the system files before backing up all the system files, including translations. Once the hard drive is remastered and the new software is installed, you can restore all the files.
Release 1.3.1. R011x.03.1.531.0 R011x.03.1.5xx.x	No pre-upgrade update (patch) required. Back up all the system files, including translations. Once the hard drive is remastered and the new software is installed, you can restore all the files.

To upgrade just the G700 processor and media module firmware, you can obtain the individual firmware image files from the Avaya Support Web site. In this case, you cannot use the S8300 as the TFTP server.

## Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary

*Skip to the next section* if a software update is not required for this installation or upgrade, or if the software for the required updates are on your software CD.

If one or more updates are required for this installation or upgrade procedure, and the update file is not on your software CD, download the update file from the Avaya Support web site to your laptop:

- 1 On your laptop, create a directory to store the file (for example, c:\S8300download).
- 2 Connect to the LAN using a browser on your laptop or the customer's PC and access <http://www.avaya.com/support> on the Internet to copy the required Communication Manager update file to the laptop.
- 3 At the Avaya support site, select the following sequence of links:
  - Software & Firmware Downloads
  - G700 Media Gateway & S8300 Media Server
  - Software Downloads
  - **Avaya Communication Manager Software Updates for MV x.x.x** (where x.x.x is the release that is currently running on the S8300)
- 4 Locate the file name that matches the load listed in your planning documentation. The file name ends with .tar.gz (for example only, 03.0.526.5-5767.tar.gz).
- 5 Double-click the file name. The system displays a File Download window.
- 6 Click on **Save this file to disk**.  
Save the file to an appropriate directory on your laptop.



## Complete the RFA Process (Obtain license and password file)

Every S8300 media server and local survivable processor (LSP) requires a current and correct version of a license file in order to provide the expected call-processing service.

The license file specifies the features and services that are available on the S8300 media server, such as the number of ports purchased. The license file contains a software version number, hardware serial number, expiration date, and feature mask. The license file is reinstalled to add or remove call-processing features. New license files may be required when upgrade software is installed.

The Avaya authentication file contains the logins and passwords to access the S8300 media server. This file is updated regularly by Avaya services personnel, if the customer has a maintenance contract. All access to Communication Manager from any login is blocked unless a valid authentication file is present on the S8300 media server.

A new license file and the Avaya authentication file may be installed independently of each other or any other server upgrades.

### **NOTE:**

For an upgrade, you do not normally need to install a new authentication file (with a .pwd extension). However, if one is required, follow the same steps as with a license file.

## License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor

The license file of the S8300 as an LSP must have a feature set that is equal to or greater than that of the media server that acts as primary controller (an S8300 or S8700). This is necessary so that if control passes to the LSP, it can allow the same level of call processing as that of the primary controller.

Additionally, the LSP must have a version of Communication Manager that is identical to that of the primary controller.

The license file requirements of the LSP should be identified in your planning documentation.

## Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop

- 1 Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to create a directory on your laptop for storing license and authentication files (for example, C:\licenses).
- 2 Access the Internet from your laptop and go to [rfa.avaya.com](http://rfa.avaya.com).
- 3 Use the System ID or the SAP ID of the customer to locate the license and authentication files for the customer.
- 4 Check that the license and authentication files are complete. You might need to add the serial number of the customer's G700.
- 5 If the files are not complete, complete them.
- 6 Use the download or E-mail capabilities of the RFA web site to download the license and authentication files to your laptop.

## Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary

This step is normally not necessary for an upgrade of an existing system.

**NOTE:**

ART is available only to Avaya associates. Business Partners call 800-295-0099.

The ART tool is a software tool that generates an IP address for a customer's INADS alarming modem. This IP address is required for configuring the S8300's modem for alarming.

**NOTE:**

You must generate a license and authentication file before you use the ART tool. Also, the ART process is available *only* to Avaya personnel. You need an ART login ID and password, which you can set up at the ART web site. Non-Avaya personnel must contact their service support or customer care center for INADS addresses, if required.

- 1 Access the ART web site on your laptop at <http://art.dr.avaya.com>.
- 2 Select **Administer S8x00 Server products for installation script**, log in, enter the customer information, select **Installation Script**, and click **Start Installation script & IP Addr Admin**.  
A script file is created and downloaded or emailed to you.
- 3 You can use the installation script to automatically set up an IP address and other alarming parameters.

## Obtain the Static Craft Password

After installing new software and new Authentication file, you will need to use a static craft password to access the customer's system. This static password will enable you to log in to the S8300 with a direct connection to the Services port without the ASG challenge/response. To obtain the static password, call the ASG Conversant number, 800-248-1234 or 720-444-5557 (or 877-295-0099 for Avaya Business Partners), and follow the prompts to get the password. In addition to your credentials, you will need to enter the customer's Product ID or the FL or IL number.

## On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

---

Perform the tasks in this section before starting the software upgrade on the S8300.

### Access to the S8300

To perform the installation and upgrade procedures you will need to connect your laptop to the S8300 Services port using a crossover cable. You will use both Telnet and the Maintenance Web Interface to perform the procedures.

For a direct connection to the S8300 Services port, your laptop must be properly configured. See [Laptop Configuration for a Direct Connection to the Services Port](#) on page 47.

#### Access the S8300 via Telnet

- 1 Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 2 Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
- 3 Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**. Accept the defaults for Suppress Alarm Origination (**y**) and Terminal Type (**vt100**).

At this point, you will get the bash prompt and will be able to enter CLI commands.

#### Access the S8300 via the Maintenance Web interface

- 1 Launch the Web browser.
- 2 Type **192.11.13.6** in the Address field to open the logon page.
- 3 Log on as **craft** or **dadmin** when prompted.
- 4 Click **Launch Maintenance Web Interface** to get to the Main Menu.

#### Access SAT

- 1 From the bash CLI, type **SAT** and press **Enter**.  
Or, to open SAT directly from your laptop, click **Start > Run** and type **telnet 192.11.13.6 5023** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.
- 3 Enter **w2ktt** for the Terminal Type (if you are running Windows 2000 on your laptop).
- 4 Accept the default (**y**) for Suppress Alarm Origination.

## Check Current Software Release



**Tip:**

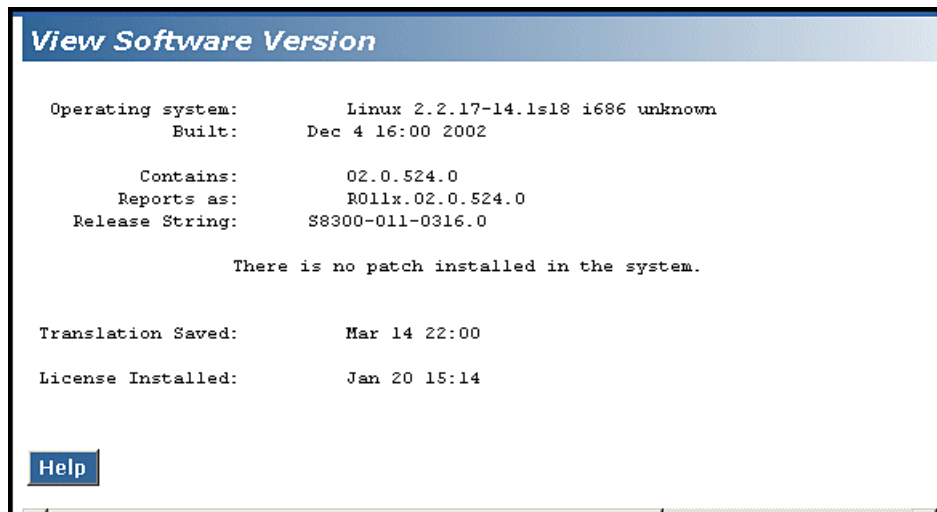
The Upgrade Tool performs this task automatically.

Check the release of Communication Manager currently running on the S8300 to determine whether a pre-upgrade update is required. If the current release is 2.0.0 or later, go to [Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x](#).

- 1 Log in to the Web interface on the S8300 and launch the Maintenance Web Interface.
- 2 Choose **View Software Version** under Server Configuration and Upgrades.

The system displays the Software Version screen.

### Software Version Screen



- 3 Check the **Reports as:** field for the release number of the S8300 software. In this example, the release number is reported as R011x.02.0.524.0. This corresponds to release 1.2.0.

The following table maps the release number to the **Reports as:** field and specifies whether or not a pre-upgrade update is required.

### Software Release Numbers

Release Number Reported as	Release Number	Pre-upgrade update Required?
From: R011x.01.0.xxx To: R011x.01.9.xxx	1.1.0 to 1.1.9	No
From: R011x.02.0.xxx To: R011x.03.0.xxx	1.2.0 to 1.3.0	Yes
From: R011x.03.1.xxx To: R011x.03.9.xxx	1.3.1 to 1.3.9	No
From: R012x.00.0.xxx To: R012x.00.9.xxx	2.0.0 to 2.0.9	No

## Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the S8300 is the Primary Controller

Skip to [Upgrade the S8300](#) on page 227, if the S8300 is configured as an LSP.



### CAUTION:

If you are upgrading an S8300 primary controller that has LSPs registered to it, the LSPs must be upgraded *before* the primary controller. (You can use the SAT command, list media-gateway, to see if there are LSPs registered to the S8300.)

Perform the following procedures if you are upgrading an S8300 that is configured as a primary controller.

### NOTE:

It is no longer necessary to disable Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI) before an upgrade or to enable it after an upgrade.

### Clear Alarms

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface under Alarms and Notification (Alarms for R2.0), click **View Current Alarms** (**Current Alarms** for R2.0).
- 2 If no alarms are listed, skip the next two steps.
- 3 If alarms are listed, click **Clear All**.
- 4 Resolve any remaining major alarms through the Communication Manager SAT.

### Check Link Status

- 1 Open a SAT session.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

### On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

- 2 Enter **display communication-interface links**.
- 3 Note all administered links.
- 4 Enter **status link number** for each administered link.
- 5 Enter **list signaling group**.
- 6 Note the signaling groups listed by number.
- 7 For each of the signaling groups listed, enter **status signaling group number**.
- 8 Make a note of any links that are down.

### Record All Busyouts

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **display errors** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Look for type 18 errors and record any trunks that are busied out — you will return them to their busy-out state after the upgrade.

### Disable Scheduled Maintenance

To prevent scheduled daily maintenance from interfering with the upgrade:

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change system-parameters maintenance** and press **Enter**.
- 2 If scheduled maintenance is in progress, set the `Stop Time` field to 1 minute after the current time.

*or*

If scheduled maintenance is not in progress, set the `Start Time` field to a time after the upgrade will be completed.

For example, if you start the upgrade at 8:00 P.M. and the upgrade takes 90 minutes, set the `Start Time` field to 21:30.

### Check for Translation Corruption

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **newterm** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Enter your terminal type and press **Enter**.

If you see the following message: Warning: Translation corruption found, then follow the normal escalation procedure for translation corruption before continuing the upgrade.

### Stop the LSPs (if applicable)

Skip this procedure if no LSPs are registered to the S8300.

For configurations with LSPs, the LSPs and the primary controller (S8300, S8500, or S8700) must run the same version Communication Manager. Therefore, an upgrade to an LSP is usually accompanied by an upgrade of the primary controller. You should upgrade the LSP before you upgrade the primary controller.

Before you upgrade the primary controller, you need to shut down Communication Manager on the LSPs. This prevents the phones and other endpoints attached to the G700 from trying to register with the LSPs while you are upgrading the primary controller.

To stop Communication Manager on an LSP:

- 1 Open a telnet session on the S8300 (LSP).
- 2 Telnet to the LSP.
- 3 At the command line, type **stop -acfn** and press **Enter**.  
The S8300 (LSP) shuts down Communication Manager.

**CAUTION:**

The LSP's Communication Manager must remain shutdown while you upgrade the primary Controller. When you complete the primary controller upgrade, run **save translation** on the primary controller before restarting Communication Manager on the LSP. The save translations process will automatically cause the G700's endpoints to reregister with the primary controller.

After the primary controller has been upgraded, you need to restart the LSPs.

## Disable Alarm Origination

If alarm origination is enabled during the upgrade, unnecessary alarms will be sent to the Operations Support System (OSS) destination number(s). Even if you selected "Suppress Alarm Origination" when you logged in, alarm origination will be automatically re-enabled when the system reboots after the software upgrade. Use this procedure to prevent alarm origination from being re-enabled after reboot.

**CAUTION:**

If you do not disable Alarm Origination, the system can generate alarms during the upgrade, resulting in unnecessary trouble tickets.

To prevent alarm outcalling:

- 1 Logoff the SAT session
- 2 At the command prompt, type **almenable -d n -s n**, where  
**-d n** sets the dialout option to **neither** (number)  
**-s n** disables SNMP alarm origination

**NOTE:**

Be sure to reset alarm origination after the upgrade.

- 3 Type **almenable** (without any options) to verify the alarm origination status. You should see:  
incoming: enable  
Dial Out Alarm Origination: neither  
SNMP Alarm Origination: N

## Get IA770 (AUDIX) Data and Stop IA770 (if IA770 is being used)

Skip to [Back up recovery system files](#) on page 224 if IA770 is not being used.

If IA770 is being used, you need to collect some data, leave a test message, and shut down IA770 before backing up the files.

- 1** To test IA770 after the migration, write down the number of a test voice mailbox, or create one if none exists. Also write down the number of the IA770 hunt group.
- 2** Leave a message on the test mailbox that will be retrieved after the migration.
- 3** Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 4** Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
- 5** Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.
- 6** Type **stop -s Audix** and press **Enter** to shut down AUDIX.  
The shutdown will take a few minutes.
- 7** Type **watch /VM/bin/ss** and press **Enter** to monitor the shutdown.

When the shutdown is complete, you will see only the voicemail and audit processes. For example:

```
voicemail:(10)
```

```
audit http:(9)
```

Press **Ctrl+C** to break out of the **watch** command.

- 8** Type **/vs/bin/util/vs\_status** and press **Enter** to verify that AUDIX is shut down. When AUDIX is shut down, you will see "voice system is down."

### **NOTE:**

After the S8300 upgrade, you must upgrade the G700 and media module firmware before restarting IA770.

## Back up recovery system files



### **CAUTION:**

If the current release is 1.1.x, you must backup the Communication Manager translations (and AUDIX data if IA770 is installed) using this procedure.

Before installing the S8300 upgrade software, you should back up the system data in case there's a need to back out of the upgrade. To do this, you need an FTP address, directory path, and a user ID and password to access an FTP server on the customer's network. Check with your project manager or the customer for this information.

### Back up data

- 1** Under Data Backup/Restore, click **Backup Now**.





**Tip:**

Depending on the Communication Manager software version, the following screen may look slightly different.

**Backup Now**

The Backup Now Web page lets you store data separate from the Avaya media server. Select the type of data and the method to backup. Encrypting the data while backing up provides you a high level of security and is strongly encouraged.

**Data Sets**

Avaya Call Processing (ACP) Translations

Save ACP translations prior to backup

Do NOT save ACP translations prior to backup

Server and System Files

Security Files

AUDIX

AUDIX Announcements

AUDIX Translations and Messages

AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages

AUDIX Translations and Names

AUDIX Translations

**Backup Method**

FTP

User Name

Password

Host Name

Directory

Email

User Name

Domain Name

Mail Server

\*\*Please Note: Depending on the size of the backup, the email may or may not work, as all mail servers have a maximum size they'll accept.

**Encryption**

Encrypt backup using pass phrase

- 2 Select all data sets:
  - Avaya Call Processing (ACP) Translations
  - Save ACP translations prior (do not save ACP translations if this is an LSP).
  - Server and System Files
  - Security Files
- 3 If the AUDIX options are available, select AUDIX and select AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

### On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

- 4 Select the FTP backup method and fill in the User Name, Password, Host Name, and Directory fields with information provided by the customer.
- 5 Click **Start Backup** to back up the files.

If the AUDIX options are available, repeat Steps 3–5 for AUDIX Announcements. The announcements cannot be restored to the 2.0 system but they should be backed up in case it is necessary to revert to the 1.x system.

## Record Configuration Information

If you have not already done so, you must record the current server configuration data, which will be re-entered after the upgrade. If you are upgrading from release 1.2 or later, most of the configuration data will be re-entered automatically with the Linux Migration Restore process. However, if you are upgrading from a pre-1.2 release, you will need to re-enter all of the server configuration data.

To view the current configuration data:

- 1 Launch the Maintenance Web Interface.
- 2 Under Server Configuration and Upgrades, click **Configure Server**.
- 3 Click **Continue** on the first and second screen.
- 4 On the "Select method for configuring server" screen, select "Configure all services using the wizard" and click **Continue**.
- 5 View and record the configuration information on each screen and click **Continue** to move to the next screen.

The best way to record the configuration data is to fill in the Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet (EPW). You then have the option to use the Installation Wizard to do the server configuration task. If you do not have the EPW, you can record the current configuration data and enter it manually after the upgrade.

### If Upgrading from 1.2 or Later

Record the data on the Configure Interface screen. That is, server IP address, gateway IP address, and subnet mask. You can skip the remaining configuration screens.

### If Upgrading from Pre-1.2 Release

Record the data from all configuration screens *except* the Static Network Routes screen. (Static routes are not used in release 2.0)

## Upgrade the S8300

---

This section describes the procedures for upgrading the S8300 Media Server from a pre-2.0 release of Communication manager to release 2.0.

Upgrading S8300 from a pre-2.0 release to release 2.0 requires an upgrade to the Linux operating system. This is accomplished by running a special software application (included on the 2.0 software CD), which reformats the S8300 hard drive, installs the new operating system, and installs Release 2.0 of Communication Manager. These procedures are described in this section.



### CAUTION:

This upgrade procedure, including remastering the hard drive on the S8300, requires a service interruption of approximately 4 hours, or up to 6 hours if IA770 is being used.



### Tip:

Due to the necessary reformatting of the S8300 hard drive for the new operating system, the Avaya Installation Wizard (IW) cannot support upgrades of Communication Manager from a pre-2.0 release to a 2.0(+) release. However, the IW can still be used for the media gateway and media module firmware upgrades.

## Install the Pre-Upgrade Software Update (patch)

If the current software release is between 1.1.0 and 1.1.9, skip this update installation procedure and go to [Upgrade the S8300](#) on page 232.

If the current software release is 1.3.1, skip this update installation procedure and go to [Back Up the System Files \(Linux Migration Web Procedure\)](#) on page 229.

If the current software release is between 1.2.0 and 1.3.0, you must install the pre-upgrade software update (patch) before backing up the system files.

### Update procedure

#### NOTE:

Typically, any existing updates (patches) should be removed before installing a new update. However, removing existing updates is not necessary for this procedure.

#### *Copy pre-upgrade update file to the media server*

- 1 Make sure the software CD is in the CD-ROM drive of your laptop.
- 2 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Miscellaneous click **Upload Files to Server (via browser)**.
- 3 Browse to the directory on the software CD (or laptop) that contains the pre-upgrade update file.
- 4 Select the pre-upgrade update file and click **Load File**.

***Install the pre-upgrade update (patch)***

- 1** Use Telnet to access the media server.
  - a** Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
  - b** Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
  - c** Log in as **craft**.
- 2** Type **cd /var/home/ftp** and press **Enter** to access the ftp directory.
- 3** At the prompt, type **ls -ltr** and press **Enter** to list files in the ftp directory.

The S8300 displays a list of files in the ftp directory.
- 4** Verify that the directory contains the \*.tar.gz file you have uploaded.
- 5** Type **sudo patch\_install patch.tar.gz**, where **patch** is the release or issue number of the update file. (For example, **03.0.526.5-1003.tar.gz**). Press **Enter**.
- 6** Type **patch\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was installed.
- 7** Type **sudo patch\_apply patch**, where **patch** is the release or issue number of the update file. (For example, **03.0.526.5-1003**. Do *not* use the \*.tar.gz extension at the end of the file name). Press **Enter**.

The media server goes through a software reset system 4. You must wait until the restart/reset has completed before entering additional commands. The reset should take 1–2 minutes (or longer if messaging is enabled).
- 8** Type **patch\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was applied.
- 9** Before proceeding, type **statapp -c** to view the status of the processes. Make sure everything except dupmgr shows UP. Communication Manger should show 65/65 UP or, if IA770 is installed, 67/67 UP. To stop the continual refresh of the **statapp** command, type **Ctrl-C**.

**NOTE:**

The number of processes (65/65) may vary depending on the configuration. For a normal state, the second number should not be greater than the first number. For example, the numbers 64/65 UP would indicate that a process did not come up and should be investigated before proceeding.

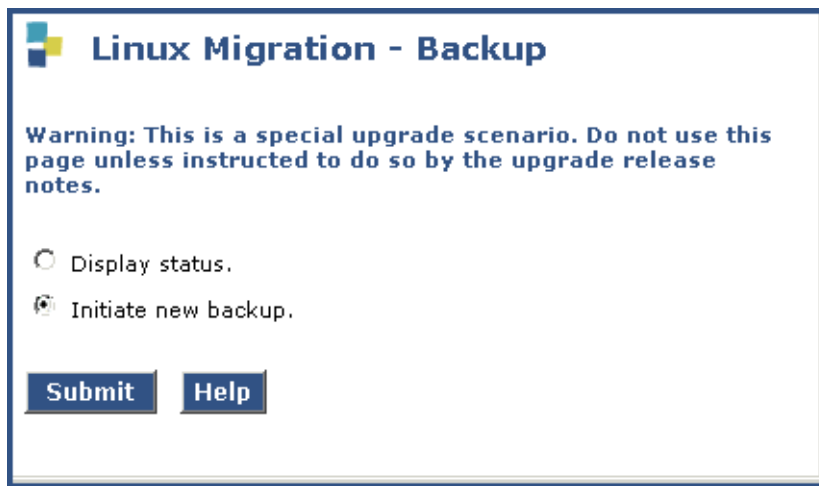
- 10** Close the browser.

## Back Up the System Files (Linux Migration Web Procedure)

If the current software release is between 1.2.0 and 1.3.9, you must back up the system files using the Linux Migration backup procedure.

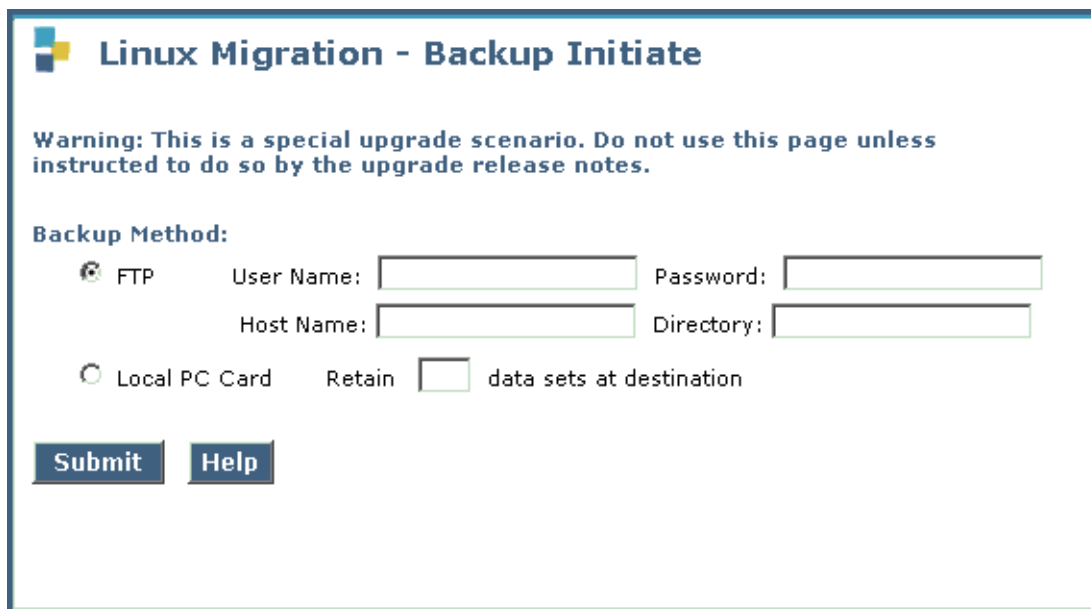
### Linux Migration Backup

- 1 Launch the Maintenance Web Interface. Under Server Configuration click **Linux Migration (Backup/Restore)**.



The screenshot shows a web page titled "Linux Migration - Backup". At the top left is a logo consisting of four colored squares (blue, yellow, red, green). Below the logo is the title "Linux Migration - Backup". A warning message reads: "Warning: This is a special upgrade scenario. Do not use this page unless instructed to do so by the upgrade release notes." Below the warning are two radio button options: "Display status." (unselected) and "Initiate new backup." (selected). At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Submit" and "Help".

- 2 Select "Initiate new backup or restore" and click **Submit**



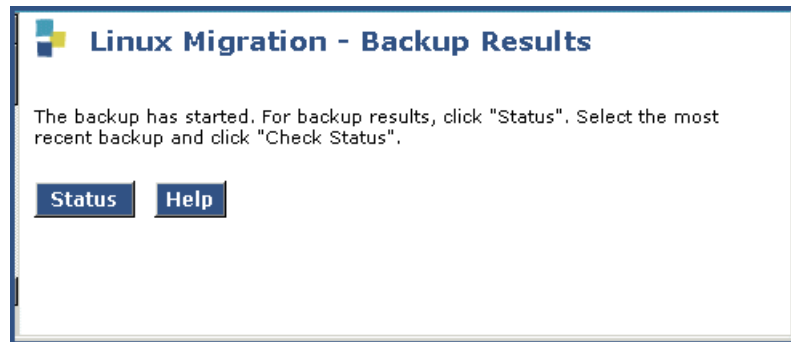
The screenshot shows a web page titled "Linux Migration - Backup Initiate". At the top left is the same logo as in the previous screenshot. Below the logo is the title "Linux Migration - Backup Initiate". A warning message reads: "Warning: This is a special upgrade scenario. Do not use this page unless instructed to do so by the upgrade release notes." Below the warning is the section "Backup Method:". There are two radio button options: "FTP" (selected) and "Local PC Card" (unselected). The "FTP" option has four input fields: "User Name:", "Password:", "Host Name:", and "Directory:". The "Local PC Card" option has a "Retain" checkbox (unselected) followed by the text "data sets at destination". At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Submit" and "Help".

- 3 Under Backup Method, select FTP; fill in the **User Name**, **Password**, **Host Name** (or host IP address) and **Directory** fields for the back up location. The backup location should be a server on the customer's LAN.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

Upgrade the S8300

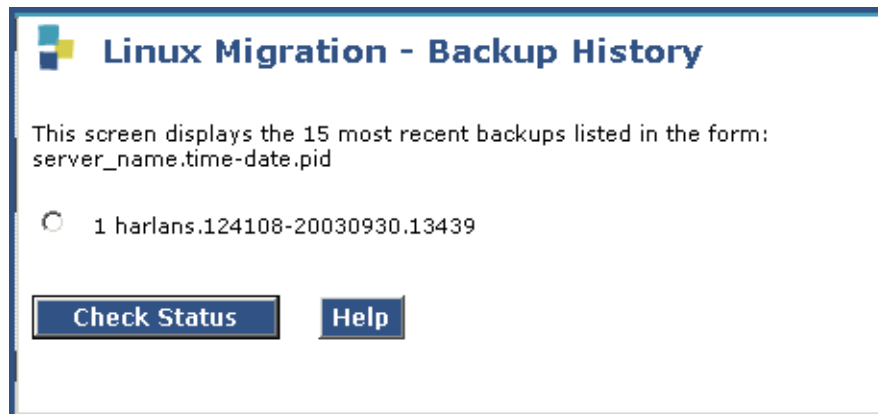
Click **Submit**.



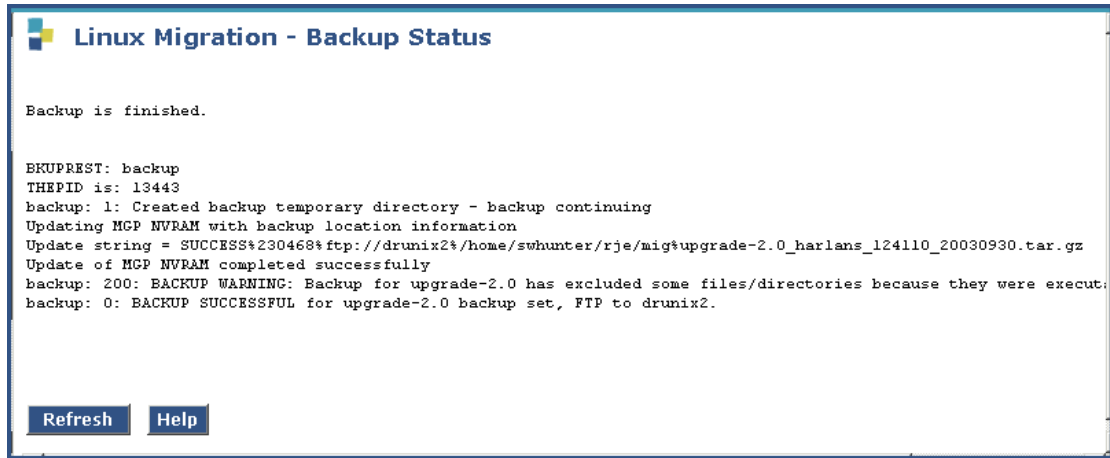
4 Click **Status** to see the backup progress.

### NOTE:

The Linux Migration backup status function is not enabled for release 1.3.1. To check the backup status when upgrading from 1.3.1, select **Backup Status** under Data Backup/Restore on the Maintenance Web Interface menu. Then select the backup set and click **Check Status**.



- 5 Select the backup set and click **Check Status** to see the backup results. If the backup is in progress, click on Refresh until the "Backup is finished" message appears.



**CAUTION:**

The screen will show "Backup is finished" when the backup is completed. However, also verify that the message, "Backup Successful" also appears in the last line. If any error messages appear stating that the backup failed, follow the normal escalation procedures.

## Upgrade the S8300

To upgrade the Communications Manager software to Release 2.0, you must remaster the hard drive before installing the software.

**NOTE:**

These procedures assume that you have a USB CD-ROM drive connected to one of the USB ports on the S8300.

### Copy Remastering Program (RP) file to the S8300 hard drive

- 1 Insert the CD containing the software into the CD-ROM drive on the *laptop* and close the drawer.
- 2 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Miscellaneous, click **Upload Files to Server**.
- 3 Click **Browse** to locate the RP file on the CD. The RP file is in the *tarfiles* directory and is called *S8300-00.0-0000.0*.
- 4 Double-click the filename (or highlight the filename and click Open).
- 5 Click **Load File**. When the upload is complete, the system displays "File has been successfully uploaded."

### Install the RP software

- 1 When the file has been copied, remove the CD from the laptop and insert it into the external CD-ROM drive connected through the USB port on the media server.

**NOTE:**

The next step loads the RP software onto the backup partition. The currently running release remains on the other partition, just as it always does during an upgrade.

- 2 Under Server Configuration and Upgrades click **Install New Software Release**.
- 3 Select from the menu the upgrade file you just uploaded (i.e., S8300-00.0-0000.0) Click **Continue** to complete the software installation.
- 4 On the Choose License Source page, select "I want to reuse the license files from the currently active partition on this server." and "Do not update authentication information." and click **Continue**.
- 5 The Click **Continue** on the *next several pages* until the RP files are installed. Ignore backup and Tripwire messages.
- 6 When you get to the Reboot Server screen, click **Reboot**.
- 7 Close the Browser.

The reboot takes 3–10 minutes. After the system reboots, the RP software redirects the system to boot from the CD-ROM drive. Note that no telephony support is provided by this software. Its only purpose is to reformat the hard drive and install a clean copy of the Avaya Communication Manager server software.

**NOTE:**

To monitor the progress of the reboot, you can open a command window on your laptop and enter the **ping -t 192.11.13.6** command. When the reboot is finished, the server will start replying to the pings. Type **Ctrl+c** to stop the pings.



## Set Telnet Parameters

The Microsoft Telnet application may be set to send a carriage return (CR) and line feed (LF) each time you press **Enter**. The installation program sees this as 2 key presses. You need to correct this before you Telnet to the server.

- 1 Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 2 Type **telnet** and press **Enter** to open a Microsoft Telnet session.
- 3 Type **unset crlf** and press **Enter**.
- 4 Type **display** and press **Enter** to confirm that "Sending only CR" is set.
- 5 Close the window by clicking on the **X** in the upper-right corner.

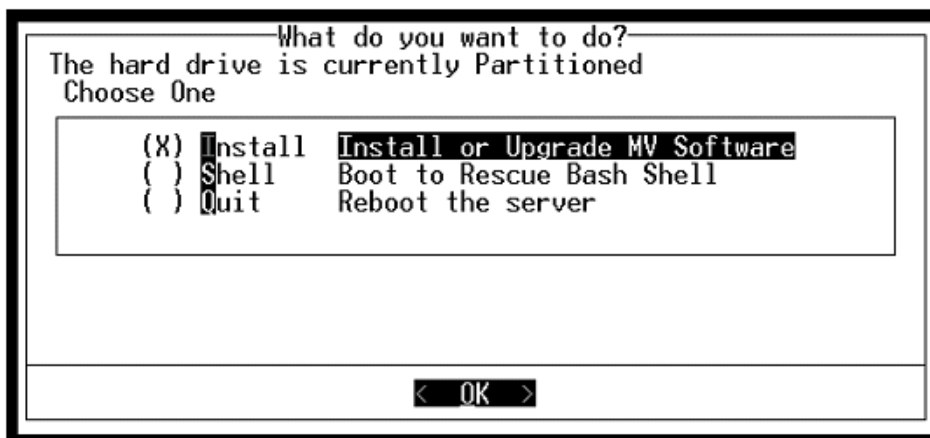
This resets your Microsoft Telnet defaults and does not need to be done each time you use Telnet.

## Remaster Hard Drive and Install the Upgrade Software

### NOTE:

This procedure accesses the information on the CD from the USB CD-ROM drive.

- 1 Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter** to view the first screen.

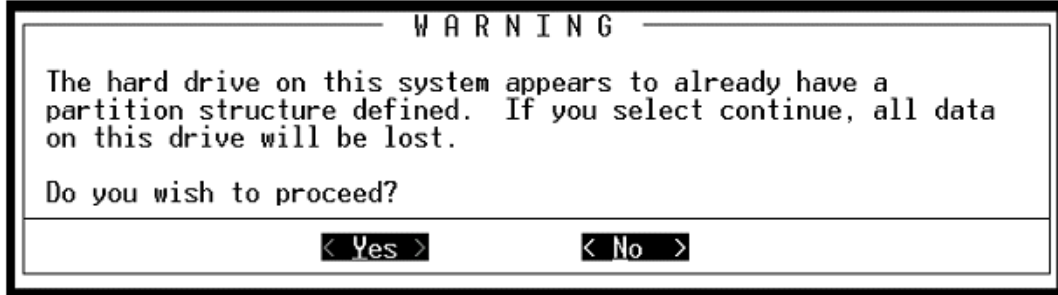


### Tip:

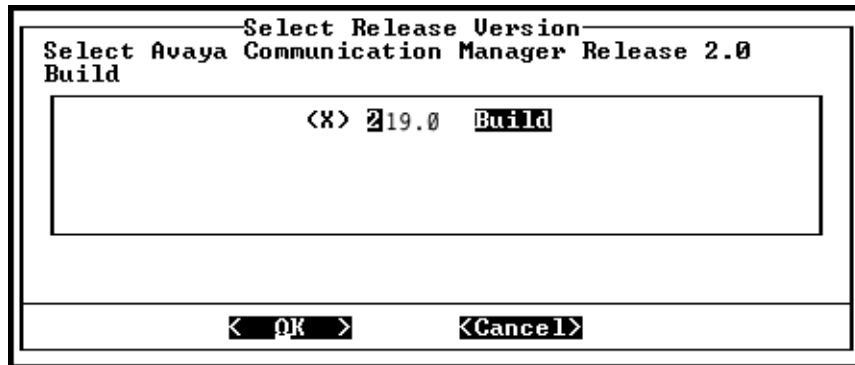
To navigate on these screens, use the arrow keys to move to an option, then press the space bar to select the option. Press **Enter** to submit the screen.

**5** Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0  
Upgrade the S8300

- 2 Select **Install**, make sure OK is highlighted, and press **Enter**.



- 3 Select <Yes> and press **Enter**.



**NOTE:**

After this step, the previous disk image cannot be recovered by rebooting.

- 4 Select the appropriate release version (if more than one) then select <OK> and press **Enter**.

At this point, the following processes are initiated:

- The S8300 hard drive is reformatted
- The new Linux operating system is installed

- Once the drive is properly configured, the program begins installing Communication Manager software and reports the progress.

```

21:26:38 | copying iputils-20020124-8.i386.rpm
21:26:38 | copying libattr-2.0.8-3.i386.rpm
21:26:38 | copying libcap-1.10-12.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying libelf-0.8.2-2.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying libgcc-3.2-7.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying libjpeg-6b-21.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying libtermcap-2.0.8-31.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying libtool-libs-1.4.2-12.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying losetup-2.11r-10.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying lrzsz-0.12.20-14.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying lsof-4.63-2.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying ltrace-0.3.10-12.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying mailx-8.1.1-26.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying minigetty-1.00-3.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying mktemp-1.5-16.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying ncompress-4.2.4-31.i386.rpm
21:26:39 | copying net-tools-1.60-7.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying patch-2.5.4-14.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying pcre-3.9-5.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying popt-1.8-0.69AV1.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying rdate-1.2-5.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying rusers-0.17-21.i386.rpm
21:26:40 | copying setserial-2.17-9.i386.rpm
    
```

- These processes take 15–20 minutes. When the media server is ready to reboot, the CD drive door opens and the following screen flashes for about 5 seconds. At this point, you are finished with the CD and CD drive.



**NOTE:**

In this screen, "latest updates to software" refers to the latest software updates (patches). See [Download Software Update \(patch\) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary](#) on page 216.

When the installation process is complete, the system reboots automatically. The reboot takes 1–3 minutes.

## Verify Software Version

**NOTE:**

Since the system is now running a new software release, you must login with the *initial craft ID and password*. (You cannot use **dadmin** at this point.)

- 1 Log on to Integrated Management and launch the Maintenance Web Interface.
- 2 Under Server, click **Software Version**.
- 3 Verify that the media server is running Release 2.0 software. The Report as: string should show **R012x** at the beginning of the string. For example, R012x.00.0.219.0.



**Tip:**

Normally, you would need to use the Make Upgrade Permanent function on the Web Interface at this point. However, this is not necessary for this upgrade because there is no previous software version in the alternate partition.

## Copy Files to the S8300

During reformatting of the hard drive, a new directory, /var/home/ftp/**pub**, was created. For release 2.0 and later, this *pub* directory will be used as the /var/home/ftp directory that was used in previous releases.

You must upload the remaining required files to the pub directory on the S8300 hard drive. This includes, but is not limited to, the post-upgrade software update, license file, Avaya authentication file (if needed), and new firmware files.

**NOTE:**

Before an upload, be sure the /var/home/ftp/pub directory contains no files with a \*.pwd or \*.lic extension. Only one of these files can exist in a directory. If more than one exists, move, rename, or delete all but the valid file.

- 1 Log on to Integrated Management and launch the Maintenance Web Interface.

**NOTE:**

Since the system is now running a new software release, you must login with the *initial craft ID and password*. (You cannot use **dadmin** at this point.)

- 2 Under Miscellaneous click **Download Files**.

**Download Files**

The Download Files Web page lets you download files to the media server.

File(s) to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server

File(s) to download from the LAN using URL

Proxy Server  (e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 3 Select "Files to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server" and browse to each file you want to move to the S8300.

**NOTE:**

To manually FTP files from your laptop to /var/home/ftp/pub, you must **cd** to pub after starting ftp and logging in.

- 4 Click on **Download** to copy the files to the S8300. The transfer is complete when you see the message, "Files have been successfully uploaded to the server."

## Configure the Network Parameters

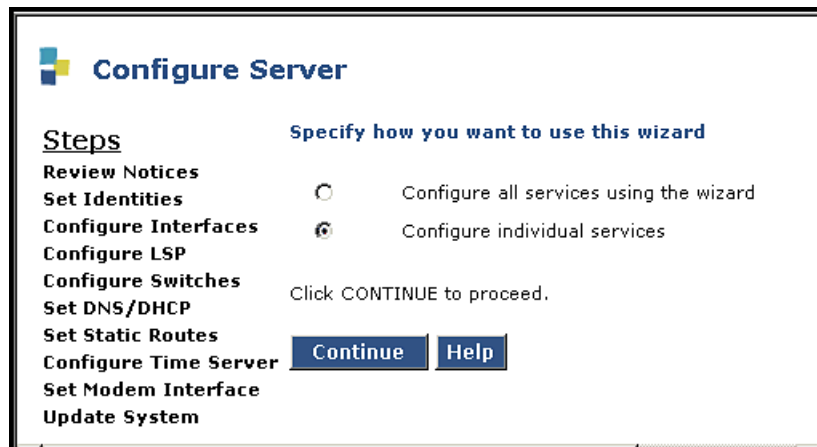
If you have upgraded from a pre-1.2 release, skip to [If Upgrading from a Pre-1.2 Release](#) on page 239.

**NOTE:**

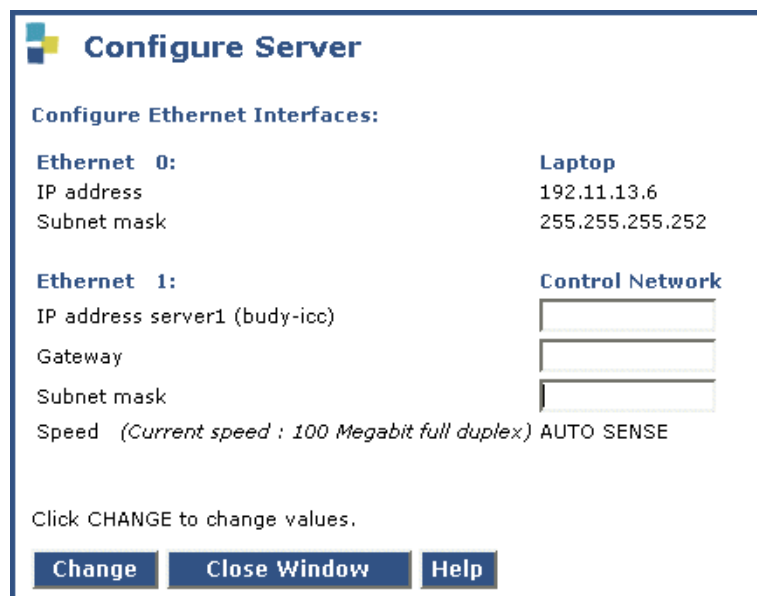
For this procedure, you must have the host name, subnet mask, and IP address of the S8300 and the IP address of the default gateway.

Because the software upgrade resets the configuration data, you must reconfigure the network parameters on the S8300 before restoring the backup files. Also, it is possible that the new software added or changed some of the configuration fields or screens.

- 1 Under Server Configuration click **Configure Server** to start the configure server process.
- 2 Click **Continue** through the Review Notices to get to the Select Method for Configuring Server page.



- 3 Select "Configure individual services" and click **Continue**.
- 4 Click **Configure Interfaces** from the Steps list.



- 5 Fill in the correct server IP address, Gateway, and Subnet mask. (If these fields are already filled in, overwrite them with the correct information if necessary.)  
Click **Change** to update the system files. When the configuration change is complete, the screen displays "Successfully configured ethernet interfaces."
- 6 When the configuration change is complete, click **Close Window**.

At this point, the system resets the IP interfaces.

## If Upgrading from a Pre-1.2 Release

If you have upgraded from a 1.2 or later release, skip to [Verify Connectivity](#) on page 240.

### Restore Translations

If upgrading from a pre-1.2 release:

- 1 Select View/Restore Data under Data Backup/Restore.
- 2 Select FTP and enter the information for the FTP backup server. Click **View**.
- 3 Select the Communication Manager translations backup set to restore (filename begins with "xln"). Click **Restore**.

**NOTE:**

*Do not* restore the system or security backup sets (filenames beginning with "os" and "security"). If you backed up the AUDIX data, you will need to restore the AUDIX backup set as a separate step. The AUDIX translations, names, and messages backup set filename begins with "audix-tr-name-msg". *Do not* restore the announcement backup set (filename beginning with "audix-ann").

### Configure the Server

If you have upgraded from a pre-1.2 release, you must enter all server configuration information. If you have filled in the Electronic Pre-installation Worksheet (EPW), you should use the Avaya Installation Wizard at this point. The Installation Wizard will do the server configuration and install the license and password files. When finished with the Wizard, return to [If IA770 Is Being Used, Ensure that Messaging Is Disabled](#) on page 243.

Or, you can enter the configuration information manually:

- 1 Select **Configure Server** on the Maintenance Web Interface menu.
- 2 Click **Continue** on the first two screens. When you get to the screen titled "Specify how you want to use this wizard," select "Configure all services using the wizard." Then enter the configuration information on each configuration screen.

**NOTE:**

You *do not* need to enter Static Network Route information.

- 3 When you complete all the new fields, if necessary, click **Continue** on the Update System screen. The Update System screen displays each configuration task as it completes. When done, the screen displays the line "All configuration information was entered."
- 4 Click **Close Window**.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0 Upgrade the S8300

- 5 Log on to a Telnet session.
- 6 Type `/opt/ws/drestart 1 4` to capture the configuration data. You should see the response, "Killed".

Skip to [If IA770 Is Being Used, Ensure that Messaging Is Disabled](#) on page 243.

## Verify Connectivity

To verify that the Ethernet port is working, ping the FTP server where the Linux-Migration backup file is stored.

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Diagnostics click **Ping**.
- 2 Enter the IP address where the Linux-Migration backup file is stored. Click **Execute Ping**.
- 3 If the ping is successful, continue with restoring the system files. Otherwise, check the IP address and connectivity to the server.

## Restore the Linux Migration Backup File



### CAUTION:

Restore must be run only once. Running restore more than once may corrupt the system data. If a restore appears to have not completed, check Backup History and Backup Logs on the Web Interface, and check the system log in the bash CLI. If all of these sources indicate that a restore has not completed, you can safely rerun the restore.

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Server Upgrades click **Linux Migration (Backup/Restore)**.

**Linux Migration - Backup/Restore**

The Linux Migration Backup Restore Web page lets you perform backups and restores during a Linux Migration.

**Warning:** This is a special upgrade scenario. Do not use this page unless instructed to do so by the upgrade release notes.

Display status.

Initiate new backup or restore.

**Submit** **Help**

- 2 Select "Initiate new backup or restore" and click **Submit**



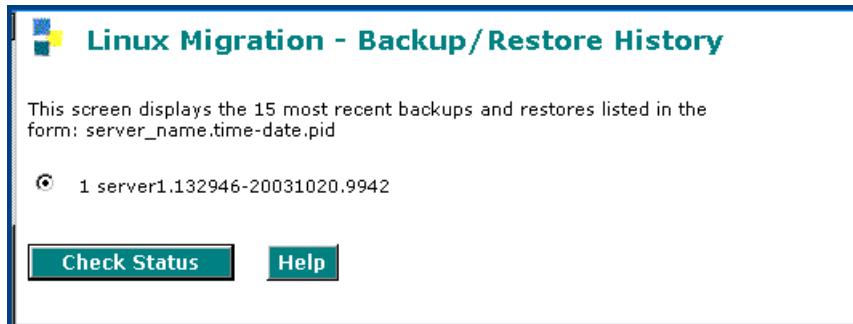
- Under Restore Method, select **FTP**. Fill in the **User Name**, **Password**, **Host Name** (*enter host IP Address*), and **Directory** fields for the location of the backup file on the customer’s server. If the you backed up the Linux-Migration backup file to your laptop, use **anonymous** for User Name, your email address for Password, **192.11.13.5** for Host Name, and **\** for Directory. Click **Submit**.

**5** Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0  
Upgrade the S8300

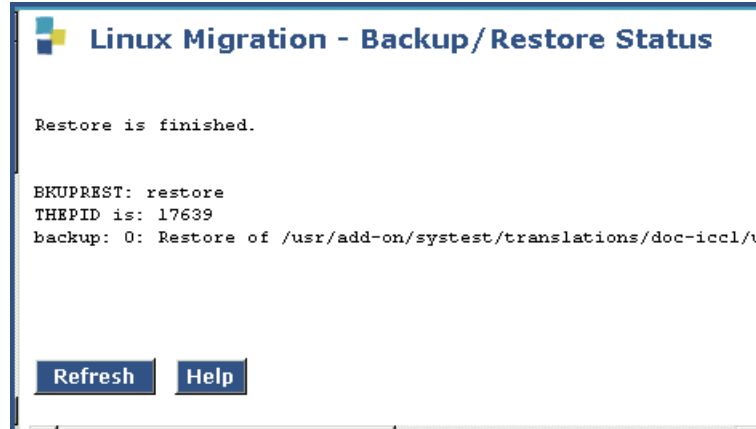
- 4 Select the backup set to restore and both Force options and click **Restore**.



- 5 Click **Status** to view the restore progress



- 6 Select the backup set and click **Check Status** to view the restore progress.



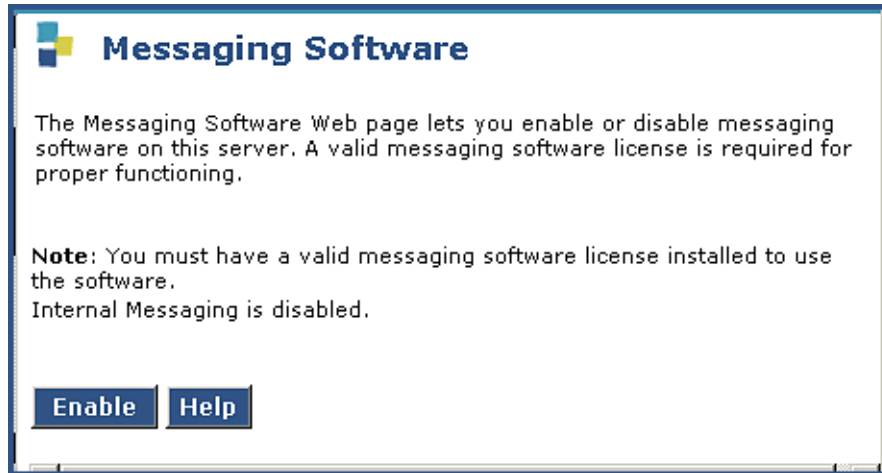
**CAUTION:**

At this point, you should not use any customer logins. Use only the craft login.

## If IA770 Is Being Used, Ensure that Messaging Is Disabled

If the system is using IA770:

- 1 Click **Messaging Software** under Miscellaneous.



- 2 If the **Enable** button shows at the bottom of the screen, messaging is currently disabled — go to the next step, [Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone](#) on page 243. If the **Disable** button is showing, messaging is currently enabled so click the **Disable** button to disable messaging.

## Verify the Time, Date, and Time Zone

- 1 Under Server click **Server Date/Time**.

### Server Date/Time Window

**Server Date/Time**

The Server Date/Time Web page lets you reset date and time when the server is used as its own time source.

The current time is: **Wed Aug 20 19:10:00 MDT 2003**

Date  (mm/dd/yyyy)

Select time  (hh:mm)  
*Use 24-hour format*

Time Zone  
America/Denver  
America/Detroit  
America/Dominica  
America/Edmonton  
America/Eirunepe  
America/El\_Salvador  
America/Ensenada  
America/Fort\_Wayne

**Submit** **Help**

- 2 Verify or set the media server's time close enough to the NTS's time, date, and time zone that synchronization can occur (within about 5 minutes).

## Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager Update File from Your Laptop, if any

### NOTE:

Skip this procedure if there is no Communication Manager update file to install.



### CAUTION:

The software update may or may not be call-preserving.

Use a telnet session to install the software update.

- 1 Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 2 Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
- 3 Log in with the initial **craft** ID and password. (You cannot use **dadmin** at this point.)
- 4 Type **cd /var/home/ftp/pub** and press **Enter** to access the pub directory.
- 5 At the prompt, type **ls -ltr** and press **Enter** to list files in the pub directory.

The media server displays a list of files in the FTP directory. Verify that the directory contains the Communication Manager .tar.gz file you have uploaded, if any.

- 6 Type **sudo update\_unpack <update>.tar.gz**, where **<update>** is the release or issue number of the latest update file. (For example, **03.0.219.0-4925.tar.gz**). Press **Enter**.
- 7 Type **update\_show** and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was installed.

- 8 Type **sudo update\_activate <update>**, where **<update>** is the release or issue number of the latest software file. (For example, **03.0.219.0-4925**. Do *not* use the .tar.gz extension at the end of the file name). Press **Enter**.

The system may initiate a software reset system 4. You must wait until the restart/reset has completed before entering additional commands.

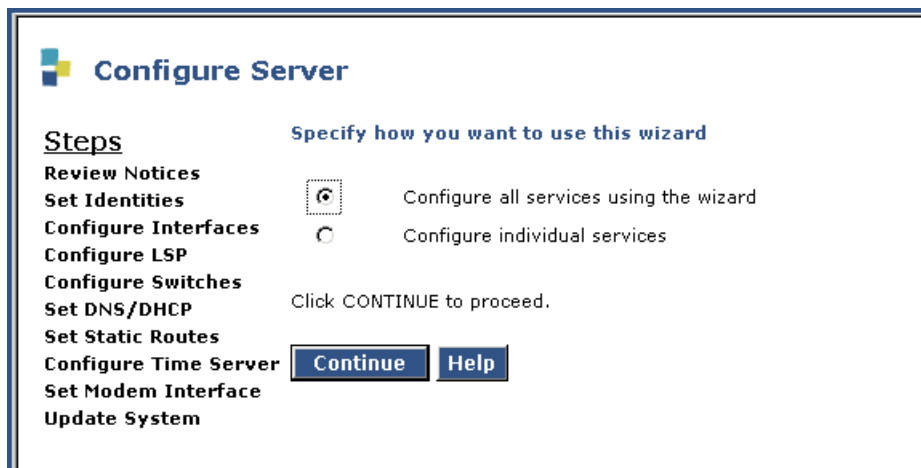
If the system displays the message — /opt/ecs/sbin/drestart 1 4 command failed — ignore this message.

- 9 Type **update\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was applied.

## Verify Media Server Configuration

At this point, you should not have to enter configuration information. In the following procedure, click **Continue** to open each configuration screen and verify the that configuration information is correct.

- 1 Under Server Configuration click **Configure Server** to start the configure server process. Click **Continue** until you reach the screen titled "Specify how you want to use this wizard."



- 2 Select "Configure all services using the wizard."
- 3 Click **Continue** through all the screens, checking for new screens and new fields on existing screens as mentioned in the planning forms.

**NOTE:**

You must click **Continue** through all the screens whether there are changes or not. You *do not* need to enter Static Network Route information.

- 4 When you complete all the new fields, if necessary, click **Continue** on the Update System screen. The Update System screen displays each configuration task as it completes. When done, the screen displays the line "All configuration information was entered."
- 5 Click **Close Window**.
- 6 Log on to a Telnet session.
- 7 Type **/opt/ws/drestart 1 4** to capture the configuration data. You should see the response, "Killed".

## Install the New License File



### CAUTION:

Be sure to install the license file *before* the authentication file.

You need to load a new license file when upgrading to a new major release of Communication Manager or when changing the feature set.

### NOTE:

If the S8300 is already set up for remote access, Avaya services personnel can copy new license and authentication files directly into the /pub directory on the server. Avaya personnel will notify you when the new files are in place as agreed (for example, by telephone or E-mail). After they are loaded into the /pub directory, install them using the **License File** and **Authentication File** screens under Security on the Maintenance Web Interface.

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface under Security, click **License File**.

**License File**

The License File Web page allows installation of Avaya license files.

MultiVantage License Mode: Normal  
Network used for License: Carrier MGP  
License Serial Number is 01DR12310260 on carrier MGP

Undo last install  
 Install the license file I previously downloaded  
 Install the license file specified below

File Path

URL

Proxy Server  e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 2 Select "Install the license file I previously downloaded," browse to the license file on the services laptop, and click **Submit**.

The system tells you the license is installed successfully.

## Install the New Authentication File

- 1 Click **Authentication File**

- 2 Select "Install the Authentication file I previously downloaded" and Click **Install**.  
The system tells you the authentication is installed successfully
- 3 Verify that the restoration of the backup files was successful by testing the craft login.  
Telnet to 192.11.13.6 and login as **craft** using the normal craft password.

### NOTE:

You may need to use the static craft password at this point. The static password will enable you to log in to the S8300 with a direct connection to the Services port without the ASG challenge/response. To obtain the static password, call the ASG Conversant number, 800-248-1234 or 720-444-5557 (or 877-295-0099 for Avaya Business Partners), and follow the prompts to get the password. In addition to your credentials, you will need to enter the customer's Product ID or the FL or IL number.



### CAUTION:

After you install new license and authentication files, be sure to run **save translation**. This task saves the official passwords for the customer's system. If you fail to perform this step, you may be irretrievably locked out of the system later in the installation when the system reboots.

## Save Translations



### CAUTION:

If the system is using IA770, **do not** save translations at this time. Skip to [Verify Operation](#) on page 249. You will save translations **after** installing the new IA770 software.

- 1 In the telnet session, open a SAT session.
- 2 Log in again as **craft**.
- 3 Type **save translation** and press **Enter**.

**5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0**  
Upgrade the S8300

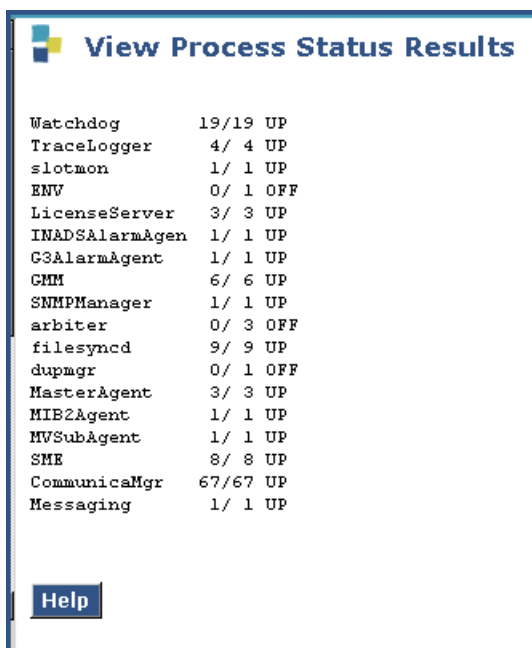
When the save is finished, the system displays the message, "Command successfully completed."



## Verify Operation

Using the Maintenance Web Interface:

- 1 Under Server click **Process Status**.
- 2 Select "Summary and Display once" and click **View** to access the View Process Status Results page.



- 3 Make sure everything except ENV, arbiter, and dupmgr shows UP. Communication Manger should show 65/65 UP or, if IA770 is installed, 67/67 UP.  
 The number of processes (67/67) may vary depending on the configuration. For a normal state, the second number should not be greater than the first number. For example, the numbers 66/67 UP would indicate that a process did not come up and should be investigated before proceeding.
- 4 Using a telephone, make test calls to verify that call processing is working.

## Next Steps

This completes the S8300 upgrade process for upgrading from a 1.x software release to release 2.0. You now must upgrade the G700 and media module firmware and then install and restart IA770, if installed on the S8300.

## Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

---

The tasks in this section can be completed most efficiently by using the Avaya Installation Wizard or the Upgrade Tool. If the S8300 is a primary controller, use the Installation Wizard. If the S8300 is one of several LSPs controlled by the same primary controller, use the Upgrade Tool. Or, in either case, you can complete the tasks manually as described below.

Go to <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw> to download job aids for using the Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool.



### **CAUTION:**

If the passwords to log on to the P300 stack or the MGP have been changed from the defaults, you must change them back to the original default passwords before using the Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool.

### Using the Installation Wizard

On the Integrated Management main menu, click Launch Avaya Installation Wizard. To use the Installation Wizard to upgrade firmware on the G700, be sure to select the "Upgrade a previously installed Media Server with new software and/or Media Gateway firmware" on the Usage Options screen. The Usage Options screen appears in the Installation Wizard after a few introductory screens.

### Using the Upgrade Tool

On the Integrated Management main menu, click Launch Upgrade Tool. Follow the instruction to upgrade the G700 and media module firmware.

### Manual Upgrade Procedures

If you are using the Avaya Installation Wizard or the Upgrade Tool:

- Skip to [If the S8300 is Using IA770](#) on page 257 if IA770 is being used, or
- Skip to [Complete the Upgrade Process \(S8300 is the Primary Controller\)](#) on page 260 if IA770 is not being used.

If you are not using the Avaya Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool, conduct the following manual procedures to update the firmware running on the G700 Media Gateway processors and media modules.

#### Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory

Before proceeding with the G700 firmware installation, you should check the tftpboot directory on the TFTP server to make sure the firmware versions match those listed in the planning documentation.

## Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700

Conduct the following procedure to compare software versions running on the G700 processors and media modules with the versions in you planning documents. If the versions do not match, new firmware for those components is necessary.

### Determine if new firmware for the P330 stack processor is necessary.

- 1 At either the P330-1(super)# or P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **dir**.

The system displays the list of software.

#### Directory List for P300 Processor

M#	file	ver num	file type	file location	file description
1	module-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Module Configuration
1	stack-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Stack Configuration
1	EW_Archive	3.8.6	SW Web Image	NV-Ram	WEB Download
1	Booter_Image	3.2.5	SW BootImage	NV-Ram	Booter Image

- 2 Check the version number (ver num) of the EW\_Archive file to see if it matches the Release Letter. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.
- 3 Type **show image version**

The system displays the list of software.

#### Show Image Version List for P330 Processor

Mod	Module-Type	Bank	Version
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	A	0.0.0
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	B	3.9.0

- 4 Check the version number of the stack software image file in Band B to see if it matches the your planning document. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.

### Determine if new firmware is required for the MGP, VoIP Module, and installed media modules.

- 1 Type **session mgp**
- 2 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The system displays the list of software.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

### Show MG List\_Config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	210 (B)	2
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	52	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	12	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	54	N/A

- 3 Refer to the list to check the FW vintage number of the G700. In the TYPE column, find G700, then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the vintage number in your planning forms. If not, you must install new firmware on the G700 Media Gateway. Also check if the release number in the FW VINTAGE column contains (A) or (B) to designate the software bank. If the list shows B, you will upgrade A. If the list shows A, you will upgrade B.
- 4 Refer to the VOIP FW column and row for slot V0 (same row occupied by the G700 information) to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in your planning forms. If not, you must also upgrade the G700 Media Gateway motherboard VoIP module.

#### NOTE:

The VoIP processor on the motherboard is upgraded using the same firmware image file as the VoIP media modules; for example, the file mm760v8.fdl is vintage #8.

- 5 Check the FW VINTAGE column for vintages of each of the installed Media Modules: MM710, MM711, MM712, MM720, and/or MM760 to see if they match the FW vintages in the planning forms. If not, you must upgrade them, as well.

## Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor

### Install P330 stack processor firmware

- 1 From your S8300 telnet session, telnet back to the P330 stack processor:  
Type **telnet <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>**, where <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> is the IP address of the P330 stack master processor on the customer's LAN.
- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type  
**copy tftp SW\_image <file> EW\_archive <ew\_file> <tftp\_server\_address> <Module#>**  
where  
<file> is the full-path name for the image file with format and vintage number similar to viisa3\_8\_2.exe,  
  
<ew\_file> is the full-path name for the embedded web application file with format similar to p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe,  
  
<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and

<Module#> is the number, 1 through 10, of the media gateway in the stack. If there is only one G700 Media Gateway, the number is 1.

- 2 To verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns:
  - type **show image version <module #>** and check the version number in the Version column for Bank B.
  - type **dir <module #>** and check the version number in the ver num column for the EW\_Archive file.
- 3 Type **reset <module #>**

## Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor

### Install MGP firmware

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp** to reach the G700 Media Gateway processor.
- 2 Type **configure** at the MG-??-1(super)# prompt to enter configuration mode, which will change the prompt to MG-??-1(configure)#.
- 3 At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mgp bootimage** to determine which disk partition (bank) is in the Active Now column. You will update the bank that is *not* listed as Active Now. The system displays the following screen:

### Example: Show mgp bootimage

<u>FLASH MEMORY</u>	<u>IMAGE VERSION</u>
Bank A	109
Bank B	210
<u>ACTIVE NOW</u>	<u>ACTIVE AFTER REBOOT</u>
Bank B	Bank B

- 4 At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp mgp-image <bank> <filename> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** to transfer the mgp image from the tftp server to the G700, where
  - <bank> is the bank that is *not* Active Now (Bank A in the example).
  - <filename> is the full path name of the mgp firmware image file, which begins with mgp and will be similar to the name mgp\_8\_0.bin.
  - <tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the S8300. See the following example:  
copy tftp mgp-image a mgp\_8\_0.bin 195.123.49.54.
 The screen will show the progress.
- 5 Type **set mgp bootimage <bank>** where <bank> is the same letter you entered in the previous step.

## 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0

Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

- 6 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 7 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 8 When the P330-1(super)# prompt appears, type **session mgp**.
- 9 At the MGP-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure**.
- 10 Verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns.  
Type **show mg list\_config**. The system displays the list of software.

### Example: Show mg list\_config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230 (A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

## Install New Firmware on the Media Modules

For upgrades of active media modules, you need to take the media modules out of service before initiating the upgrade process. To do this, go to a SAT session on the primary controller and issue a busyout command.

### NOTE:

Skip this busyout procedure if the media modules are not in service; for example during an initial installation.

### *Busyout board (for active media modules)*

- 1 Go to a SAT session on the primary controller and enter the command, **busyout board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the media module to be upgraded.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.
- 3 Repeat for each media module to be upgraded.

### *Install media module firmware*

- 1 Be sure that you have checked for the current vintage of the VoIP Module for the v0 slot (on the G700 motherboard) (see [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#)). This VoIP module does not occupy a physical position like other Media Modules.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.

- 3 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.
- 4 Type **copy tftp mm-image v<slot #> <filename mm> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>**  
where <slot #> is the slot of the specific media module as identified when you performed [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#).

<filename mm> the full-path name of the media module firmware file in a format such mm712v58.fdl, and

<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the ip address of the S8300.

Two or three minutes will be required for most upgrades. The VoIP Media Module upgrade takes approximately 5 minutes. Screen messages indicate when the transfer is complete.

- 5 After you have upgraded all the media modules, verify that the new versions are present. At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The list of software appears

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230(A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

- 6 In the TYPE column, find the particular media module (v1 through v4), then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the planning documentation. Note that slot V1 can contain either a media module or the S8300, which will show as Type "ICC".
- 7 Check the VOIP FW column and row for slot v0 to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in the planning documentation.
- 8 Type **reset <module #>** where <module #> is the number of the G700 in the stack.
- 9 When the reset is finished, type **show mm** to verify the upgrade.

**Release board (if media module was busied out)**

- 1 When the upgrade procedure is complete, go to the SAT session and release the board: type **release board vx** where x is the slot number of the upgraded media module.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.

**NOTE:**

If you see the response, Board Not Inserted, this means that the media module is still rebooting. Wait one minute and repeat the **release board** command.

- 3 Repeat the **release board** command for each media module that was busied out.

## Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways

### Stack Configuration

If the customer has multiple G700 media gateways connected in an IP stack, you can stay connected to the master G700/P330 and "session" over from the master P330 stack processor to the next G700 in the stack. If you are dialed in remotely, you should have automatically dialed in to the stack master. For a local installation, you should have plugged your laptop into the stack master P330, which you can identify by the LED panel on the upper left of each G700 or P330 device in the stack. The LEDs signal as follows:

- On the G700 Media Gateway: a lit **MSTR** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.
- On the P330 device: a lit **SYS** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.

The G700 and P330 at the bottom of the stack is module number 1, the next module up is number 2, and so on. However, the stack master can be any module in the stack, depending on the actual model, the vintage firmware it runs, and whether the S8300 is inserted into it.

#### **NOTE:**

You do not need to configure the other P330 stack processors in the stack. These will use the IP address and IP route of the master stack processor. However, you will need to check firmware on all devices of the other G700s in the stack, including the media gateways themselves, and update the firmware as required.

You may also use the "session stack" command to access other standalone P330 processors in the stack (those that are not part of a G700 unit).

- 1** At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **session stack**  
The P330-1(configure)# prompt appears.
- 2** At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session <mod\_num> mgp**  
<mod\_num> is the next P330 processor in the stack. If you are currently logged in to the master stack processor, <mod\_num> would be **2**, for the second G700/P330 processor in the stack.
- 3** For other G700s in the stack, repeat the steps described previously to install firmware for the stack processor, MGP, and media modules.

### Remote, No Stack Configuration

If additional G700 media gateways are supported in the configuration, but they are not attached as a stack, then you must configure each G700, with all of its devices, including the P330 processors. Additionally, you must check firmware and update the firmware as required.



## If the S8300 is Using IA770

---

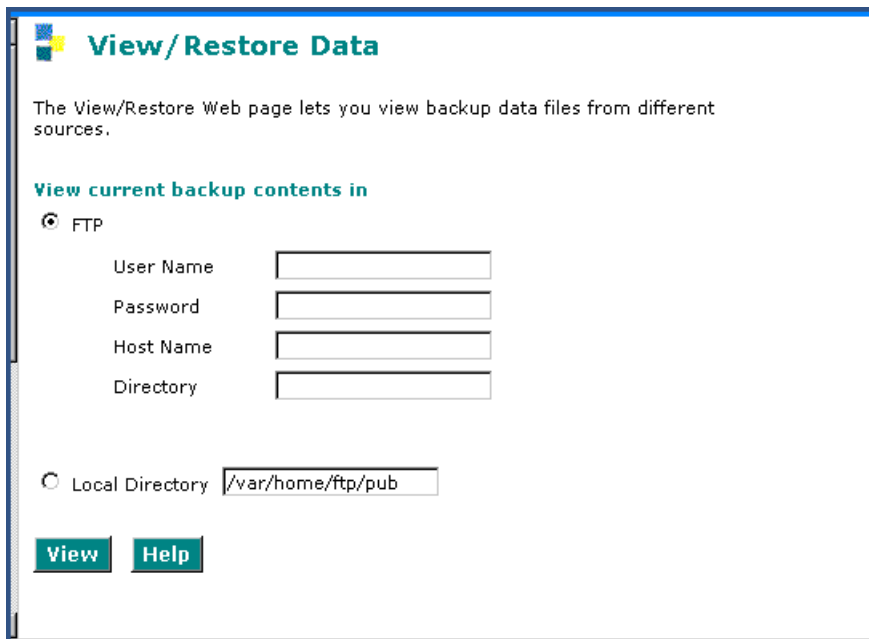
### Install and Restart IA770

- 1 Telnet to **192.11.13.6**
- 2 Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.
- 3 Type **cd /usr/CHIA**
- 4 Install IA770:
  - a Type **sudo ./autoinstall**
  - b When prompted to stop call processing, select **y**. The installation should take about 10 minutes from this point.

**NOTE:**

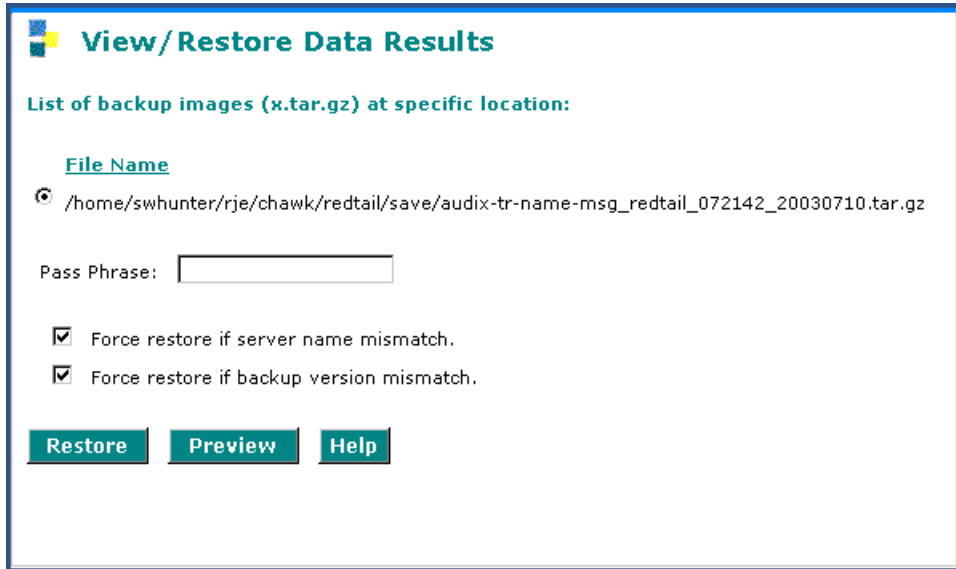
Communication Manager will shutdown.

- c Ensure that the autoinstall script completed successfully. You will see the message, "Successful Completion of IA770 Automatic Installation."
- 5 Enable messaging:
  - a Go to the Web Interface and select **Messaging Software** under Miscellaneous.
  - b If the **Enable** button shows at the bottom of the screen, click it to enable messaging. If the **Disable** button is showing, messaging is already enabled.
- 6 Restore AUDIX data:
  - a Under Data Backup/Restore, click **View/Restore Data**.



**5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0**  
If the S8300 is Using IA770

- b** Select FTP and enter the information for the location of the backed up *AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages* and click **View**.



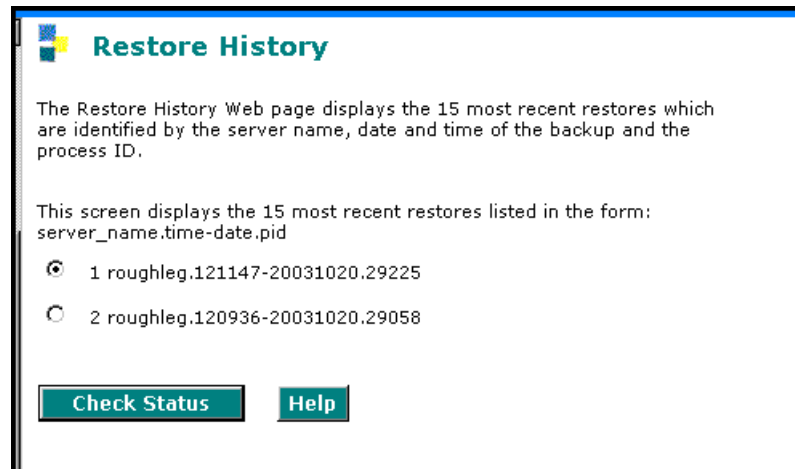
- c** Select the *AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages* backup set, select both **Force** options, and click **Restore**.



**WARNING:**

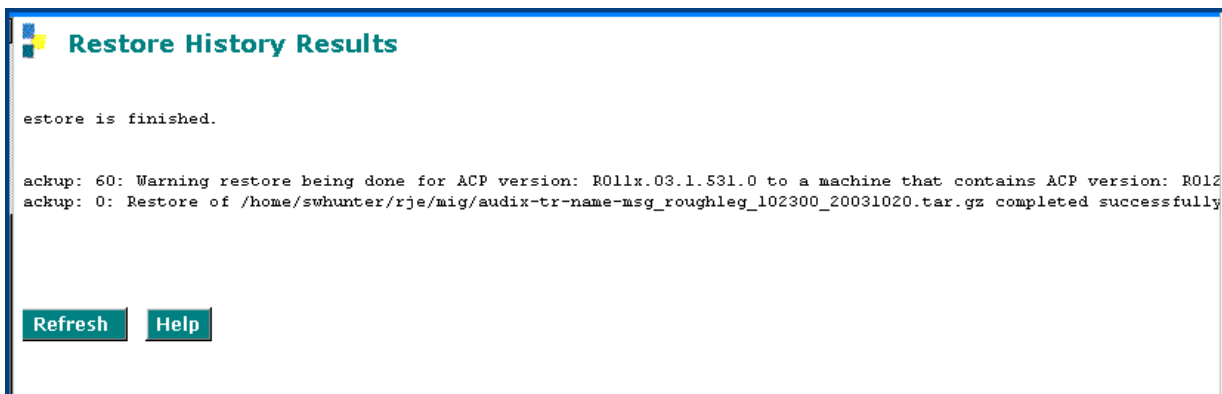
**AUDIX announcement sets from Communication Manager 1.x releases are not compatible with Release 2.0. Do not restore 1.x announcements onto a 2.0 system.**

- d** To monitor the restore progress:
  - select Restore History



- select the backup set being restored and click **Check Status**

— click Refresh periodically until "Completed Successfully" appears



- 7 Restart Communication Manager:
  - a Open a Telnet session to the S8300 and type **start -ac**
  - b Ensure that all Communication Manager processes come up.
  - c After all Communication Manager processes are up, monitor the startup of IA770:  
Type **watch /VM/bin/ss**  
Press **Ctrl+C** to break out of the **watch** command.
- 8 Run an IA770 sanity test:
  - a Type **/vs/bin/display**
  - b All states should be "Inserv" with an associate phone number.
  - c Retrieve the test message saved before the upgrade.

## Save Translations

- 1 In the telnet session, open a SAT session.
- 2 Log in again as **craft**.
- 3 Type **save translation** and press **Enter**.  
When the save is finished, the system displays the message, Command successfully completed.
- 4 If an IA770 post-upgrade update (patch) is required, see the IA770 documentation for procedures to install the update.

## Install IA770 update (patch) files, if any

If IA770 is being used, a post-upgrade update (patch) for IA770 may be required. See the IA770 documentation for procedures to install an update. The documentation can be found on the Avaya Support Web Site at <http://support.avaya.com>. Then click on **Product Documentation** and then **Messaging** and scroll down to the INTUITY document links.

- 5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0**  
Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)

## Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)

---

Telnet to the S8300 (primary controller) and open a SAT session to complete the following procedures.

### Check Media Modules

- 1 Type **list configuration all** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Verify that the software is communicating with all media modules and that all media modules are listed in the reports.
- 3 Make test telephone calls to verify that Communication Manager is working.

### Enable Scheduled Maintenance

- 1 Type **change system-parameters maintenance** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Ensure that the `Start Time` and `Stop Time` fields' administration is the same as before the upgrade.

### Busy Out Trunks

- 1 Busy out trunks that were busied out before the upgrade (see [Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the S8300 is the Primary Controller](#) on page 221).

### Check for Translation Corruption

- 1 Type **newterm** and press **Enter**.  
If you do not get a login prompt and see the following message:  
Warning: Translation corruption detected  
follow the normal escalation procedure for translation corruption before continuing the upgrade.

### Resolve Alarms

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Alarms click **Current Alarms** to examine the alarm log.
- 2 If any alarms are listed, click **Clear All**.
- 3 Resolve new alarms since the upgrade through Communication Manager using the appropriate maintenance book.

## Re-enable Alarm Origination

- 1 Telnet to the S8300 and log on.
- 2 At the command prompt, type **almenable -d b -s y**, where
  - d b sets the dialout option to *both* (numbers)
  - s y enables SNMP alarm origination
- 3 Type **almenable** (without any options) to verify that alarm origination status.

## Back up the System

Using the Maintenance Web Interface, back up the system as you did before the upgrade selecting Save Translations and all backup sets.

## Restart LSPs (if any)

To restart Communication Manager on the LSP after the upgrade:

- 1 Open a Telnet session on the S8300 (LSP).
- 2 Telnet to the LSP.
- 3 At the command line, type **start -ac** and press **Enter**.

This completes the upgrade process for a G700 with an S8300.

**5 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0**  
Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)

# 6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x

This chapter covers the procedures to upgrade the software on an installed Avaya S8300 Media Server from release 2.0 to a later (2.x) release. It also covers the procedures to upgrade the firmware on an installed Avaya G700 Media Gateway. The S8300 can be configured as either the primary controller or as a local survivable processor (LSP). When the S8300 is an LSP, the primary controller, running Avaya Communication Manager, can be either another S8300 or an Avaya S8500 or S8700 Media Server.

The steps to upgrade an S8300 configured as an LSP are the same as the steps to upgrade an S8300 configured as the primary controller, with the following additional considerations:

- The version of Communication Manager running on the LSP must be the same as, or later than, the version running on the primary controller.
- If upgrading both the primary controller and the LSP, the LSP must be upgraded first. Then, with Communication Manager turned off on the LSP, the primary controller is upgraded.



## CAUTION:

This upgrade procedure requires a service interruption of approximately 2 hours, or up to 4 hours if IA770 is being used.



## Tip:

The Upgrade Tool performs the following tasks automatically:

[Upgrade the S8300](#) on page 282

[Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#) on page 292

[Upgrade the Firmware on the G700](#) on page 291.

## System Access

To access the S8300 on-site, you will normally connect the technician's laptop directly to the Services port on the S8300 using a crossover cable. See [Connection and Login Methods](#) on page 45 for instructions on accessing the S8300 and G700.

## Task Summary

---

### Before Going to the Site

- [Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager](#) on page 266
- [Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary](#) on page 266
- [Check Number of Allocated Ports](#) on page 266
- [Check FTP Server for Backing up Data](#) on page 267
- [Get Software/Firmware Files](#) on page 267
- [Complete the RFA Process \(Obtain license and password file\)](#) on page 267
- [Download Software Update \(patch\) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary](#) on page 269

### On-Site Preparation Tasks

#### If the S8300 is a Primary Controller

- [Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the Target S8300 is the Primary Controller](#) on page 271
- [Get IA770 \(AUDIX\) Data and Stop IA770 \(if IA770 is being used\)](#) on page 273

#### S8300 is Either a Primary Controller or LSP

- [Back up recovery system files](#) on page 274
- [Install New License and Authentication Files, If Necessary](#) on page 276
- [Run Save Translations \(Only If New License and/or Authentication Files Installed\)](#) on page 279
- [Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop](#) on page 279

### S8300 Upgrade Tasks

- [Install New Software](#) on page 282
- [Make the Upgrade Permanent](#) on page 289
- [Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager Update File from Your Laptop, if any](#) on page 290
- [Install IA770 update \(patch\) files, if any](#) on page 290

### G700 Upgrade Using the Wizards

- [Using the Installation Wizard](#) on page 291
- [Using the Upgrade Tool](#) on page 291



## G700 Manual Upgrade Tasks

### G700 Pre-Upgrade Tasks

- [Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory](#) on page 291
- [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#) on page 292

### G700 Upgrade Tasks

- [Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor](#) on page 293
- [Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor](#) on page 294
- [Install New Firmware on the Media Modules](#) on page 295
- [Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways](#) on page 297

### Post-upgrade Tasks

- [Check Media Modules](#) on page 298
- [Enable Scheduled Maintenance](#) on page 298
- [Busy Out Trunks](#) on page 298
- [Check for Translation Corruption](#) on page 298
- [Resolve Alarms](#) on page 298
- [Re-enable Alarm Origination](#) on page 298
- [Back up the System](#) on page 299
- [Restart LSPs \(if any\)](#) on page 299

## Before Going to the Customer Site

---

The procedures in this section should be completed before going to the customer site or before starting a remote installation.

### Collect Upgrade Information

#### Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager

The project manager should provide you with forms that contain all the information needed to prepare for this installation. The information primarily consists of IP addresses, subnet mask addresses, logins, passwords, people to contact, the type of system, and equipment you need to install. Verify that the information provided by the project manager includes all the information requested in your planning forms.



**Tip:**

[Appendix B, “Information Checklists”](#) provides several checklists to help you gather the installation and upgrade information.

#### Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary

For an upgrade of an existing G700, the existing license file can usually be reused. However, if the customer is adding feature functionality (for example, adding BRI trunks), or if the upgrade is between major releases (for example, 1.3 to 2.0), you will need the serial number of the G700. To get this number, ask the customer’s administrator to log in to the S8300 web page and select **View License Status** from the main menu to display the serial number.

For a new installation, you need the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway in order to complete the creation of the customer’s license file on the rfa.avaya.com web site. To get this number, look for the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 chassis. If the unit is delivered directly to the customer and you will not have phone or LAN line access from the customer site to access the rfa.avaya.com web site, this task will require a preliminary trip to the customer site.

#### Check Number of Allocated Ports

Release 2.0 of Communication Manager supports a maximum of 900 ports if the S8300 is a primary controller. If the existing system has more than 900 ports allocated, then there may be a problem with the upgrade and you need to escalate. Ask the customer to check the system for the maximum number of ports.

#### Access the SAT command interface

- 1 Access the S8300 media server using a terminal emulation application or Avaya Site Administration. Use **192.11.13.6** as the address and **5023** as the port.
- 2 Log on as **craft**.

- 3 Type **display system-parameters customer options** and press **Enter**.
- 4 Verify that the Maximum Ports: field is 900 or less.

## Check FTP Server for Backing up Data

During the installation and upgrade procedures, you will need to back up the system data to an FTP server. Normally, you will use an FTP server on the customer's LAN for backups. To do this, you will need information on how to get to the backup location — login ID and password, and the IP address and directory path on the FTP server. Check with your project manager or the customer for this information.



### CAUTION:

Before going to the customer site, make sure that you can use a customer server for backups.

## Get Software/Firmware Files

The file containing the S8300 software and G700 firmware has a \*.tar extension. The \*.tar file is on a CD-ROM that you take to the site. Additional files that may be needed are the most recent versions of the software update (patch) files and G700 firmware files. You may need to obtain these files from the Avaya Support web site.

## Complete the RFA Process (Obtain license and password file)

Every S8300 media server and local survivable processor (LSP) requires a current and correct version of a license file in order to provide the expected call-processing service.

The license file specifies the features and services that are available on the S8300 media server, such as the number of ports purchased. The license file contains a software version number, hardware serial number, expiration date, and feature mask. The license file is reinstalled to add or remove call-processing features. New license files may be required when upgrade software is installed.

The Avaya authentication file contains the logins and passwords to access the S8300 media server. This file is updated regularly by Avaya services personnel, if the customer has a maintenance contract. All access to Communication Manager from any login is blocked unless a valid authentication file is present on the S8300 media server.

A new license file and the Avaya authentication file may be installed independently of each other or any other server upgrades.

### NOTE:

For an upgrade, you do not normally need to install a new authentication file (with a .pwd extension). However, if one is required, follow the same steps as with a license file.

## License File and Communication Manager Versions for a Local Survivable Processor

The license file of the S8300 as an LSP must have a feature set that is equal to or greater than that of the media server that acts as primary controller (an S8300 or S8700). This is necessary so that if control passes to the LSP, it can allow the same level of call processing as that of the primary controller.

Additionally, the LSP must have a version of Communication Manager that is identical to that of the primary controller.

The license file requirements of the LSP should be identified in your planning documentation.

## Complete and Download the License File to Your Laptop

- 1 Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to create a directory on your laptop for storing license and authentication files (for example, C:\licenses).
- 2 Access the Internet from your laptop and go to [rfa.avaya.com](http://rfa.avaya.com).
- 3 Use the System ID or the SAP ID of the customer to locate the license and authentication files for the customer.
- 4 Check that the license and authentication files are complete. You might need to add the serial number of the customer's G700.
- 5 If the files are not complete, complete them.
- 6 Use the download or E-mail capabilities of the RFA web site to download the license and authentication files to your laptop.

## Run the Automatic Registration Tool (ART) for the INADS IP Address, if Necessary

This step is normally not necessary for an upgrade of an existing system.

### NOTE:

ART is available only to Avaya associates. Business Partners call 800-295-0099.

The ART tool is a software tool that generates an IP address for a customer's INADS alarming modem. This IP address is required for configuring the S8300's modem for alarming.

### NOTE:

You must generate a license and authentication file before you use the ART tool. Also, the ART process is available *only* to Avaya personnel. You need an ART login ID and password, which you can set up at the ART web site. Non-Avaya personnel must contact their service support or customer care center for INADS addresses, if required.

- 1 Access the ART web site on your laptop at <http://art.dr.avaya.com>.
- 2 Select **Administer S8x00 Server products for installation script**, log in, enter the customer information, select **Installation Script**, and click **Start Installation script & IP Addr Admin**.  
A script file is created and downloaded or emailed to you.
- 3 You can use the installation script to automatically set up an IP address and other alarming parameters.

## Obtain the Static Craft Password

After installing new software and new Authentication file, you will need to use a static craft password to access the customer's system. This static password will enable you to log in to the S8300 with a direct connection to the Services port without the ASG challenge/response. To obtain the static password, call the ASG Conversant number, 800-248-1234 or 720-444-5557 (or 877-295-0099 for Avaya Business Partners), and follow the prompts to get the password. In addition to your credentials, you will need to enter the customer's Product ID or the FL or IL number.

## Download Software Update (patch) file to Your Laptop, if Necessary

*Skip to the next section* if a software update is not required for this installation or upgrade, or if the software for the required updates are on your software CD.

If one or more updates are required for this installation or upgrade procedure, and the update file is not on your software CD, download the update file from the Avaya Support web site to your laptop:

- 1 On your laptop, create a directory to store the file (for example, c:\S8300download).
- 2 Connect to the LAN using a browser on your laptop or the customer's PC and access <http://www.avaya.com/support> on the Internet to copy the required Communication Manager update file to the laptop.
- 3 At the Avaya support site, select the following sequence of links:
  - Software & Firmware Downloads
  - G700 Media Gateway & S8300 Media Server
  - Software Downloads
  - **Avaya Communication Manager Software Updates for MV x.x.x** (where x.x.x is the release that is currently running on the S8300)
- 4 Locate the file name that matches the load listed in your planning documentation. The file name ends with .tar.gz (*for example only*, 03.0.526.5-5767.tar.gz).
- 5 Double-click the file name. The system displays a File Download window.
- 6 Click on **Save this file to disk**.  
 Save the file to an appropriate directory on your laptop.

## On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

---

Perform these tasks before starting the software upgrade on the S8300.

### Access to the S8300

To perform the installation and upgrade procedures you will need to connect your laptop to the S8300 Services port using a crossover cable. You will use both Telnet and the Maintenance Web Interface to perform the procedures.

For a direct connection to the S8300 Services port, your laptop must be properly configured. See [Laptop Configuration for a Direct Connection to the Services Port](#) on page 47.

#### Access the S8300 via Telnet

To access the S8300 using Telnet, you

- 1 Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 2 Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
- 3 Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.

#### Access the S8300 via the Maintenance Web interface

- 1 Launch the Web browser.
- 2 Type **192.11.13.6** in the Address field to open the logon page.
- 3 Log on as **craft** or **dadmin** when prompted.
- 4 Click **Launch Maintenance Web Interface** to get to the Main Menu.

#### Access SAT

- 1 From the bash CLI, type **SAT** and press **Enter**.  
Or, to open SAT directly from your laptop, click **Start > Run** and type **telnet 192.11.13.6 5023** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.
- 3 Enter **w2ktt** for the Terminal Type (if you are running Windows 2000 on your laptop).
- 4 Accept the default (**y**) for Suppress Alarm Origination.

## Pre-Upgrade Tasks — If the Target S8300 is the Primary Controller

If the S8300 is configured as an LSP, skip to [Upgrade the S8300](#) on page 282.



### CAUTION:

If you are upgrading an S8300 primary controller that has LSPs registered to it, the LSPs must be upgraded *before* the primary controller. (You can use the SAT command, list media-gateway, to see if there are LSPs registered to the S8300.)

Perform the following procedures if you are upgrading an S8300 that is configured as a primary controller.

### NOTE:

It is no longer necessary to disable Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI) before an upgrade or to enable it after an upgrade.

### Clear Alarms

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface under Alarms and Notification (Alarms for R2.0), click **View Current Alarms** (**Current Alarms** for R2.0).
- 2 If no alarms are listed, skip the next two steps.
- 3 If alarms are listed, click **Clear All**.
- 4 Resolve any remaining major alarms through the Communication Manager SAT.

### Check Link Status

- 1 Open a SAT session.
- 2 Enter **display communication-interface links**.
- 3 Note all administered links.
- 4 Enter **status link number** for each administered link.
- 5 Enter **list signaling group**.
- 6 Note the signaling groups listed by number.
- 7 For each of the signaling groups listed, enter **status signaling group number**.
- 8 Make a note of any links that are down.

### Record All Busyouts

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **display errors** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Look for type 18 errors and record any trunks that are busied out — you will return them to their busy-out state after the upgrade.

## Disable Scheduled Maintenance

To prevent scheduled daily maintenance from interfering with the upgrade:

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **change system-parameters maintenance** and press **Enter**.
- 2 If scheduled maintenance is in progress, set the `Stop Time` field to 1 minute after the current time.

*or*

If scheduled maintenance is not in progress, set the `Start Time` field to a time after the upgrade will be completed.

For example, if you start the upgrade at 8:00 P.M. and the upgrade takes 90 minutes, set the `Start Time` field to 21:30.

## Check for Translation Corruption

- 1 At the SAT prompt, type **newterm** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Enter your terminal type and press **Enter**.

If you see the following message: Warning: Translation corruption found, then follow the normal escalation procedure for translation corruption before continuing the upgrade.

## Stop the LSPs (if applicable)

Skip this procedure if no LSPs are registered to the S8300.

For configurations with LSPs, the LSPs and the primary controller (S8300, S8500, or S8700) must run the same version Communication Manager. Therefore, an upgrade to an LSP is usually accompanied by an upgrade of the primary controller. You should upgrade the LSP before you upgrade the primary controller.

Before you upgrade the primary controller, you need to shut down Communication Manager on the LSPs. This prevents the phones and other endpoints attached to the G700 from trying to register with the LSPs while you are upgrading the primary controller.

To stop Communication Manager on an LSP:

- 1 Open a telnet session on the S8300 (LSP).
- 2 Telnet to the LSP.
- 3 At the command line, type **stop -acfn** and press **Enter**.

The S8300 (LSP) shuts down Communication Manager.



### CAUTION:

The LSP's Communication Manager must remain shutdown while you upgrade the primary Controller. When you complete the primary controller upgrade, run **save translation** on the primary controller before restarting Communication Manager on the LSP. The save translations process will automatically cause the G700's endpoints to reregister with the primary controller.

After the primary controller has been upgraded, you need to restart the LSPs.



## Disable Alarm Origination

If alarm origination is enabled during the upgrade, unnecessary alarms will be sent to the Operations Support System (OSS) destination number(s). Even if you selected "Suppress Alarm Origination" when you logged in, alarm origination will be automatically re-enabled when the system reboots after the software upgrade. Use this procedure to prevent alarm origination from being re-enabled after reboot.



### CAUTION:

If you do not disable Alarm Origination, the system can generate alarms during the upgrade, resulting in unnecessary trouble tickets.

To prevent alarm outcalling:

- 1 Logoff the SAT session
- 2 At the command prompt, type **almenable -d n -s n**, where
  - d n sets the dialout option to **neither** (number)
  - s n disables SNMP alarm origination

### NOTE:

Be sure to reset alarm origination after the upgrade.

- 3 Type **almenable** (without any options) to verify the alarm origination status. You should see:
  - incoming: enable
  - Dial Out Alarm Origination: neither
  - SNMP Alarm Origination: N

## Get IA770 (AUDIX) Data and Stop IA770 (if IA770 is being used)

If IA770 is being used, you need to collect some data, leave a test message, and shut down IA770 before backing up the files.

- 1 To test IA770 after the migration, write down the number of a test voice mailbox, or create one if none exists. Also write down the number of the IA770 hunt group.
- 2 Leave a message on the test mailbox that will be retrieved after the migration.
- 3 Telnet to 192.11.13.6 and log in as **craft** or **dadmin**.
- 4 Type **stop -s Audix** and press **Enter** to shut down AUDIX.  
The shutdown will take a few minutes.
- 5 Type **watch /VM/bin/ss** and press **Enter** to monitor the shutdown.

When the shutdown is complete, you will see only the voicemail and audit processes. For example:

```
voicemail:(10)
audit http:(9)
```

Press **Ctrl+C** to break out of the **watch** command.

## 6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x

On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

- 6 Type `/vs/bin/util/vs_status` and press **Enter** to verify that AUDIX is shut down. When AUDIX is shut down, you will see "voice system is down."

**NOTE:**


After the S8300 upgrade, you must upgrade the G700 and media module firmware before restarting IA770.

### Back up recovery system files

Before installing the S8300 software, you should back up the system data in case there's a need to back out of the upgrade. You should back up to an FTP server on the customer's network. To do this, you need an FTP address and directory path and a user ID and password to access the customer's network. Check with your project manager or the customer for this information. You can also back up the system data to the S8300 hard drive.

## Back up data

- 1 Under Data Backup/Restore, click **Backup Now**.

 **Backup Now**

The Backup Now Web page lets you store data separate from the Avaya media server. Select the type of data and the method to backup. Encrypting the data while backing up provides you a high level of security and is strongly encouraged.

**Data Sets**

Avaya Call Processing (ACP) Translations

Save ACP translations prior to backup  
 Do NOT save ACP translations prior to backup

Server and System Files

Security Files

AUDIX

AUDIX Announcements  
 AUDIX Translations and Messages  
 AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages  
 AUDIX Translations and Names  
 AUDIX Translations

**Backup Method**

FTP

User Name   
 Password   
 Host Name   
 Directory

Email

User Name   
 Domain Name   
 Mail Server

\*\*Please Note: Depending on the size of the backup, the email may or may not work, as all mail servers have a maximum size they'll accept.

**Encryption**

Encrypt backup using pass phrase

- 2 Select all data sets:
  - Avaya Call Processing (ACP) Translations
  - Save ACP translations prior (do not save ACP translations if this is an LSP).
  - Server and System Files
  - Security Files
- 3 If the AUDIX options are available, select AUDIX and select AUDIX Translations, Names, and Messages
- 4 Select the FTP for the backup method and fill in the appropriate fields with information provided by the customer.

## 6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

- 5 Click **Start Backup** to back up the files.
- 6 If the AUDIX options are available, repeat Steps 3–5 for AUDIX Announcements. The announcements cannot be restored to the 2.0 system but they should be backed up in case it is necessary to revert to the 1.x system.

### Install New License and Authentication Files, If Necessary

Skip to [Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop](#) on page 279 if you are not installing a new license or password file.

For an upgrade, you need to load a new license file only when upgrading to a new major release of Communication Manager (for example, R2.x to R3.x) or when the feature set has changed.

#### NOTE:

If the S8300 is already set up for remote access, Avaya services personnel can copy new license and authentication files directly into the FTP directory on the server. Avaya personnel will notify you when the new files are in place as agreed (for example, by telephone or E-mail). After they are loaded into the FTP directory, install them using the **License File** and **Authentication File** screens from the S8300 main menu web-page.

#### NOTE:

Before an upload or download, be sure the S8300 FTP directory (/var/home/ftp/pub) contains no files with a .pwd or .lic extension. Only one of these files can exist in a directory. If one exists, move, rename, or delete it.

### If Necessary, Rename Old License and Authentication Files from S8300 FTP Directory

Before an upload or download, be sure the S8300 FTP directory (/var/home/ftp/pub) contains no files with a .pwd or .lic extension. Only one of these files can exist in a directory. If one exists, move, rename, or delete it.

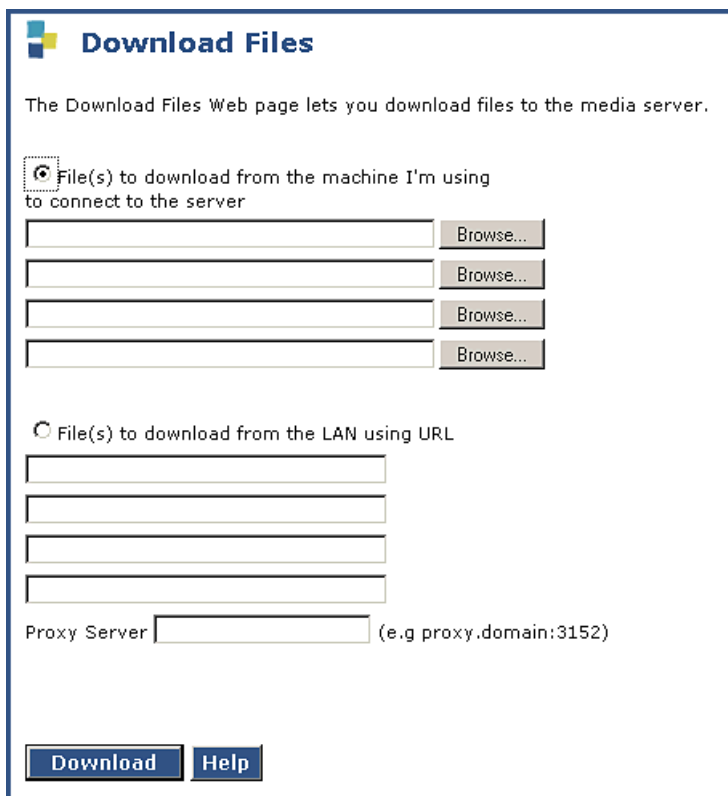
- 1 Log in to a telnet session on the S8300.
- 2 At the command line, type **cd /var/home/ftp/pub** and press **Enter**.
- 3 Type **ls -l** and press **Enter**.  
The system displays a list of files.
- 4 Check the list of files to see if any files with .lic or .pwd suffixes are in the directory.
- 5 If any .lic or .pwd files exist, rename them. For example, type **mv <filename>.lic <filename>.lic.old** or **mv <filename>.pwd <filename>.pwd.old** and press **Enter**.
- 6 Leave the telnet session open for a later task.

### Load License File (from Your Laptop)

Use this procedure to transfer the license and password files from the CD or hard drive on your laptop to the S8300 hard drive.

- 1 Log on to the S8300 Web Interface
- 2 In the main menu under Miscellaneous, click **Download Files**.

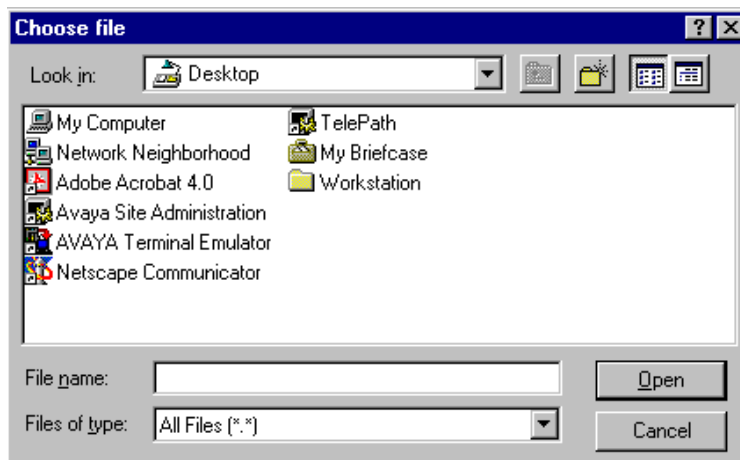
**Download Files Screen**



- 3 Select "Files to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server" and click **Browse** for the first field.

The S8300 displays the Choose File screen, which allows you to select files from your laptop.

**Choose File Screen**



- 4 Locate the customer's license (.lic) file.
- 5 When you have selected the .lic file, click **Open** in the dialog box.

**6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x**  
On-site Preparation for the Upgrade

- 6** Click **Browse** for the second field.
- 7** Locate the customer's .pwd file on your laptop.
- 8** When you have selected the .pwd file, click **Open** in the dialog box.
- 9** When you have finished entering the files to be uploaded, click **Load File**.  
When the files are successfully transferred, the system displays the status screen.

**If Necessary, Install License and Authentication Files**

- 1** Under Security, select **License File**

**License File Screen**

**License File**

The License File Web page allows installation of Avaya license files.

MultiVantage License Mode: Normal  
Network used for License: Carrier MGP  
License Serial Number is 01DR12310260 on carrier MGP

Undo last install  
 Install the license file I previously downloaded  
 Install the license file specified below

File Path    
URL   
Proxy Server  e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 2** Select "Install the license file I previously downloaded" and click **Submit**.  
The system tells you the license is installed successfully.
- 3** Under Security, select **Authentication File**.

## Install Authentication Screen

- 4 Select "Install the Authentication file I previously downloaded" and click **Install**.  
The system tells you the authentication is installed successfully

## Run Save Translations (Only If New License and/or Authentication Files Installed)

### CAUTION:

This procedure saves the official passwords for the customer's system. If you fail to perform this step now, you may be irretrievably locked out of the system later in the installation when the system reboots.

- 1 In the telnet session, open a SAT session. and log in again as **craft (or dadmin)**.
- 2 At the SAT prompt, type **save translation** and press **Enter**. When the save is finished, the system displays the message, Command successfully completed.

## Transfer Files from a CD or Laptop

Normally, during an upgrade, you will have the CD-ROM that contains the latest software to install. The latest software for the S8300 has a file name that has a .tar extension and reflects the most recent load of software (*For example only:* S8300-02.0-00.0.218.6.tar; for systems with IA770, the filename would be similar to S8300msg-02.0-00.0.218.6.tar). The latest update (patch) software for Communication Manager has a .tar.gz extension and a file name that reflects the most recent load of software (*for example,* 03.0.110.4-4925.tar.gz).

This .tar file will also contain the most recent firmware for the G700 Media Gateway, the various media modules, and the P330 stack processor.



**Tip:**

The Avaya Installation Wizard performs tasks automatically starting with this section.

- 1 Log in to the S8300 Web interface.
- 2 Choose **Download Files** under Miscellaneous on the left pane of the main menu.

## Download Files Screen

**Download Files**

The Download Files Web page lets you download files to the media server.

File(s) to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server

File(s) to download from the LAN using URL

Proxy Server  (e.g proxy.domain:3152)

- 3 Select "Files to download from the machine I'm using to connect to the server," then click **Browse** for the first file. The S8300 displays the Choose File window, which allows you to select files from your laptop.
- 4 Browse to the *tarfiles* directory on the CD (or to where the .tar files are stored on your laptop). Double-click the filename of the .tar file for the upgrade software (for example, S8300-02.0-00.0.219.1.tar or S8300msg-02.0-00.0.219.1.tar if using IA770). You need only one .tar file for the upgrade software.
- 5 Repeat the previous two steps for each additional file that you want to upload. (For example, the latest software update file, if any).
- 6 Click **Download**.

When the files are successfully transferred, the system displays the Download Files Results screen with the following message: "The following files have been successfully uploaded to the server."





**CAUTION:**

At this point you are finished with the software CD-ROM. *Remove the CD from your laptop now* to avoid possible problems the next time your laptop is rebooted.

## Upgrade the S8300

---

This section describes the procedures to upgrade the S8300 Media Server from Release 2.0 of Communication Manager to a later release. To upgrade from a pre-2.0 release to 2.0, use the procedures in [Chapter 5, “Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R1.x to R2.0”](#).

### Install the Upgrade Software

#### Using the Wizard

You can complete the tasks in this section manually, as described. However, these tasks can be completed most efficiently by using the Avaya Installation Wizard or the Upgrade Tool. If the S8300 is a primary controller, use the Installation Wizard. If the S8300 is one of several LSPs controlled by the same primary controller, use the Upgrade Tool.

To use the Installation Wizard, go to the Integrated Management main menu and click Launch Avaya Installation Wizard. To use the Upgrade Tool, go to the Integrated Management main menu and click Launch Avaya Upgrade Tool.

#### Manual Installation

If you are not using the Avaya Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool, follow the steps in this section to upgrade the S8300 to the most recent load of software.



#### CAUTION:

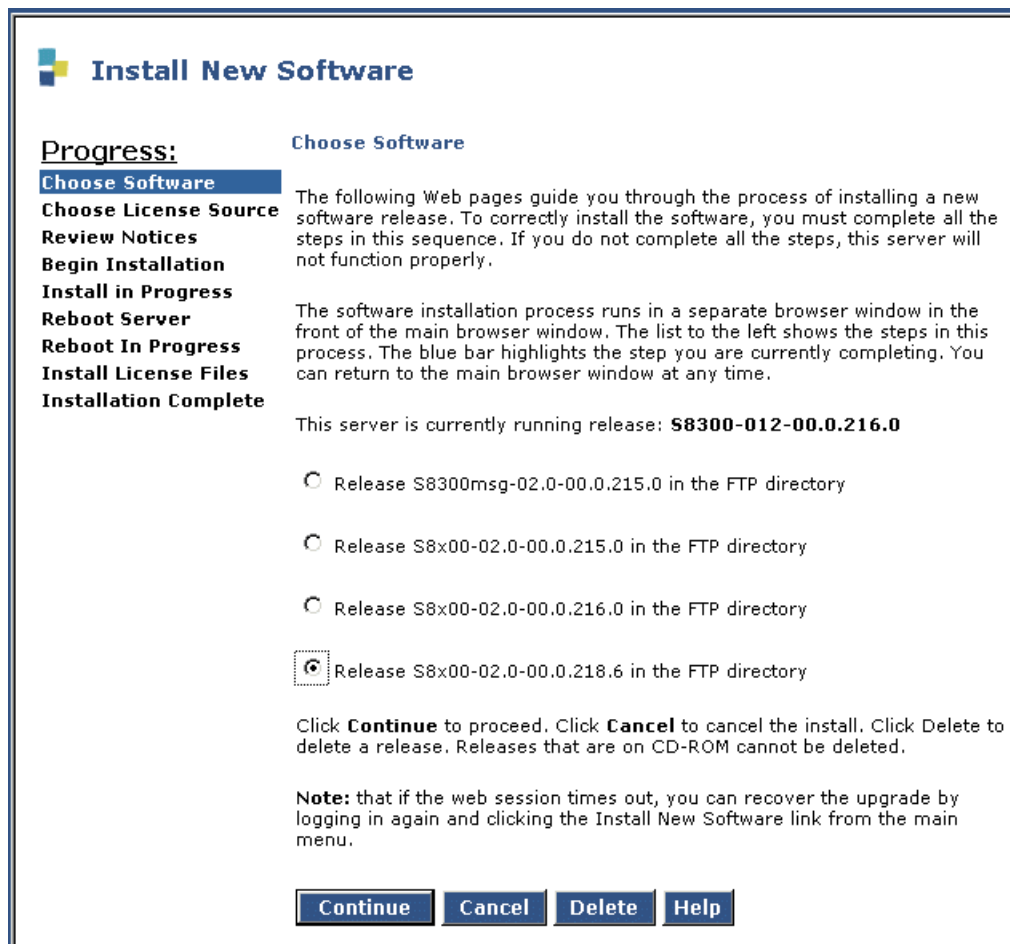
For a new installation, be sure to set the time and time zone before installing the S8300 software. Failure to do so may cause network problems.

#### Install New Software

- 1 Launch the Maintenance Web Interface.
- 2 Choose **Install New Software** under Server Upgrades from the left pane of the main menu.

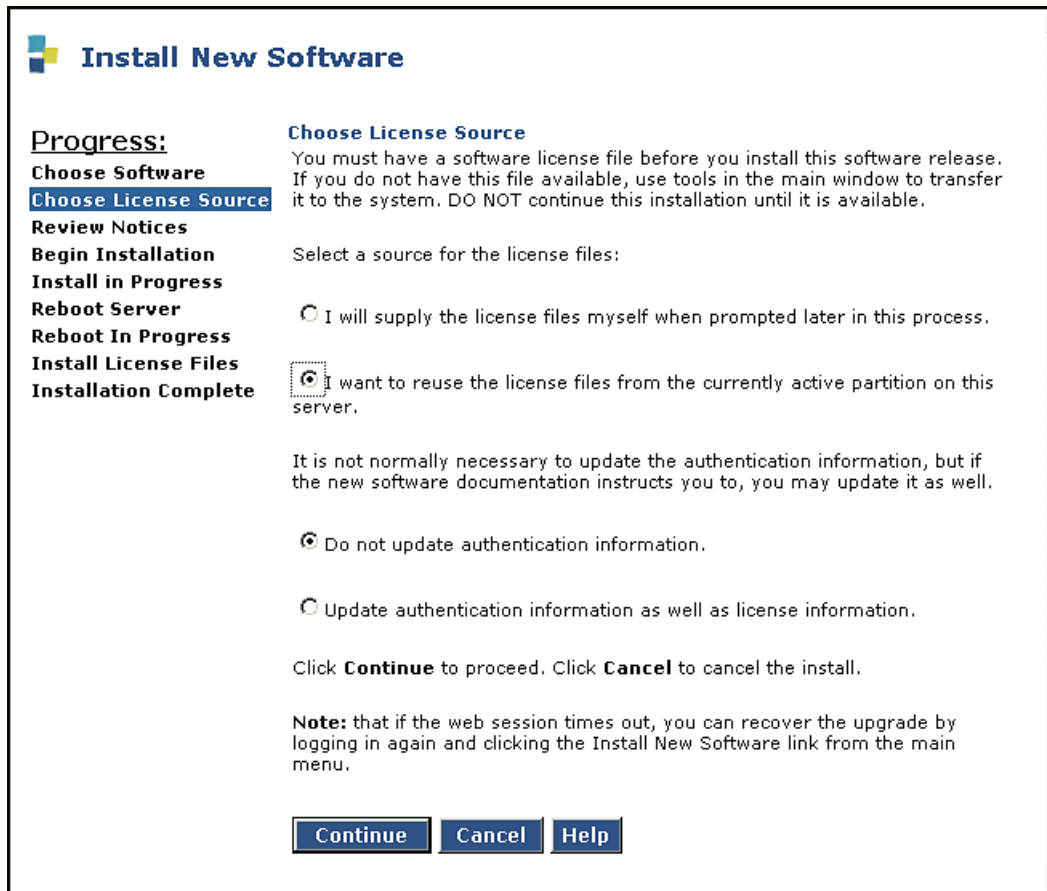
The S8300 displays the Install New Software screen.

Choose Software Screen



- 3 On the Choose Software screen, select the software release number that you want to install (for example, the release listed in your planning documentation). Click **Continue**.  
The S8300 displays the Choose License Source screen.

### Choose License Source Screen

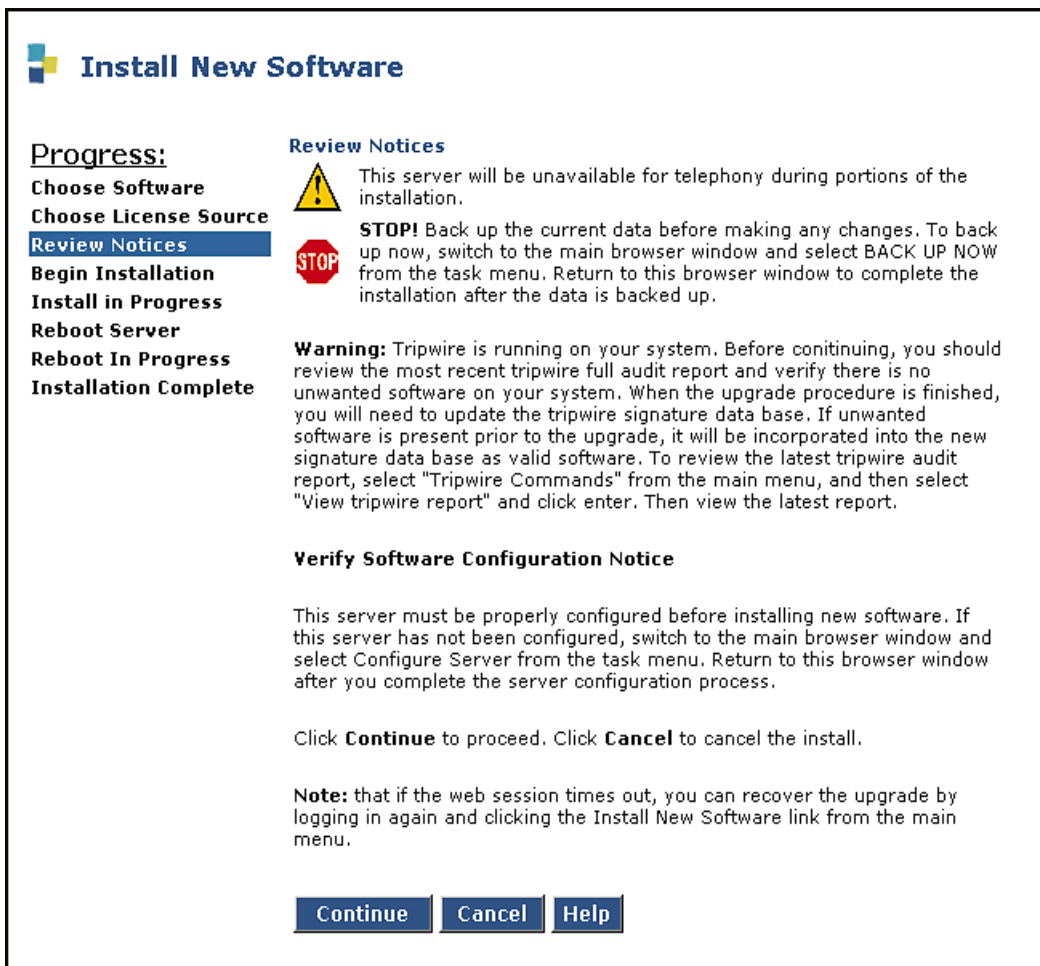


- 4 If you have installed the license and authentication files, select the following:
- I want to reuse the license files from the currently active partition on this server.
  - Do not update authentication information.

For a normal installation, the license and authentication files should have been installed at this point. If these files have not been installed, select the following:

- **I will supply the license/authentication files myself when prompted later in this process.**
  - Update authentication information as well as license information.
- 5 Click **Continue**. The system displays the Review Notices screen.

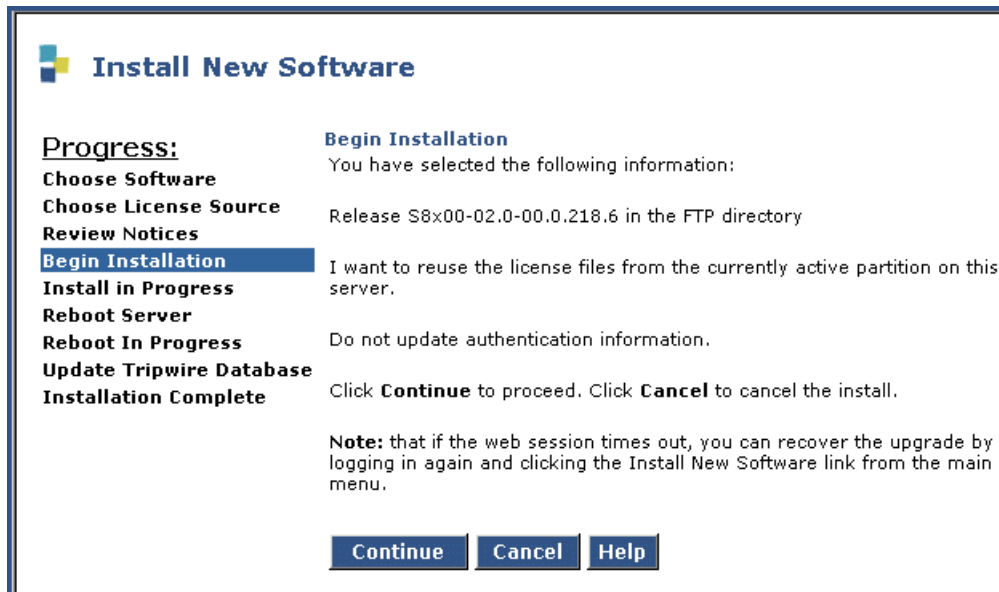
Review Notices Screen



6 For a new installation, or if you previously ran a backup, you do not need to run a backup at this time. If your planning documents instruct you to enable Tripwire, follow the instructions to reset the signature database.

7 Click **Continue**.  
The S8300 displays the Begin Installation screen, which summarizes the request you have made.

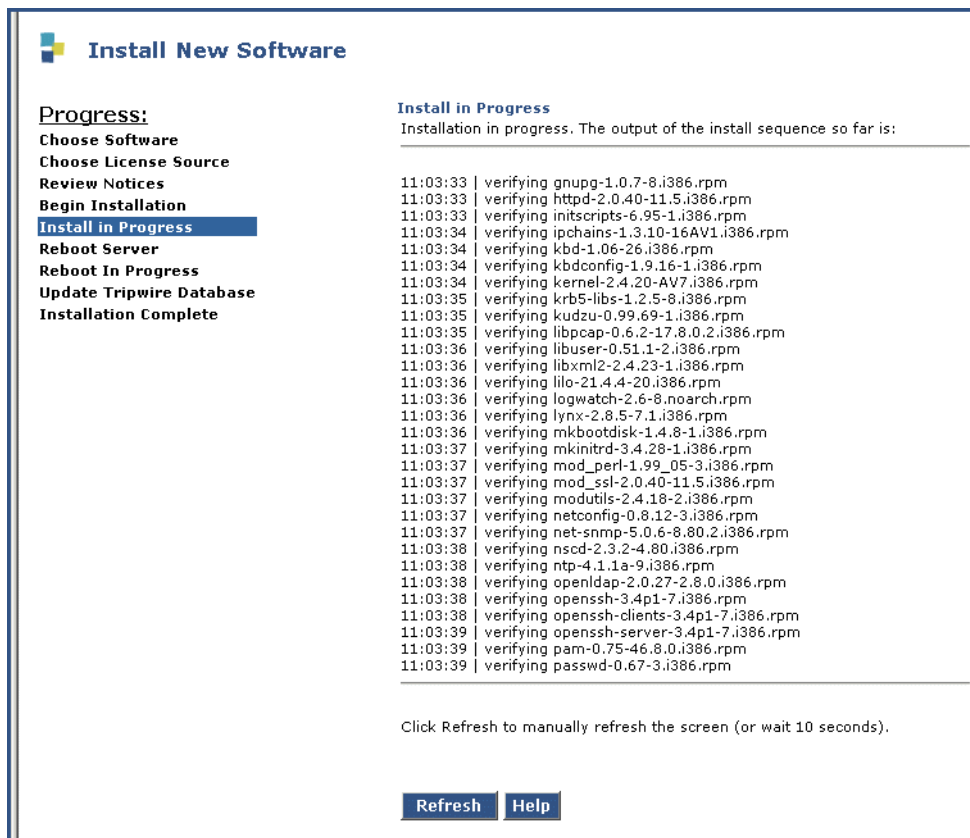
## Begin Installation Screen



8 At the Begin Installation screen, click **Continue**.

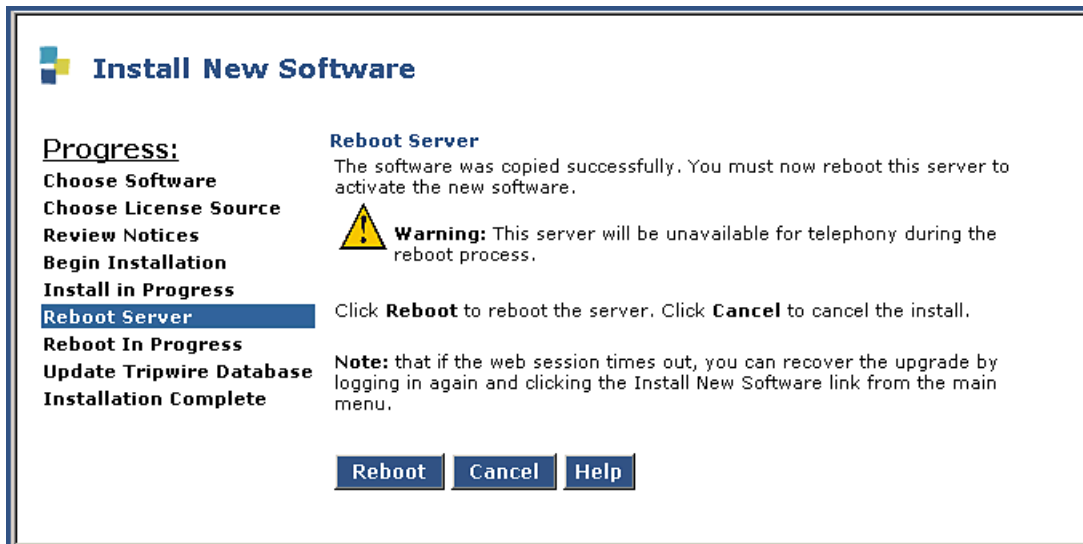
The S8300 displays the Install in Progress screen.

## Install in Progress Screen



- 9 The installation will take approximately 10 to 20 minutes. The Install in Progress screen refreshes every 10 seconds or on demand by clicking the **Refresh** button. When complete, the S8300 displays the Reboot Server screen.

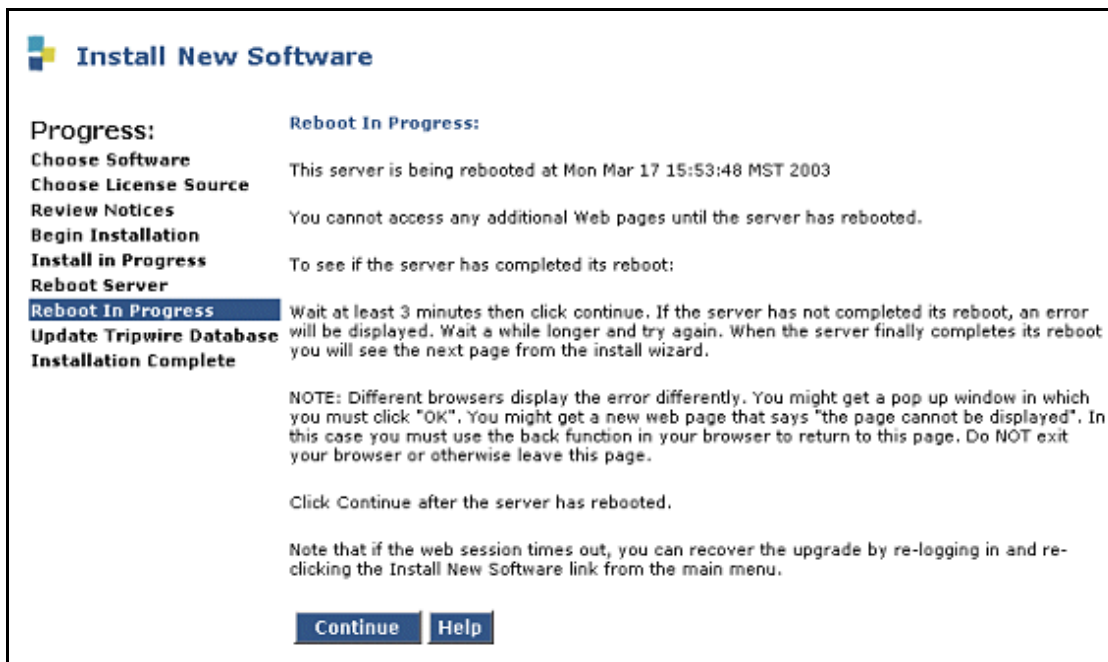
**Reboot Server Window**



- 10 Click **Reboot**.

If IA770 is being used, it may take approximately 5 minutes to shut down IA770 before the reboot begins. The S8300 displays the Reboot in Progress screen.

**Reboot in Progress Screen**



**NOTE:**

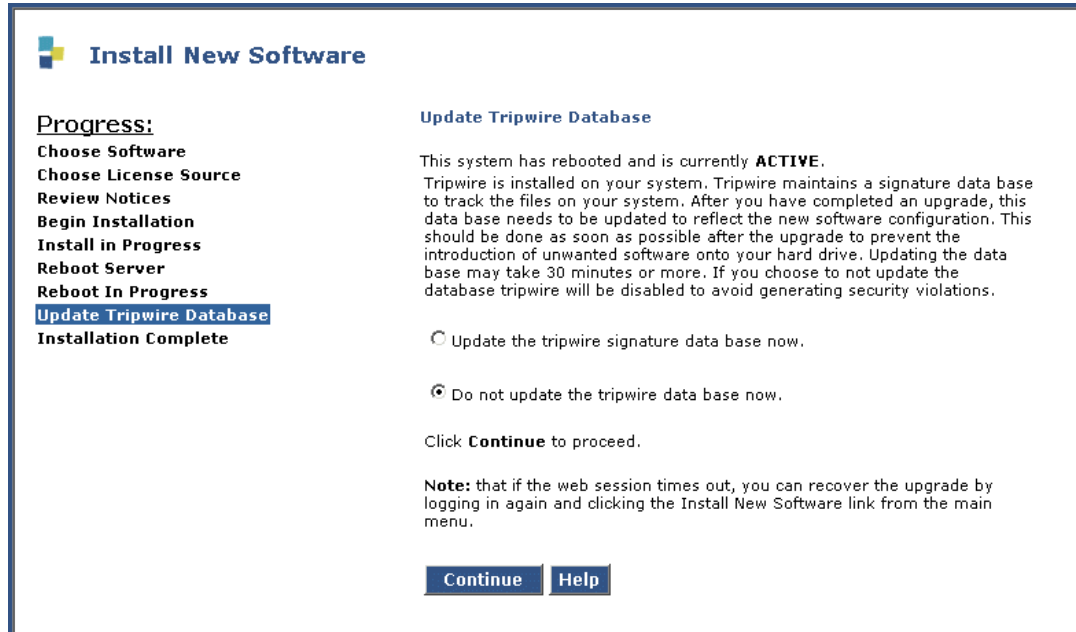
The reboot can take 20 minutes or longer. The system does not automatically tell you when the reboot is complete.

## 6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x Upgrade the S8300

Wait 5 minutes (or about 20 minutes if running IA770) and then click **Continue**. If you click Continue before the reboot is finished, the screen will display "Expired Page." If you see the Expired Page message, refresh the browser. Or, if the Session Timeout screen appears, close the screen, logoff, and log on again. Click the **Pickup** button.

You can also monitor the LEDs on the S8300 for progress on the installation. The Services port jack should have one yellow LED on the left that stays lit. The green LED on the right flashes until the reboot is complete.

- 11 When the reboot is complete, clicking **Continue** will display the Update Tripwire Database screen.

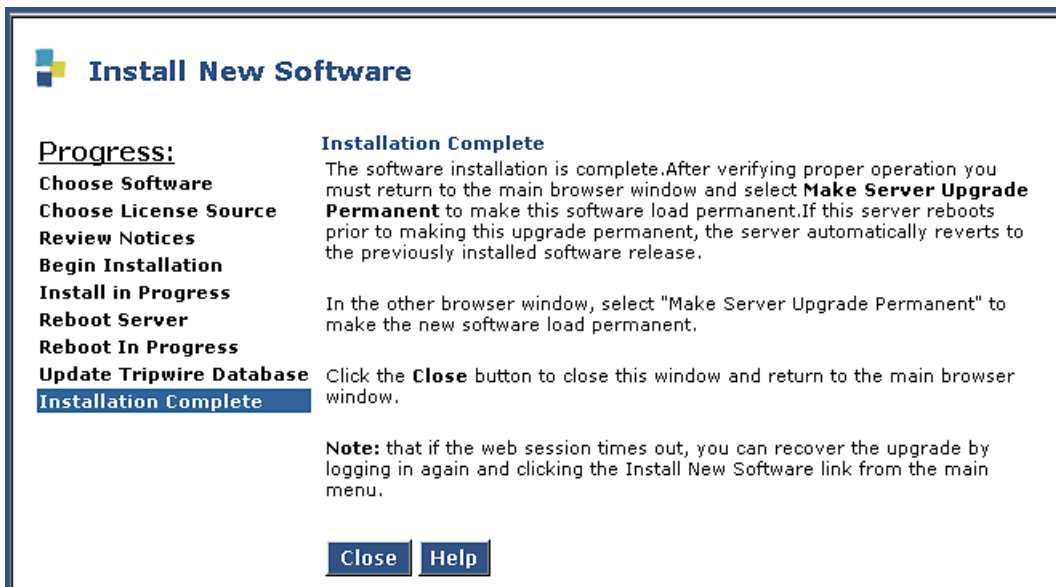


The screenshot shows a web-based installation interface titled "Install New Software". On the left, a "Progress:" section lists several steps: "Choose Software", "Choose License Source", "Review Notices", "Begin Installation", "Install in Progress", "Reboot Server", "Reboot In Progress", "Update Tripwire Database" (which is highlighted with a blue bar), and "Installation Complete". On the right, the "Update Tripwire Database" section contains the following text: "This system has rebooted and is currently **ACTIVE**. Tripwire is installed on your system. Tripwire maintains a signature data base to track the files on your system. After you have completed an upgrade, this data base needs to be updated to reflect the new software configuration. This should be done as soon as possible after the upgrade to prevent the introduction of unwanted software onto your hard drive. Updating the data base may take 30 minutes or more. If you choose to not update the database tripwire will be disabled to avoid generating security violations." Below this text are two radio button options: "Update the tripwire signature data base now." (which is unselected) and "Do not update the tripwire data base now." (which is selected). A note below the options states: "Click **Continue** to proceed." At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Continue" and "Help".

- 12 Unless instructed in your planning documents to update the tripwire database, select "Do not update the tripwire data base now" and click **Continue**.  
The system displays the Installation Complete screen.



## Installation Complete Screen



- 13 Click **Close**. You are returned to the main menu.
- 14 Under Server, click **Software Version** to verify the new software version.

## Make the Upgrade Permanent

### CAUTION:

You must make the upgrade of the software permanent so that the software is recognized and kept on the S8300. If you fail to make software permanent, then the next time you reboot, old software will become active.

- 1 From the S8300 main menu, under Server Upgrades click **Make Upgrade Permanent** .

The S8300 displays the Make Server Upgrade Permanent window.

- 2 Click **Submit**.

When the new S8300 upgrade software is permanent, the S8300 displays the message: The commit operation completed successfully.

## Install Post-Upgrade Communication Manager Update File from Your Laptop, if any

**NOTE:**

Skip this procedure if there is no Communication Manager update file to install.



**CAUTION:**

The software update may or may not be call-preserving.

Use a telnet session to install the software update.

- 1 Click **Start > Run** to open the Run dialog box.
- 2 Type **telnet 192.11.13.6** and press **Enter**.
- 3 Log in with the initial **craft** ID and password. (You cannot use **dadmin** at this point.)
- 4 Type **cd /var/home/ftp/pub** and press **Enter** to access the pub directory.
- 5 At the prompt, type **ls -ltr** and press **Enter** to list files in the pub directory.  
  
The media server displays a list of files in the FTP directory. Verify that the directory contains the Communication Manager .tar.gz file you have uploaded, if any.
- 6 Type **sudo update\_unpack <update>.tar.gz**, where **<update>** is the release or issue number of the latest update file. (For example, **03.0.219.0-4925.tar.gz**). Press **Enter**.
- 7 Type **update\_show** and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was installed.
- 8 Type **sudo update\_activate <update>**, where **<update>** is the release or issue number of the latest software file. (For example, **03.0.219.0-4925**. Do *not* use the .tar.gz extension at the end of the file name). Press **Enter**.  
  
The system may initiate a software reset system 4. You must wait until the restart/reset has completed before entering additional commands.  
  
If the system displays the message — /opt/ecs/sbin/drestart 1 4 command failed — ignore this message.
- 9 Type **update\_show** again and press **Enter** to list Communication Manager files to verify the new software file was applied.

## Install IA770 update (patch) files, if any

If IA770 is being used, a post-upgrade update (patch) for IA770 may be required. See the IA770 documentation for procedures to install an update. The documentation can be found on the Avaya Support Web Site at <http://support.avaya.com>. Then click on **Product Documentation** and then **Messaging** and scroll down to the INTUITY document links.

## Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

---

The tasks in this section can be completed most efficiently by using the Avaya Installation Wizard or the Upgrade Tool. If the S8300 is a primary controller, use the Installation Wizard. If the S8300 is one of several LSPs controlled by the same primary controller, use the Upgrade Tool. Or, in either case, you can complete the tasks manually as described below.

Go to <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw> to download job aids for using the Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool.



### CAUTION:

If the passwords to log on to the P300 stack or the MGP have been changed from the defaults, you must change them back to the original default passwords before using the Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool.

### Using the Installation Wizard

On the Integrated Management main menu, click Launch Avaya Installation Wizard. To use the Installation Wizard to upgrade firmware on the G700, be sure to select the "Upgrade a previously installed Media Server with new software and/or Media Gateway firmware" on the Usage Options screen. The Usage Options screen appears in the Installation Wizard after a few introductory screens.

### Using the Upgrade Tool

On the Integrated Management main menu, click Launch Upgrade Tool. Follow the instruction to upgrade the G700 and media module firmware.

### Manual Upgrade Procedures

If you are using the Avaya Installation Wizard or the Upgrade Tool:

- Skip to [Complete the Upgrade Process \(S8300 is the Primary Controller\)](#) on page 298 if IA770 is being used, or
- Skip to [Complete the Upgrade Process \(S8300 is the Primary Controller\)](#) on page 298 if IA770 is not being used.

If you are not using the Avaya Installation Wizard or Upgrade Tool, conduct the following manual procedures to update the firmware running on the G700 Media Gateway processors and media modules.

#### Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory

Before proceeding with the G700 firmware installation, you should check the tftpboot directory on the TFTP server to make sure the firmware versions match those listed in the planning documentation.

## Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700

Conduct the following procedure to compare software versions running on the G700 processors and media modules with the versions in you planning documents. If the versions do not match, new firmware for those components is necessary.

### *Determine if new firmware for the P330 stack processor is necessary.*

- 1 At either the P330-1(super)# or P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **dir**.

The system displays the list of software.

### Directory List for P300 Processor

M#	file	ver num	file type	file location	file description
1	module-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Module Configuration
1	stack-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Stack Configuration
1	EW_Archive	3.8.6	SW Web Image	NV-Ram	WEB Download
1	Booter_Image	3.2.5	SW BootImage	NV-Ram	Booter Image

- 2 Check the version number (ver num) of the EW\_Archive file to see if it matches the Release Letter. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.
- 3 Type **show image version**

The system displays the list of software.

### Show Image Version List for P330 Processor

Mod	Module-Type	Bank	Version
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	A	0.0.0
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	B	3.9.0

- 4 Check the version number of the stack software image file in Band B to see if it matches the your planning document. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.

### *Determine if new firmware is required for the MGP, VoIP Module, and installed media modules.*

- 1 Type **session mgp**
- 2 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The system displays the list of software.

### Show MG List\_Config

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	210 (B)	2
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	52	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	12	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	54	N/A

- Refer to the list to check the FW vintage number of the G700. In the TYPE column, find G700, then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the vintage number in your planning forms. If not, you must install new firmware on the G700 Media Gateway. Also check if the release number in the FW VINTAGE column contains (A) or (B) to designate the software bank. If the list shows B, you will upgrade A. If the list shows A, you will upgrade B.
- Refer to the VOIP FW column and row for slot V0 (same row occupied by the G700 information) to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in your planning forms. If not, you must also upgrade the G700 Media Gateway motherboard VoIP module.

**NOTE:**

The VoIP processor on the motherboard is upgraded using the same firmware image file as the VoIP media modules; for example, the file mm760v8.fdl is vintage #8.

- Check the FW VINTAGE column for vintages of each of the installed Media Modules: MM710, MM711, MM712, MM720, and/or MM760 to see if they match the FW vintages in the planning forms. If not, you must upgrade them, as well.

## Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor

### Install P330 stack processor firmware

- From your S8300 telnet session, telnet back to the P330 stack processor:  
Type **telnet <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>**, where <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> is the IP address of the P330 stack master processor on the customer's LAN.
- At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type  
**copy tftp SW\_image <file> EW\_archive <ew\_file> <tftp\_server\_address> <Module#>**  
where  
<file> is the full-path name for the image file with format and vintage number similar to viisa3\_8\_2.exe,  
  
<ew\_file> is the full-path name for the embedded web application file with format similar to p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe,  
  
<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and

## 6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x

Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

<Module#> is the number, 1 through 10, of the media gateway in the stack. If there is only one G700 Media Gateway, the number is 1.

- To verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns:
  - type **show image version <module #>** and check the version number in the Version column for Bank B.
  - type **dir <module #>** and check the version number in the ver num column for the EW\_Archive file.
- Type **reset <module #>**

### Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor

#### Install MGP firmware

- At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp** to reach the G700 Media Gateway processor.
- Type **configure** at the MG-??-1(super)# prompt to enter configuration mode, which will change the prompt to MG-??-1(configure)#.
- At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mgp bootimage** to determine which disk partition (bank) is in the Active Now column. You will update the bank that is *not* listed as Active Now. The system displays the following screen:

#### Example: Show mgp bootimage

<u>FLASH MEMORY</u>	<u>IMAGE VERSION</u>
Bank A	109
Bank B	210
<u>ACTIVE NOW</u>	<u>ACTIVE AFTER REBOOT</u>
Bank B	Bank B

- At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp mgp-image <bank> <filename> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** to transfer the mgp image from the tftp server to the G700, where
  - <bank> is the bank that is *not* Active Now (Bank A in the example).
  - <filename> is the full path name of the mgp firmware image file, which begins with mgp and will be similar to the name mgp\_8\_0.bin.
  - <tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the S8300. See the following example:  
copy tftp mgp-image a mgp\_8\_0.bin 195.123.49.54.  
The screen will show the progress.
- Type **set mgp bootimage <bank>** where <bank> is the same letter you entered in the previous step.

- 6 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 7 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 8 When the P330-1(super)# prompt appears, type **session mgp**.
- 9 At the MGP-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure**.
- 10 Verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns.  
Type **show mg list\_config**. The system displays the list of software.

**Example: Show mg list\_config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230 (A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

**Install New Firmware on the Media Modules**

For upgrades of active media modules, you need to take the media modules out of service before initiating the upgrade process. To do this, go to a SAT session on the primary controller and issue a busyout command.

**NOTE:**

Skip this busyout procedure if the media modules are not in service; for example during an initial installation.

**Busyout board (for active media modules)**

- 1 Go to a SAT session on the primary controller and enter the command, **busyout board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the media module to be upgraded.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.
- 3 Repeat for each media module to be upgraded.

**Install media module firmware**

- 1 Be sure that you have checked for the current vintage of the VoIP Module for the v0 slot (on the G700 motherboard) (see [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#)). This VoIP module does not occupy a physical position like other Media Modules.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.

**6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x**  
Upgrade the Firmware on the G700

- 3 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.
- 4 Type **copy tftp mm-image v<slot #> <filename mm> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>**  
where <slot #> is the slot of the specific media module as identified when you performed [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#).

<filename mm> the full-path name of the media module firmware file in a format such mm712v58.fdl, and

<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the ip address of the S8300.

Two or three minutes will be required for most upgrades. The VoIP Media Module upgrade takes approximately 5 minutes. Screen messages indicate when the transfer is complete.

- 5 After you have upgraded all the media modules, verify that the new versions are present. At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The list of software appears

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230(A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

- 6 In the TYPE column, find the particular media module (v1 through v4), then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the planning documentation. Note that slot V1 can contain either a media module or the S8300, which will show as Type "ICC".
- 7 Check the VOIP FW column and row for slot v0 to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in the planning documentation.
- 8 Type **reset <module #>** where <module #> is the number of the G700 in the stack.
- 9 When the reset is finished, type **show mm** to verify the upgrade.

**Release board (if media module was busied out)**

- 1 When the upgrade procedure is complete, go to the SAT session and release the board: type **release board vx** where x is the slot number of the upgraded media module.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.

**NOTE:**

If you see the response, Board Not Inserted, this means that the media module is still rebooting. Wait one minute and repeat the **release board** command.

- 3 Repeat the **release board** command for each media module that was busied out.



## Install New Firmware on Other G700 Media Gateways

### Stack Configuration

If the customer has multiple G700 media gateways connected in an IP stack, you can stay connected to the master G700/P330 and "session" over from the master P330 stack processor to the next G700 in the stack. If you are dialed in remotely, you should have automatically dialed in to the stack master. For a local installation, you should have plugged your laptop into the stack master P330, which you can identify by the LED panel on the upper left of each G700 or P330 device in the stack. The LEDs signal as follows:

- On the G700 Media Gateway: a lit **MSTR** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.
- On the P330 device: a lit **SYS** LED indicates that this unit is the stack master.

The G700 and P330 at the bottom of the stack is module number 1, the next module up is number 2, and so on. However, the stack master can be any module in the stack, depending on the actual model, the vintage firmware it runs, and whether the S8300 is inserted into it.

#### NOTE:

You do not need to configure the other P330 stack processors in the stack. These will use the IP address and IP route of the master stack processor. However, you will need to check firmware on all devices of the other G700s in the stack, including the media gateways themselves, and update the firmware as required.

You may also use the "session stack" command to access other standalone P330 processors in the stack (those that are not part of a G700 unit).

- 1 At the MG-001-1(configure)# prompt, type **session stack**  
 The P330-1(configure)# prompt appears.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session <mod\_num> mgp**  
 <mod\_num> is the next P330 processor in the stack. If you are currently logged in to the master stack processor, <mod\_num> would be **2**, for the second G700/P330 processor in the stack.
- 3 For other G700s in the stack, repeat the steps described previously to install firmware for the stack processor, MGP, and media modules.

### Remote, No Stack Configuration

If additional G700 media gateways are supported in the configuration, but they are not attached as a stack, then you must configure each G700, with all of its devices, including the P330 processors. Additionally, you must check firmware and update the firmware as required.

## Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)

---

Telnet to the S8300 (primary controller) and open a SAT session to complete the following procedures.

### Check Media Modules

- 1 Type **list configuration all** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Verify that the software is communicating with all media modules and that all media modules are listed in the reports.
- 3 Make test telephone calls to verify that Communication Manager is working.

### Enable Scheduled Maintenance

- 1 Type **change system-parameters maintenance** and press **Enter**.
- 2 Ensure that the `Start Time` and `Stop Time` fields' administration is the same as before the upgrade.

### Busy Out Trunks

- 1 Busy out trunks that were busied out before the upgrade (see [Record All Busyouts](#)).

### Check for Translation Corruption

- 1 Type **newterm** and press **Enter**.  
If you do not get a login prompt and see the following message:  
Warning: Translation corruption detected  
follow the normal escalation procedure for translation corruption before continuing the upgrade.

### Resolve Alarms

- 1 On the Maintenance Web Interface, under Alarms click **Current Alarms** to examine the alarm log.
- 2 If any alarms are listed, click **Clear All**.
- 3 Resolve new alarms since the upgrade through Communication Manager using the appropriate maintenance book.

### Re-enable Alarm Origination

- 1 Telnet to the S8300 and log on.
- 2 At the command prompt, type **almenable -d b -s y**, where

- d b** sets the dialout option to *both* (numbers)
- s y** enables SNMP alarm origination
- 3 Type **almenable** (without any options) to verify that alarm origination status.

## Back up the System

Using the Maintenance Web Interface, back up the system as you did before the upgrade selecting Save Translations and all backup sets.

## Restart LSPs (if any)

To restart Communication Manager on the LSP after the upgrade:

- 1 Open a Telnet session on the S8300 (LSP).
- 2 At the command line, type **start -ac** and press **Enter**.

This completes the upgrade process for a G700 with an S8300.

**6 Upgrading an Existing G700 with an S8300 — R2.0 to R2.x**  
Complete the Upgrade Process (S8300 is the Primary Controller)

# 7 Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300

This chapter covers the procedures to upgrade the firmware on an existing Avaya G700 Media Gateway without an Avaya S8300 Media Server. The G700 is controlled by an external primary server running Avaya Communication Manger. The primary server can be an Avaya S8500 or S8700 Media Server or an S8300 residing in another G700.

**NOTE:**

Procedures to install or upgrade an S8500 or S8700 Media Server are not covered in this document. See *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library*, which is on the Avaya Support website (<http://www.avaya.com/support>) or on the CD, 555-233-825.

**NOTE:**

The Upgrade Tool performs the following tasks automatically: [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#) and [Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway](#).

## Upgrade Overview

---

### System Components

#### G700 components

A P330 stack processor is built into the G700 Media Gateway. (This processor is also known as the *Layer 2 switching processor*). The G700 also contains an MGP processor, a VoIP processor, up to four media modules, and possibly an expansion module. Installing the firmware for one or more of these processors and/or media modules is a required part of most new installations.

#### Firmware files

You should obtain the firmware files for the G700 before going on-site. You can obtain the firmware files in bundled form on a CD or you can go to the Avaya Support website and download the individual firmware files onto your services laptop.

#### TFTP Server

To install firmware on a G700 without an S8300 or LSP, you must first copy the firmware files to an external TFTP server on the customer LAN. The TFTP server can be a customer computer or it can be set up on your services laptop.

## System Access

### Access to the G700

See "Connection and Login Methods" in Chapter 1 for details on how to connect and log into the G700. You can access the G700 in several ways.

#### *Direct connections*

- 1** If you are at the location of the primary server, you can connect directly to the Services port on the server and:
  - Open the Web Interface and use the Upgrade Tool.
  - Or, telnet to the server and then telnet to the P330 stack processor
- 2** If you are at the location of the G700, you can connect directly to the G700 Console port and open a Hyperterm session to access the P330 stack processor.

For direct connections, the TFTP server must be on the Customer LAN, not on your laptop.

#### *LAN connections*

If you can connect to the customer's LAN, you can:

- 1** Use your Internet Explorer browser to access the Web Interface on the primary server and use the Upgrade Tool.
- 2** Telnet to the P330 stack processor and perform the installation commands.

For LAN connections the TFTP server can be your laptop or a customer computer on the LAN.

# Before Going to the Customer Site

---

## Off-site Tasks

### Get Planning Forms from the Project Manager

The project manager should provide you with forms that contain all the information needed to prepare for this installation. The information primarily consists of IP addresses, subnet mask addresses, logins, passwords, people to contact, the type of system, and equipment you need to install.

Verify that the information provided by the project manager includes all the information requested in your planning forms.



#### Tip:

Appendix B, Information Checklists, provides several checklists to help you gather the installation and upgrade information.

### Get the Serial Number of the G700, if Necessary

For an upgrade of an existing G700, the existing license file can usually be reused. However, if the customer is adding feature functionality (for example, adding BRI trunks), or if the upgrade is between major releases (for example, 1.3 to 2.0), you will need the serial number of the G700. To get this number, ask the customer's administrator to log in to the S8300 web page and select **View License Status** from the main menu to display the serial number.

For a new installation, you need the serial number of the G700 Media Gateway in order to complete the creation of the customer's license file on the rfa.avaya.com web site. To get this number, look for the serial number sticker on the back of the G700 chassis. If the unit is delivered directly to the customer and you will not have phone or LAN line access from the customer site to access the rfa.avaya.com web site, this task will require a preliminary trip to the customer site.

### Set Up the TFTP Server on Your Laptop or on a Customer PC, if Necessary

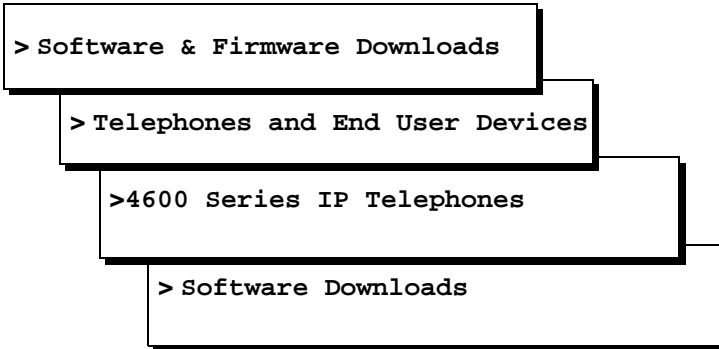
A tar.gz file, which you obtain from a CD-ROM or a website, contains new G700 software. To load this software on a G700 Media Gateway, you must place this tar.gz file either on your laptop or on a PC connected to the customer's LAN. Later, you will log in to the G700 and use its TFTP capability to pull the new software from your laptop or the customer's PC. As a result, either the customer must configure a TFTP server on a PC connected to the customer's LAN or you, the installer, must set up your laptop as a TFTP server and later connect it to the customer's LAN.

#### NOTE:

A Linux or Unix TFTP server should be used only if the customer already has an existing one. In these cases, you download the tar.gz file to your laptop and give it to the customer for proper placement and execution.

## 7 Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300 Before Going to the Customer Site

- 1 On the hard drive of your laptop or the customer's PC, create a directory into which you will load the G700 software. It is recommended that you create a directory called C:\tftp.
- 2 Connect to the LAN using a browser on your laptop or the customer's PC and access [http:// www.avaya.com/support](http://www.avaya.com/support) on the Internet.
- 3 At the Avaya support site, select the following sequence of menu options:



- 4 Double-click on one of the links listed with "TFTP Server"; for example, **4630 IP Telephone R 1.73 and TFTP Server**.
- 5 Scroll to bottom of page to find the TFTP Server Application file, `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe`.
- 6 Double-click on the program and download it to your laptop or the customer PC that will serve as the TFTP server. Remember where the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` file is installed on your laptop or PC and write it down.
- 7 You may also wish to download and view or print the file `iptel.pdf`, which provides instructions on installing the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` for Windows servers.
- 8 After downloading the `iptel_avaya_tftp.exe` file to the PC, double-click it and follow instructions to install it. By default, the installation program creates the directory, `C:\Program Files\Walusoft\TFTPSuite` that contains the application files.
- 9 When the file has been installed, go to the directory where the software was installed and double-click the file `tftpserver32.exe` to open the program.

The TFTP Server window appears. It reflects the IP address of the PC in the upper border, plus port 69.

- 10 Enable the TFTP server as follows:
  - Click on System from menu bar and select setup.
  - The server option window appears.
  - Select the Outbound tab, and enter `C:\tftp` - (or your alternate tftp location) for the outbound file path.
  - Under Options tab, enter **69** in the Use Port field (default).
  - Select **No Incoming** (default). However, if you wish to copy files as a backup prior to performing an upgrade of software, leave this field unchecked.
  - Select the Inbound tab, and enter `C:\tftp` (or your alternate tftp location) for the inbound file path.
  - Click **OK**.



## Download G700 Firmware Files to Your TFTP Directory

To install new firmware for the G700 processors and the media modules, you first need to move the new firmware files to a directory on the TFTP server. The installation program reads the new firmware files from this directory on the TFTP server.

Perform one of the two procedures in this section, depending on whether you have a bundled tar.gz file on a CD or wish to download individual firmware files from the Avaya Support website.

### For a Bundled Firmware File

**NOTE:**

Your laptop (or the customer's PC) must have WinZip or other file zipping software for this procedure.

#### *Copy the tar.gz File from CD-ROM to Your TFTP Directory and Unzip It*

- 1 Insert the G700 software CD into your laptop or PC CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to access the files on the CD-ROM drive.
- 3 Copy the tar.gz file (G700-11.3-0009.0.tar.gz or similar identifier) to the C:\tftp directory (or your alternate tftp location).
- 4 Use winZIP or another zipfile tool to unzip the file. You may need to unzip an additional tar.gz file embedded in the original file. You should continue to unzip tar.gz files until you see listed files with extensions as shown in the table "Firmware File Formats" below.

### For Individual Firmware Files

#### *Download the Firmware Files from the Web to Your TFTP Directory*

**NOTE:**

The sequence of links on the website may be somewhat different than described here.

- 1 Access the [www.avaya.com/support](http://www.avaya.com/support) website.
- 2 At the Avaya support site, click on **Software & Firmware Downloads** and then click on the following sequence:

> **G700 Media Gateway & S8300 Media Server.**

> **Firmware Downloads**

> **G700 Firmware Downloads.**

The system displays a list of firmware files.

- 3 Locate the file names that match the files listed in your planning documentation. The file names will approximate those listed in the following table:

## 7 Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300

Before Going to the Customer Site

### *Firmware File Formats*

<b>Component</b>	<b>Firmware Version Format</b>	<b>Example</b>
P330 Stack Processor	viisa<version id>	viisa3_12_1.exe
P330 Stack Processor	p330<version id>	p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe
G700 Media Gateway	mgp<version id>	mgp_8_0.bin
VoIP Media Module and Motherboard VoIP	mm760<version id>	mm760v3.fdl
DCP Media Module	mm712<version id>	mm712v2.fdl
Analog Port/Trunk Media Module	mm711<version id>	mm711v4.fdl
E1/T1 Media Module	mm710<version id>	mm710v3.fdl
BRI Media Module	mm720<version id>	mm720v2.fdl

- 4** Double-click the file name.  
The system displays a File Download window.
- 5** Click on **Save this file to disk**.
- 6** Save the file to the C:\tftp directory (or your alternate tftp location).
- 7** Use Winzip or another zip file tool to unzip the file, if necessary.

## On-Site Preparation for the Upgrade

---

Before installing new firmware on the G700 processors and medial modules you need to:

- Have the firmware loaded onto a TFTP server
- Determine which G700 components need new firmware

as described in this section.

### Access the P330 Stack Processor

See [Connection and Login Methods](#) on page 45 for details on how to set up a connection and login.

Log on to the P330 stack processor using one of the following methods:

- Using a LAN connection, telnet to the IP address of the P330 stack processor and log in.
- If you are *not* using your laptop as the TFTP server, you can connect your Laptop directly to the G700 Console (Serial) Port. Then use HyperTerm or a similar terminal emulation application to log in to the P330 stack processor Command Line Interface.

You are now logged-in at the Supervisor level with prompt `P330-1(super)#`.

### Verify the Contents of the tftpboot Directory

Before proceeding with the G700 firmware installation, you should check the tftpboot directory on the TFTP server to make sure the firmware versions match those listed in the planning documentation.

### Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700

Conduct the following procedure to compare software versions running on the G700 processors and media modules with the versions in you planning documents. If the versions do not match, new firmware for those components is necessary.

***Determine if new firmware for the P330 stack processor is necessary.***

- 1** At either the `P330-1(super)#` or `P330-1(configure)#` prompt, type **dir**.

The system displays the list of software.

**Directory List for P300 Processor**

M#	file	ver num	file type	file location	file description
1	module-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Module Configuration
1	stack-config	N/A	Running Conf	Ram	Stack Configuration
1	EW_Archive	3.8.6	SW Web Image	NV-Ram	WEB Download
1	Booter_Image	3.2.5	SW BootImage	NV-Ram	Booter Image

- 2** Check the version number (ver num) of the EW\_Archive file to see if it matches the Release Letter. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.
- 3** Type **show image version**

The system displays the list of software.

**Show Image Version List for P330 Processor**

Mod	Module-Type	Bank	Version
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	A	0.0.0
3	Avaya G700 Media Gateway	B	3.9.0

- 4** Check the version number of the stack software image file in Band B to see if it matches the your planning document. If not, you must upgrade the P330 stack processor.

**Determine if new firmware is required for the MGP, VoIP Module, and installed media modules.**

- 1** Type **session mgp**
- 2** At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The system displays the list of software.

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	210 (B)	2
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	52	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	12	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	54	N/A

- 3** Refer to the list to check the FW vintage number of the G700. In the TYPE column, find G700, then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the vintage number in your planning forms. If not, you must install new firmware on the G700 Media

Gateway. Also check if the release number in the FW VINTAGE column contains (A) or (B) to designate the software bank. If the list shows B, you will upgrade A. If the list shows A, you will upgrade B.

- 4 Refer to the VOIP FW column and row for slot V0 (same row occupied by the G700 information) to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in your planning forms. If not, you must also upgrade the G700 Media Gateway motherboard VoIP module.

**NOTE:**

The VoIP processor on the motherboard is upgraded using the same firmware image file as the VoIP media modules; for example, the file mm760v8.fdl is vintage #8.

- 5 Check the FW VINTAGE column for vintages of each of the installed Media Modules: MM710, MM711, MM712, MM720, and/or MM760 to see if they match the FW vintages in the planning forms. If not, you must upgrade them, as well.

## Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway

---

**NOTE:**

The Upgrade Tool performs this task automatically.

Follow the procedures in this section to install firmware on the G700 processors and media modules

### Firmware Installation Procedures

#### Install New Firmware on the P330 Stack Processor

*Install P330 stack processor firmware*

- 1 Access the P330 stack processor.
- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type  
**copy tftp SW\_image <file> EW\_archive <ew\_file> <tftp\_server\_address> <Module#>**  
where  
<file> is the full-path name for the image file with format and vintage number similar to viisa3\_8\_2.exe,  
  
<ew\_file> is the full-path name for the embedded web application file with format similar to p330Tweb.3.8.6.exe,  
  
<tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and  
  
<Module#> is the number, 1 through 10, of the media gateway in the stack. If there is only one G700 Media Gateway, the number is 1.
- 2 To verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns:
  - type **show image version <module #>** and check the version number in the Version column for Bank B.
  - type **dir <module #>** and check the version number in the ver num column for the EW\_Archive file.
- 3 Type **reset <module #>**

#### Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway Processor

*Install MGP firmware*

- 1 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp** to reach the G700 Media Gateway processor.
- 2 Type **configure** at the MG-???-1(super)# prompt to enter configuration mode, which will change the prompt to MG-???-1(configure)#.

- 3 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mgp bootimage** to determine which disk partition (bank) is in the Active Now column. You will update the bank that is *not* listed as Active Now. The system displays the following screen:

**Example: Show mgp bootimage**

<u>FLASH MEMORY</u>	<u>IMAGE VERSION</u>
Bank A	109
Bank B	210
<u>ACTIVE NOW</u>	<u>ACTIVE AFTER REBOOT</u>
Bank B	Bank B

- 4 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **copy tftp mgp-image <bank> <filename> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** to transfer the mgp image from the tftp server to the G700, where
  - <bank> is the bank that is *not* Active Now (Bank A in the example).
  - <filename> is the full path name of the mgp firmware image file, which begins with mgp and will be similar to the name mgp\_8\_0.bin.
  - <tftp\_server\_ip\_address> is the IP address of the S8300. See the following example:  
copy tftp mgp-image a mgp\_8\_0.bin 195.123.49.54.
  - The screen will show the progress.
- 5 Type **set mgp bootimage <bank>** where <bank> is the same letter you entered in the previous step.
- 6 At the MG-???-1(configure)# prompt, type **reset mgp**.  
A system prompt asks to confirm the reset.
- 7 Select **Yes** at the dialog box that asks if you want to continue.  
The G700 Media Gateway processor will reset. The LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway and the Media Modules will flash. These elements will each conduct a series of self-tests. When the LEDs on the Media Modules are extinguished and the active status LEDs on the G700 Media Gateway are on, the reset is complete.
- 8 When the P330-1(super)# prompt appears, type **session mgp**.
- 9 At the MGP-???-1(super)# prompt, type **configure**.
- 10 Verify that the download was successful when the prompt returns.  
Type **show mg list\_config**. The system displays the list of software.

**Example: Show mg list\_config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230 (A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

**Install New Firmware on the Media Modules**

For upgrades of active media modules, you need to take the media modules out of service before initiating the upgrade process. To do this, go to a SAT session on the primary controller and issue a busyout command.

**NOTE:**

Skip this busyout procedure if the media modules are not in service; for example during an initial installation.

**Busyout board (for active media modules)**

- 1 Go to a SAT session on the primary controller and enter the command, **busyout board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the media module to be upgraded.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.
- 3 Repeat for each media module to be upgraded.

**Install media module firmware**

- 1 Be sure that you have checked for the current vintage of the VoIP Module for the v0 slot (on the G700 motherboard) (see [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#)). This VoIP module does not occupy a physical position like other Media Modules.
- 2 At the P330-1(configure)# prompt, type **session mgp**.
- 3 At the MG-001-1(super)# prompt, type **configure** to change to the configuration mode.
- 4 Type **copy tftp mm-image v<slot #> <filename mm> <tftp\_server\_ip\_address>** where *<slot #>* is the slot of the specific media module as identified when you performed [Determine Which Firmware to Install on the G700](#),

*<filename mm>* the full-path name of the media module firmware file in a format such mm712v58.fdl, and

*<tftp\_server\_ip\_address>* is the ip address of the S8300.

Two or three minutes will be required for most upgrades. The VoIP Media Module upgrade takes approximately 5 minutes. Screen messages indicate when the transfer is complete.



- 5 After you have upgraded all the media modules, verify that the new versions are present. At the MG-??-1(configure)# prompt, type **show mg list\_config**

The list of software appears

**Show MG List\_Config**

SLOT	TYPE	CODE	SUFFIX	HW VINTAGE	FW VINTAGE	VOIP FW
V0	G700	DAF1	A	00	230(A)	67
V1	ICC	S8300	A	72	00	N/A
V2	DCP	MM712	A	2	58	N/A
V3	ANA	MM711	A	2	57	N/A
V4	DS1	MM710	A	1	58	N/A

- 6 In the TYPE column, find the particular media module (v1 through v4), then check the matching field in the FW VINTAGE column to see if it matches the planning documentation. Note that slot V1 can contain either a media module or the S8300, which will show as Type "ICC".
- 7 Check the VOIP FW column and row for slot v0 to see if the number matches the VoIP firmware identified in the planning documentation.
- 8 Type **reset <module #>** where <module #> is the number of the G700 in the stack.
- 9 When the reset is finished, type **show mm** to verify the upgrade.

**Release board (if media module was busied out)**

- 1 When the upgrade procedure is complete, go to the SAT session and release the board: type **release board vx** where *x* is the slot number of the upgraded media module.
- 2 Verify the response, Command Successfully Completed.

**NOTE:**

If you see the response, Board Not Inserted, this means that the media module is still rebooting. Wait one minute and repeat the **release board** command.

- 3 Repeat the **release board** command for each media module that was busied out.

This completes the firmware upgrade procedures.

**7 Upgrading an Existing G700 without an S8300**  
Install New Firmware on the G700 Media Gateway

# 8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems

To administer dial plans and trunks and other features, you will use Avaya Communication Manager, as usual. Consult the *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-506.

In addition, you may need to install one or more of the following adjunct systems or devices:

- [IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application](#)
- [INTUITY AUDIX LX Messaging System](#)
- [ASAI Co-Resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway \(DLG\)](#)
- [Call Center](#)
- [Avaya Integrated Management](#)
- [Uninterruptible Power Supply \(UPS\)](#)

For these adjunct systems, consult the documentation specific to the system for complete installation instructions.

Your planning documentation specifies the equipment you will be installing. To locate installation instructions, use the documentation indicated below.

 **WARNING:**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cords when installing telephones or adjuncts.

 **WARNING:**

Attention: Pour réduire les risques d'incendie, utiliser uniquement des conductors de télécommunications 26 AWG ou de section supérieure.

# Installation and Wiring Telephones and Power Supplies

The wiring procedures are the same for most Avaya telephones and other equipment.

This section provides wiring examples of similar installation procedures. These are examples only; actual wiring procedures may vary at each site. For a complete description of wiring procedures, refer to "Installing and Wiring Telephones" in *Installing the Avaya S8700 Media Server with the Avaya MCC1 or the Avaya SCC1 Media Gateway*. After installing the hardware, the data for the telephone features must be administered. These procedures are provided in the *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*. Refer to the *Installation for Adjuncts and Peripherals for Avaya Communication Manager* to install the necessary peripheral equipment

These references are on the *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825*.

## Connectable Telephones and Consoles

[Table 7, Connectable Telephone and Consoles](#), on page 316 lists the telephones and consoles supported by the Avaya S8300 Media Server with G700 Media Gateways (consult: <http://support.avaya.com>).

**Table 7: Connectable Telephone and Consoles**

Telephone and Console Models	Type
46xx series: 4602, 4606, 4612, 4620, 4624, 4630	Internet Protocol (IP)
2420	Digital
64xx series: 6402, 6402D, 6408D+, 6416D+M, 6424D+M	Digital
603F Avaya Callmaster IV	Digital
607A Avaya Callmaster V ACD Console	Digital
606A Avaya CallMaster VI ACD Console	Digital
Enhanced Attendant Consoles: 302D	Digital
62xx series: 6211, 6219	Analog
2500, 2554	Analog
9040 Avaya TransTalk	Wireless
3127 Avaya Soundstation/SoundPoint Speakerphones: 3127-ATR, -STD, -EXP, -APE, -APX, -MIC, -PMI	Analog
3127 Avaya Soundstation/SoundPoint Speakerphones: 3127-DCP, -DCS, -DCE, -DPE, -DPX, -DDP, -DDX, -MIC, -PMI	Digital

In addition, you may need to install an 808A Emergency Transfer Panel. See [Install Emergency Transfer Unit and Associated Telephones](#).

## Connect Telephones

Various analog, digital, and IP telephones can be connected to the Media Gateway. Typical examples of these procedures follow:

- [Typical Adjunct Power Connections](#)
- [Connect an Analog Station or 2-Wire Digital Station](#)

## Install and Wire Telephone Power Supplies

This section provides information and wiring examples of installation procedures for various telephone and console power supplies. These are examples only and actual wiring procedures may vary at each site.

### NOTE:

Refer to the *Installation for Adjuncts and Peripherals for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-116, to install the necessary peripheral equipment.

The power is provided to telephones or consoles either locally or centrally.

Centrally located power supplies include

- [1152A1 Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit](#) on page 320
- [P333T-PWR Power over Ethernet Stackable Switch](#) on page 324

Local power supplies include

- [1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies](#) on page 326

## Typical Adjunct Power Connections

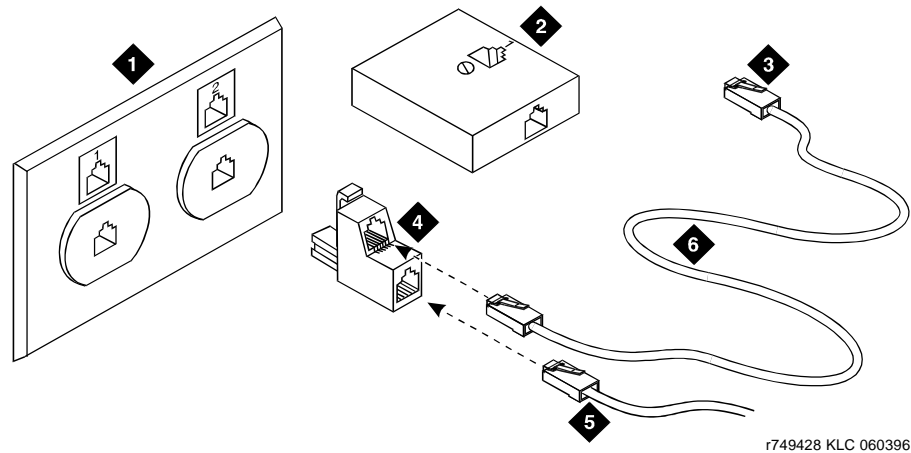
The 400B2 adapter is convenient for connecting local -48 VDC power to a modular plug. See [400B2 Adapter Connecting to a Modular Plug](#) on page 318.

Each port network can provide power for up to three attendant consoles. This source of power is preferred for the attendant consoles because it has the same battery backup as the G700 Media Gateway.

Adjunct power can be provided locally at the telephone or console by either the 1151A1 or 1151A2 power supply. The 1151A1 is a standard (no battery backup) power supply unit. The 1151A2 is a battery backup version of the 1151A1. Either power supply can support one telephone with or without an adjunct. The maximum loop range is 250 feet (76 meters). Two modular jacks are used. Power is provided on the PHONE jack, pins 7 and 8 (- and +, respectively). Adjunct power can be provided from the equipment room or equipment closet with the 1145B power unit.

Refer to *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD*, 555-233-825, for detailed power supply information and installation procedures.

**Figure 16: 400B2 Adapter Connecting to a Modular Plug**



**Figure notes**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>1</b> Flush-Mounted Information Outlet   | <b>4</b> 400B2 Adapter                                      |
| <b>2</b> Surface-Mounted Information Outlet | <b>5</b> To Telephone                                       |
| <b>3</b> To Individual Power Unit           | <b>6</b> Destination Service Access Point (DSAP) Power Cord |

**Adjunct Power Connections End-to-End**

[Figure 17, Example Adjunct Power Connections](#), on page 319 shows typical connection locations for adjunct power.

Figure 17: Example Adjunct Power Connections

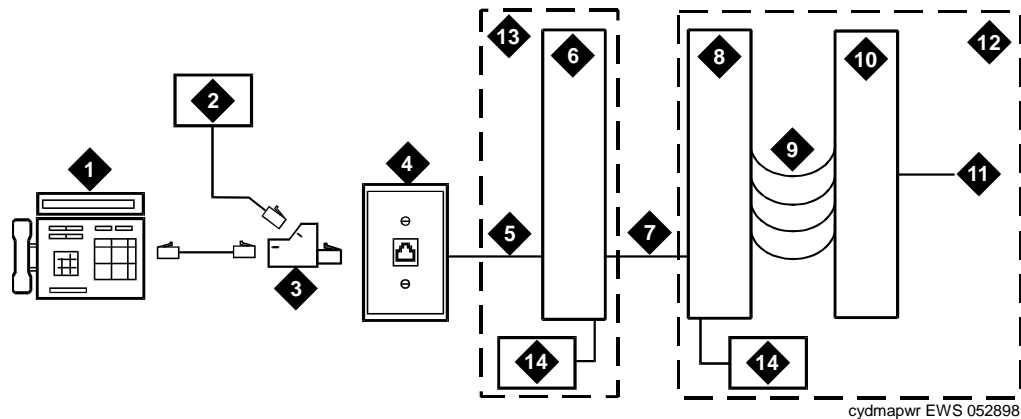


Figure notes

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>1</b> Typical display telephone</p> <p><b>2</b> Individual power supply (Such as 1151B) (Not used if item 14 is used)</p> <p><b>3</b> 400B2 adapter</p> <p><b>4</b> Information outlet (modular jack)</p> <p><b>5</b> 4-pair D-Inside Wire (DIW) cable</p> <p><b>6</b> Satellite site or adapter location</p> <p><b>7</b> 25-pair D-Inside Wire (DIW) cable</p> <p><b>8</b> Station side of MDF</p> | <p><b>9</b> 100P6A patch cord or jumpers</p> <p><b>10</b> System side of MDF</p> <p><b>11</b> 25-pair cable to digital line modular jack</p> <p><b>12</b> Equipment room</p> <p><b>13</b> Satellite location</p> <p><b>14</b> Bulk power supply. Install at satellite location or equipment room (not both).</p> |
|---|--|

### Auxiliary Power for an Attendant Console

The nonessential functions of an attendant console and its optional 26A1 or 24A1 selector console derive power from an auxiliary power source. Provide auxiliary power for an attendant console through this cable so the console remains fully operational during short power outages.

**NOTE:**

Only 1 console can derive auxiliary power from the system and through the auxiliary cable located in the trunk/auxiliary field.

A console's maximum distance from its auxiliary power source is:

- 800 feet (244 m) for a 302A1
- 350 feet (107 m) for a 301B1 and 302D

An attendant console can also derive auxiliary power from:

- Individual 1151B or 1151B2 power supply
- MSP-1 power supply
- 258A-type adapters
- Bulk power supplies

**Local and Phantom Power**

An attendant console's maximum distance from the system is limited. See [Table 8, Attendant Console Cabling Distances](#), on page 320.

**Table 8: Attendant Console Cabling Distances**

Enhanced Attendant Console (302D)	24 AWG Wire (0.26 mm <sup>2</sup> )		26 AWG Wire (0.14 mm <sup>2</sup> )	
	Feet	Meters	Feet	Meters
With Selector Console				
Phantom powered	800	244	500	152
Locally powered	5000	1524	3400	1037
Without Selector Console				
Phantom powered	1400	427	900	274
Locally powered	5000	1524	3400	1037

**1152A1 Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit**

The 1152A1 Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit (PDU) is an Ethernet power supply that provides power to up to 24 46xx-series IP telephones or wireless LAN (WLAN) access points. This unit is used with a 10/100BaseTx standard Ethernet network over a standard TIA/EIA-568 Category 5, 6 or 6e cabling plant. The 1152A1 meets the current requirements of the IEEE802.3af standard for resistive detection.

The 1152A1 PDU complies with the Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) standard UL 1950, second edition.

**Table 9: 1152A1 PDU UL 1950 Compliance**

Complies	UL 1950
Approved	CSA C22.2 No.950 Std.
Approved	CE Regulatory Compliance
Approved	EN 60950
Approved	TUV EN 60950

For safety instructions, see [Important Safety Instructions](#) on page 320. For installation instructions, see [Connect the Cables](#) on page 322.

**Important Safety Instructions**

Please read the following helpful tips. Retain these tips for later use.

When using this switch, the following safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons.

- Read and understand all instructions.
- Follow all warnings and instructions marked on this switch.



- This product can be hazardous if immersed in water. To avoid the possibility of electrical shock, do not use it near water.
- The 1152A1 PDU contains components sensitive to electrostatic discharge. Do not touch the circuit boards unless instructed to do so.
- This product should be operated only from the type of AC (and optional DC) power source indicated on the label. If you are not sure of the type of AC power being provided, contact a qualified service person.
- Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord. Do not locate this product where the cord will be abused by persons walking on it.
- Do not overload wall outlets and extension cords as this can result in the risk of line or electric shock.
- Disconnect the cords on this product and refer servicing to qualified service personnel under the following conditions:
  - If the power supply cord or plug is damaged or frayed.
  - If liquid has been spilled into it.
  - If it has been exposed to rain or water.
  - If it was dropped or the housing has been damaged.
  - If it exhibits a distinct change in performance.
  - If it does not operate normally when following the operating instructions.

### **Using the 1152A1 PDU**

The 1152A1 PDU is used to power the 46xx series of IP telephones in addition to providing 10/100 megabits per second Ethernet connection.

Generation 1 Avaya IP telephones can receive power from the 1152A1 via an in-line adapter. This adapter provides the resistive signature so that the 1152A1 allows power to flow to the telephone. The generation 2 telephones do not need an adapter.

The 1152A1 PDU has 24, 10/100 Base-T ports, each can supply up to 16.8 watts using the internal power supply and operates on a 100-240 volts AC, 60/50 hertz power source.

The 1152A1 PDU is 1U high and fits in most standard 19-inch racks. It can also be mounted on a shelf. Refer to the user's guide that comes with the unit for complete installation instructions.

### **Connect the 1152A1 PDU**



#### **CAUTION:**

The 1152A1 PDU has no ON/OFF switch. To connect or disconnect power to the 1152A1 PDU, simply insert or remove the power cable from the AC power receptacle on the rear of the 1152A1 PDU.

- 1** Plug a power cord into the power socket on the rear of the 1152A1 Power Distribution Unit.
- 2** Plug the other end of the power cord into the power receptacle.

The 1152A1 PDU powers up, and the internal fans begin operating.

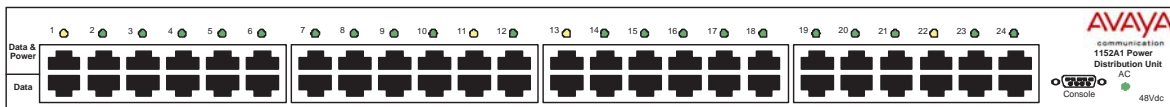
## 8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems

### Installation and Wiring Telephones and Power Supplies

The 1152A1 PDU then runs through its Power On Self Test (POST), which takes less than 10 seconds. During the test, all the ports on the unit are disabled and the LEDs light up. For more information on the test, refer to the user's guide that comes with the unit.

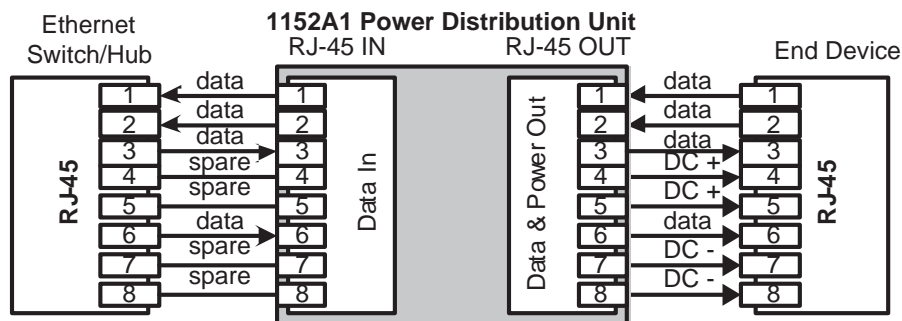
#### Connect the Cables

All of the ports on the front of the 1152A1 PDU are configured as data route-through ports for all data wires (pins 1, 2, 3 and 6).



Use a standard CAT5, CAT6 or CAT6e straight-through Ethernet cable (not supplied), including all 8 wires (4 pairs) as shown in [Connecting cables to telephones and other end devices](#) on page 322.

**Figure 18: Connecting telephones and other end devices to the 1152A1 PDU**



For Data-In ports connect the Ethernet cable leading from the Ethernet Switch/Hub to the Data port. For Data & Power Out ports connect the Ethernet cable leading to the telephone or other end device to the corresponding Data & Power port.

#### NOTE:

Be certain to connect correspondingly numbered Data and Data & Power ports.

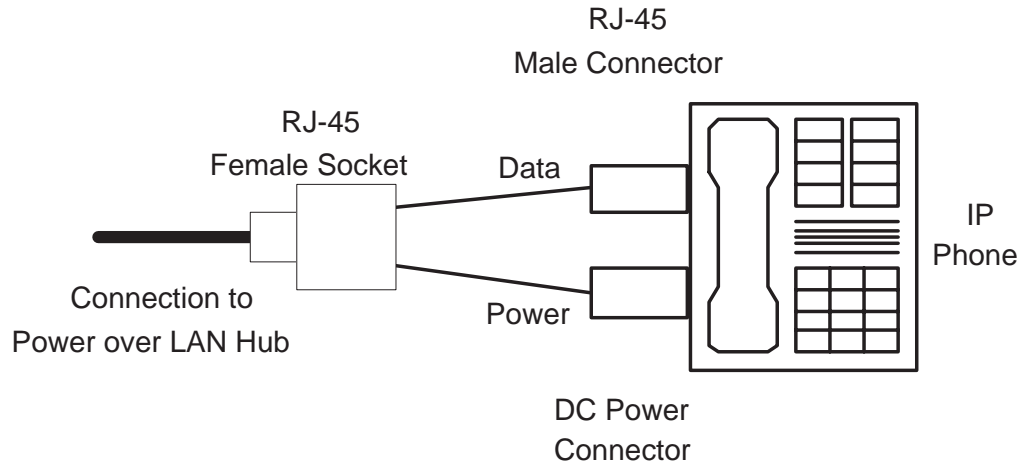
#### Connecting cables to telephones and other end devices

The 1152A1 PDU contains line-sensing capabilities that enable it to send power only to end devices designed to receive power from the LAN. These end devices, termed Power over LAN Enabled, receive power once they are connected to the 1152A1 PDU.

To safeguard devices that are not enabled, the 1152A1 PDU detects devices that are not enabled so does not send power. Note that data continues to flow via the Ethernet cable regardless of the status of the end device.

End devices that are not enabled to receive power directly may receive power and data through an external splitter. The external splitter separates the power and data prior to connection to the end device (see [Figure 19, Connecting an IP telephone with an external splitter](#), on page 323).

**Figure 19: Connecting an IP telephone with an external splitter**



Before connecting telephones or other end devices to the 1152A1 PDU, determine if

- It is Power over LAN Enabled or not.

If not, you may safely connect the telephone; however, the port supplies no power and functions as a normal Ethernet data port.

- It requires an external splitter or whether it requires only a single RJ45 connection.

If an external splitter is needed, be certain to use a splitter with the correct connector and polarity.

- It's power requirements are consistent with the 1152A1 PDU voltage and power ratings. Refer to Appendix B in the user's guide that comes with the unit for voltage and power ratings.

To connect telephones and other end devices to the 1152A1 PDU:

- 1** Connect an Ethernet cable to the telephone using an external splitter or directly (if the device is Power over LAN Enabled).
- 2** Connect the opposite end of the same cable to the RJ45 wall outlet.
- 3** On the front panel of the 1152A1 PDU, monitor the response of the corresponding port LED. If it lights up GREEN, the unit has identified your telephone as a Power over LAN

## **P333T-PWR Power over Ethernet Stackable Switch**

The P333T-PWR power supply complies with the Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) standard UL 1950, second edition.

**Table 10: P333T-PWR UL 1950 Compliance**

<b>Complies</b>	<b>UL 1950</b>
Approved	C22.2 No.950 Std.
Approved	CE

For safety instructions, see [P333T-PWR switch Important Safety Instructions](#) on page 324. For installation instructions, see [Connect the P333T-PWR switch](#) on page 325.

### ***P333T-PWR switch Important Safety Instructions***

Please read the following helpful tips. Retain these tips for later use.

When using this switch, the following safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons.

- Read and understand all instructions.
- Follow all warnings and instructions marked on this switch.
- This product can be hazardous if immersed in water. To avoid the possibility of electrical shock, do not use it near water.
- The Avaya P333T-PWR switch and modules contain components sensitive to electrostatic discharge. Do not touch the circuit boards unless instructed to do so.
- This product should be operated only from the type of AC (and optional DC) power source indicated on the label. If you are not sure of the type of AC power being provided, contact a qualified service person.
- Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord. Do not locate this product where the cord will be abused by persons walking on it.
- Do not overload wall outlets and extension cords as this can result in the risk of line or electric shock.
- Disconnect the cords on this product and refer servicing to qualified service personnel under the following conditions:
  - If the power supply cord or plug is damaged or frayed.
  - If liquid has been spilled into it.
  - If it has been exposed to rain or water.
  - If it was dropped or the housing has been damaged.
  - If it exhibits a distinct change in performance.
  - If it does not operate normally when following the operating instructions.

### Using the P333T-PWR switch

The P333T-PWR Power over Ethernet Stackable Switch can be used to power 46xx series IP telephones in addition to providing a 10/100 megabits per second Ethernet connection. The switch can form part of a stack with the G700 Media Gateway or members of the P330 stackable switching system.



**CAUTION:**

The Avaya P333T-PWR switch does not contain any user-serviceable components inside. Do not open the case.



**CAUTION:**

The P333T-PWR switch can be used only indoors and in a controlled environment.

The P333T-PWR switch has 24, 10/100 Base-T ports, each of which can supply up to 16.5 watts using the internal power supply and operates on a 100–240 volts AC, 5.3 amperes, 50/60 hertz power source with the option of using the 44~57 volts DC, 15 amperes to boost the InLine power.

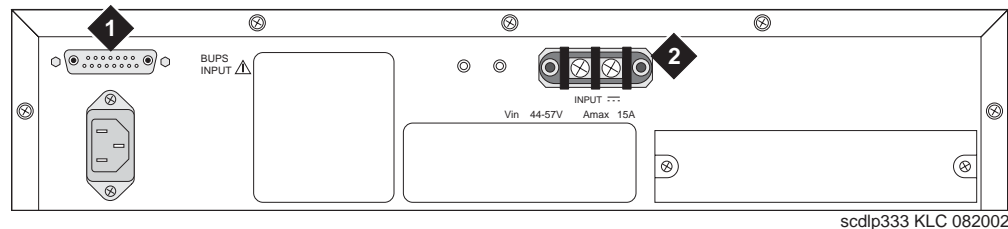
The P333T-PWR switch can be placed in a wiring closet or on a flat, stable surface like a desk. Screws are provided for mounting in a standard 19-inch rack.

### Connect the P333T-PWR switch

#### Power up—AC input

- 1 Insert the power cord into the power connector (BUPS or AC Power Supply) on the rear of the unit. See [Connectors on the P333T-PWR switch](#) on page 325.

**Figure 20: Connectors on the P333T-PWR switch**



scdlp333 KLC 082002

#### Figure notes

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 BUPS connector | 2 AC connector |
|------------------|----------------|

- 2 Insert the other end of the power cord into a nonswitched electrical outlet or the connector on the BUPS.

The unit powers up and performs a self-test procedure. The LEDs flash at regular intervals after the self-test procedure is completed successfully.

***Power up—DC input (optional)***

The P333T-PWR switch can operate on the AC input only. However, you may wish to use the optional DC input for the following:

- Backup for the power over Ethernet ports
- To provide more than 200 watts for the power over Ethernet ports

**NOTE:**

Please refer to the P333T-PWR switch User's Guide for more information.

***Connect the Cables***

Connect IP telephones, PCs, servers, routers, workstations, and hubs.

- 1** Connect the Ethernet connection cable (not supplied) to a 10/100 megabits per second port on the front panel of the Avaya P333T-PWR switch.

**NOTE:**

Use standard RJ45 connections and a CAT5 cable for 100 megabits per second operation.

- 2** Connect the other end of the cable to the Ethernet port of the PC, server, router, workstation, IP telephone, switch, or hub.

**NOTE:**

Use a crossover cable when connecting the Avaya P333T-PWR switch to a switch or hub.

- 3** Check that the appropriate link (LNK) LEDs light up.

**1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies**

The 1151B1 and 1151B2 power supplies are a local power supply. The telephones or consoles connect directly to them through an RJ45 connector. The 1151B2 has a battery backup.

These power supplies comply with the Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) Standard UL 60950 third edition.

**Table 11: 1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supply UL 60950 Compliance**

<b>Complies</b>	<b>UL 60950</b>
Certified	CSA 22.2
Approved	EN6950
Approved	CE

For safety instructions, see [Important Safety Instructions for 1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies](#) on page 327. For installation instructions, see [Connect the 1151B1 or 1151B2 Power Supplies](#) on page 328.

### ***Important Safety Instructions for 1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies***

Please read the following helpful tips. Retain these tips for later use.

When using this power supply, the following safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons.

- Read and understand all instructions.
- Follow all warnings and instructions marked on this power supply.
- This product can be hazardous if immersed in water. To avoid the possibility of electrical shock, do not use it near water.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not disassemble this product except to replace the battery.
- This product should be operated only from the type of AC power source indicated on the label. If you are not sure of the type of AC power being provided, contact a qualified service person.
- Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord. Do not locate this product where the cord will be abused by persons walking on it.
- Do not overload wall outlets and extension cords as this can result in the risk of line or electric shock.
- Disconnect the cords on this product and refer servicing to qualified service personnel under the following conditions:
  - When the power supply cord or plug is damaged or frayed.
  - If liquid has been spilled into the product.
  - If the product has been exposed to rain or water.
  - If the product was dropped or the housing has been damaged.
  - If the product exhibits a distinct change in performance.
  - If the product does not operate normally by following the operating instructions.

### ***Using 1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies***

The 1151B1 and 1151B2 Power Supplies can be used to supply local power to ISDN-T 85xx and 84xx series and 46xx series telephones connected to a media gateway and to the 302D Attendant Console that requires auxiliary power for its display. The unit can supply power to adjunct equipment such as S201A and CS201A speakerphones or a 500A Headset Adapter attached to any currently manufactured analog, DCP, or ISDN-T telephone equipped with an adjunct jack.



#### **CAUTION:**

The power supply can be used *only* with telecommunications equipment, indoors, and in a controlled environment.

The power supply has a single output of -48 volts DC, 0.4 amperes and can operate from either a 120 volts AC 60 hertz power source (105 to 129 volts AC) or a 220/230/240 volts AC 50 hertz power source (198 to 264 volts AC). Input voltage selection is automatic. The output capacity is 19.2 watts.

The power supply can be placed on a flat surface such as a desk. For wall-mounting, keyhole slots are provided on the bottom of the chassis.



**CAUTION:**

Do not locate the unit within 6 inches (15 centimeters) of the floor.

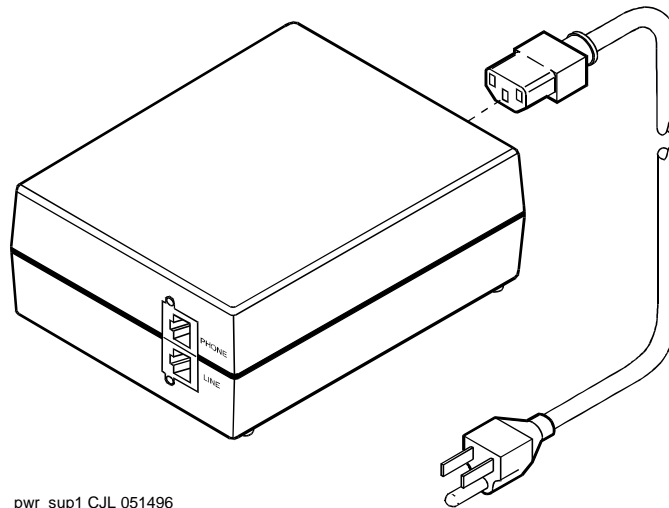
**Connect the 1151B1 or 1151B2 Power Supplies**

The 1151B1 is a standard (no battery backup) power supply unit. The 1151B2 is a battery backup version of the 1151B1. Either power supply can support one telephone with or without an adjunct. The maximum loop range is 250 feet (76 meters). Two modular jacks are used. Power is provided on the PHONE jack, pins 7 and 8 (- and +, respectively).

The PHONE and LINE jacks are 8-pin female nonkeyed 657-type jacks that can accept D4, D6, and D8 modular plug cables. See [Figure 21, 1151B2 Power Supply — Front](#), on page 328.

---

**Figure 21: 1151B2 Power Supply — Front**



pwr\_sup1 CJL 051496

---

## Install Emergency Transfer Unit and Associated Telephones

**NOTE:**

Install only 1 emergency transfer power panel per system.

Emergency transfer capability is provided by an 808A Emergency Transfer Panel (or equivalent) mounted next to the trunk/auxiliary field. See [Figure 22, 808A Emergency Transfer Panel](#), on page 329.

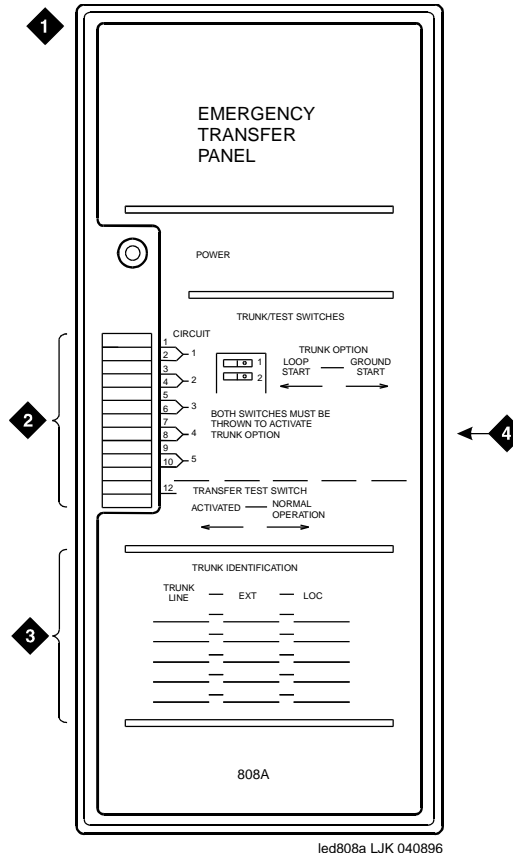
Use analog telephones for emergency transfer. The 2500-type telephones can also be used as normal extensions. Emergency transfer capability may be provided on analog CO and Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS) trunks.



The transfer panel provides emergency trunk bypass or power-fail transfer for up to 5 incoming CO trunk loops to 5 selected station sets. The 808A equipment's Ringer Equivalency Number (REN) is 1.0A.

For information on installing the 808A Emergency Transfer Panel, see *808A Emergency Transfer Panel Installation Instructions*, which ships with the Emergency Transfer Panel.

**Figure 22: 808A Emergency Transfer Panel**



**Figure notes**

- |   |                                  |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1 | 808A emergency transfer panel    | 3 | Trunk identification label |
| 2 | Circuit start selection switches | 4 | 25-pair male connector     |

## Connect an Analog Station or 2-Wire Digital Station

This example is typical of the 2-wire digital stations (2420, 64xx, 302D), 2-wire analog stations (2500), analog Central Office (CO) trunks, Direct Inward Dial (DID) trunks, and external alarms.

- 1 Choose a peripheral to connect (such as a 2-wire digital station).
- 2 Choose the Media Module to use and its Media Gateway and slot number; for example, MM711 Analog Media Module, Media Gateway 002, Slot V2.
- 3 Choose a port circuit on the MM711 Media Module; for example, port 03.

## 8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems

### Installation and Wiring Telephones and Power Supplies

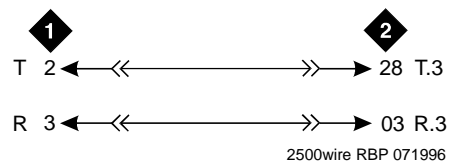
- Install cross-connect jumpers to connect the pins from the 2-wire digital station to the appropriate pins on the MM711 Media Module. [Table 12, Two-Wire Station Pinout Chart](#), on page 330 shows a pinout chart for two-wire stations.

**Table 12: Two-Wire Station Pinout Chart**

Jack Name	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
<b>BRI-T</b>			+TX	+RX	-RX	-TX	-V	GND
<b>ADJUNCT</b>	+Vadj	T0	-V	GNDVoice	RRVoice	+V	S0	TTVoice
<b>DSS (QUEST)</b>	DTX		DRX			OKdig	-V	+V
<b>DSS (ISDN)</b>								
<b>BRI-A</b>			GND	TX	RX	-V		
<b>BRI-U</b>				TX	RX		-V	GND
<b>DCP</b>	TX1	TX2	RX1			RX2	-V	+V
<b>ANALOG</b>				TIP	RING			
<b>HANDSET</b>			-TX	+RX	-RX	+TX		

- Administer using *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

**Figure 23: 2500-Type Analog Telephone Wiring**



**Figure notes**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2500-Type Analog Station</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MM711 Analog Media Module, Position 1V301</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

# Complete the Telephone Installation Process

---

Consult the planning documentation to obtain the necessary information to complete the installation. Part of the final process will be to:

- Complete the electrical installation
- Enable adjunct systems

## Install the Coupled Bonding Conductor

The Coupled Bonding Conductor (CBC) provides mutual inductance coupling between the CBC and the telephone cables that are exposed to lightning. The conductor can be a 10 AWG (4 mm<sup>2</sup>) wire tie wrapped to the exposed cables, a metal cable shield around the exposed cables, or six spare pairs from the exposed cable. In a high-rise building, connect the CBC to an approved building ground on each floor.

Before you begin, be sure the telephone lines are cross-connected to the appropriate media module(s).

### *Install the CBC*

- 1 Connect one end of the conductor to a telephone cable building entrance protector ground that is connected to an approved ground.
- 2 Route the rest of the conductor next to the exposed telephone cables being protected until they reach the cross-connect nearest to the telephone system.
- 3 Terminate the other end to the single-point ground block provided for the telephone system.

#### **NOTE:**

Position the non-exposed telephone cables at least 12 inches (30.5 cm) away from exposed telephone cables whenever possible.

## Install Circuit Protection

Over-voltage and sneak fuse protection measures are necessary for the safe operation of the G700 Media Gateway system.

### **Over-Voltage and Sneak-Current Protection**

Out-of-building installations of telephones or other standard (tip/ring) devices/terminals that connect to the Avaya G700 Media Gateway Media Modules require over-voltage and sneak current protection at both building entry points. Sneak current protectors must have a maximum of 350 mA and a minimum voltage rating of 600V. The following devices have been evaluated or tested and approved to protect the Media Modules from over-voltages and sneak current protection:

- Avaya MM712 DCP: either 146E IROB (In-Range Out-of-Building) or 4C3S-75 solid state protectors for surge and sneak current.
- Avaya MM710 T1/E1: over-voltage and sneak protection for the Avaya MM710 T1/E1 Media Module is provided on the Media Module itself.

## 8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems

### Complete the Telephone Installation Process

- Avaya MM711 Analog: analog trunks use the 507B or 110-SCP-9 sneak current protectors. Over-voltage protection is normally provided by the local telephone company. Analog voice terminals use one of the following types of combined over-voltage and sneak current protection:
  - Gas tube with heat coil: 4B1E-W
  - Solid state with heat coil: 4C1S
  - IROB: 146C (4-lines) or 146F (25-lines)

 **WARNING:**

Only service-trained personnel are to install these circuit protection devices.

# IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application

---

## NOTE:

For complete information on IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Installations, including the S8300 hard drive replacement, see the IA INTUITY AUDIX documentation on the *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library CD, 555-233-825*, or the *IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application Installation Checklist and Instructions, 585-313-159*. Both of these documents are included in the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application Technician Kit.

The IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application runs only on a G700 Media Gateway controlled by an S8300 Media Server.

## Shared Resources of Coresidency

Because it is coresident on the S8300, the INTUITY AUDIX system uses many of the S8300 resources for call processing, data storage, and access and use of administrative tools. Specifically, the INTUITY AUDIX system uses the following:

- The S8300 hard drive for data storage and retrieval
- The S8300 TFTP server
- License file downloads and updates
- Backup and restore of data
- Software updates and upgrades
- The IP address of the S8300 for remote administration access and TCP/IP networking functions such as Digital Networking, Message Manager, and Internet Messaging.
- The S8300 license file for feature activation
- The S8300 General Alarm Manager for alarm display

As a result, the administrator administers some functions of the INTUITY AUDIX system by directly administering the INTUITY AUDIX application, while the administrator administers other functions of the INTUITY AUDIX system by administering the S8300 platform. To access the INTUITY AUDIX administration screens and web pages, you simply click on the **Messaging Administration** link from the S8300 Main Menu.

## CWY1Board and Software

The INTUITY AUDIX system software is loaded directly onto the S8300 hard drive. The INTUITY AUDIX system also requires the use of a CWY1 board. This board connects directly to the S8300 processor through the S8300 Time Division Multiplexing (TDM) bus. Once installed, this board hosts portions of the INTUITY AUDIX platform software. INTUITY AUDIX uses this board to convert messages to the code-excited linear prediction (CELP) format, convert text to speech, and process touchtones.

## No Data Link and No Voice Ports to Connect

In earlier versions of INTUITY AUDIX that ran on a separate PC connected to a switch, the voice communication (messages, announcements, greetings, and so on) occurred over analog voice ports, while control messages (timestamps, called and calling party data, message-waiting signals, and so on) occurred over a data link on the LAN or through X.25 protocol connections.

Since the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX system runs on a CWY1 circuit board that you plug directly into the S8300 processor, the analog voice ports and the data link do not use physical ports. Instead, the INTUITY AUDIX software and the switch software send voice signals to one another using virtual ports over the TDM bus connection of the CWY1 board and processor board.

## AUDIX Hunt Group Still Necessary

The logic of voice ports, however, remains the same. This logic means that an INTUITY AUDIX hunt group must still be defined with 4 or 8 virtual voice ports and extension numbers. Other switch administration tasks that are associated with proper hunt group functions, such as creating COR, COS, and coverage paths, are also required. The S8300 and INTUITY AUDIX software applications send control messages to each other by using the same shared S8300 processor, and therefore, administration of a data link is not required.

## IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Installations and S8300 Upgrades for IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX

To install an IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX system, you must install the CWY1 board and install the INTUITY AUDIX software. The INTUITY AUDIX software is included in the S8300 software load (the `.tar` file), but it must be installed using INTUITY AUDIX installation tools.

To install the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX system on an S8300 Release 1.1 system, you must first replace the hard drive of the S8300 and upgrade the S8300 software first. The hard drive replacement requires a backup of translations to your laptop and a subsequent restore of translations.

For complete information on IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Installations, including the S8300 hard drive replacement, see the IA INTUITY AUDIX documentation on the *Avaya S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Server Library* CD, 555-233-825, or the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application Installation Checklist and Instructions, 585-313-159. Both of these documents are included in the IA 770 INTUITY AUDIX Messaging Application Technician Kit

## INTUITY AUDIX LX Messaging System

---

The process of integrating an INTUITY AUDIX LX system with an Avaya S8300 Media Server involves a series of tasks to prepare the switch to work with the INTUITY AUDIX LX system.

The procedures for this process are fully documented in *INTUITY™ AUDIX® LX Release 1.0 Documentation, 585-313-818*. The information is contained in a document with the title INTUITY™ AUDIX® LX Release 1.0 LAN Integration with S8300 and DEFINITY® Systems.

## ASAI Co-Resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG)

---

The DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG) is an application that enables communications between TCP/IP clients and Communication Manager call processing. In more technical terms, the DLG application is software that both routes Internet work messages from one protocol to another (ISDN to TCP/IP) and bridges all ASAI message traffic (by way of a TCP/IP tunnel protocol).

The DLG listens for client connections (a specific IP Address) over a well-known TCP port (5678). The client accesses the DLG's services by connecting to TCP port 5678 at the IP address of the DLG's Ethernet interface, which can be a MAPD (TN801B), a Processor (TN2314), or a C-LAN (TN799). The client then exchanges TCP Tunnel Protocol messages with the DLG to request a connection to a specific CTI link. The DLG authenticates the client based on its administration and then establishes or refuses the connection. Once a connection is established, the ASAI layer 3 messages are transparently passed through the DLG (that is, the DLG does not process any message content). Each TCP connection to the DLG has a one-to-one correspondence with a CTI link.

The DLG application is packaged either **externally** on a separate circuit pack (the TN801 MAPD circuit pack) or **internally**, where it co-resides with Communication Manager. The externally packaged DLG is referred to as the **MAPD DLG**, and the internally packaged DLG is referred to as the **Co-Resident DLG**. The Co-Resident DLG and the MAPD DLG accomplish the same basic function (ASAI to Ethernet transport).

The Co-Resident DLG is application software that co-resides with Communication Manager on the Media Server running Communication Manager. No physical installation or MAPD-specific administration is required for the Co-Resident DLG. In terms of switch-based connectivity, the Co-Resident DLG is supported by the following platforms:

- Communication Manager S8100 Media Server configurations (formerly DEFINITY ONE and IP600)
- Avaya S8300 Media Server with Avaya G700 Media Gateway

Administration of the Co-Resident DLG is carried out on the switch using the **change ip-services SAT** command. When the service type DLG is specified on the IP Services form, the DLG administration page displays. The Co-Resident DLG does not rely on ports. Port allocation is not required for administering the Co-Resident DLG.

For Avaya S8100 Media Server configurations, the Co-Resident DLG can use the C-LAN (TN799), the Processor Card (TN2314), or both as its Ethernet interface. For Avaya S8300 Media Server with Avaya G700 Media Gateway, the Co-Resident DLG relies on the S8300 Media Server for Ethernet connectivity.

## Administration Task Summary (for the S8300 Media Server)

On the SAT interface of the S8300 Media Server with G700 Media Gateway, follow these steps:

- 1 Type **display system-parameters customer-options**. Go to page 4 and make sure that Processor Ethernet is enabled.
- 2 Type **display ip-interfaces**, and make sure the PROCR is administered and its Ethernet port is enabled. If the PROCR is not listed (PROCR should appear in the Type option field), add the PROCR.

### To administer CTI links:

- 1 Use the **display system-parameters customer-options** command and make sure the following option is set to yes:

Co-Res DEFINITY LAN GATEWAY (y)

- 2 Use the **add cti-link** command to administer a CTI link.
- 3 Use the **change ip-services** command and specify a Service Type of **DLG**.

When Service Type **DLG** is entered, the system adds a DLG Administration page as the last of the form.

- 4 Complete the DLG Administration page to add your client information.

### NOTE:

A CTI link must be administered before a link number can be entered. For more information and detailed procedures, refer to *CallVisor® ASAI Technical Reference*, 555-230-220.

## Supported Ethernet Interfaces

[Table 13, Ethernet Interfaces](#), on page 336 summarizes Ethernet interfaces used by several current switching platforms:

**Table 13: Ethernet Interfaces**

Platform	Processor Ethernet Interface?	C-LAN (TN799) Ethernet Interface
DEFINITY Servers csi, si, and r	No	Yes
Avaya S8100 Media Server (formerly DEFINITY ONE/IP600)	Yes	Yes
Avaya S8300 Media Server with Avaya G700 Media Gateway	Yes	No



# Call Center

The S8300 Media Server provides an excellent solution for a small call center. The S8300 Media Server with the G700 Media Gateway supports the following call center capabilities:

- All three Avaya call center packages:
  - Avaya Call Center Basic
  - Avaya Call Center Deluxe
  - Avaya Call Center Elite
- Up to 450 agents
- A maximum of 16 ASAI links
- Avaya G700 announcement software

## Avaya G700 Announcement Software

Voice announcements are used in a call center environment to announce delays, direct customers to different departments, and entertain and inform calling parties. The announcement capability is standard and comes co-resident on the G700. The G700 announcement software has many of the functions of the TN2501AP VAL circuit pack.

See [Table 14, Comparison between the G700 Announcement software and the VAL circuit pack](#), on page 337 for differences between the Avaya G700 Announcement software and the VAL circuit pack. For more information on Avaya G700 Announcement software, see the *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-506, Chapter 13, "Managing Announcements"*.

**Table 14: Comparison between the G700 Announcement software and the VAL circuit pack**

Area description	TN2501AP (VAL) circuit pack	Avaya G700 announcement software
Requires hardware	Yes	No
Maximum storage time per board for TN750 or TN2501AP	Up to 60 minutes at 64 Kbps sample rate	Up to 20 minutes at 64Kbps uncompressed speech
Concurrent Calls per Announcement	50 when using a DEFINITY Server SI or DEFINITY Server CSI  1,000 when using the DEFINITY Server R, S8500, or S8700 Media Server	1,000
Backup and restore over LAN	Yes	Yes
Recording Method	Use PC or telephone	Use PC or telephone

1 of 2

**Table 14: Comparison between the G700 Announcement software and the VAL circuit pack *Continued***

<b>Area description</b>	<b>TN2501AP (VAL) circuit pack</b>	<b>Avaya G700 announcement software</b>
File portability to multiple DEFINITY or Communication Manager servers	Yes	Yes
Playback quality	Toll quality	Toll quality
Backup speed	2.6 seconds for each 60 seconds of announcement time	2.6 seconds for each 60 seconds of announcement time
Reliability	High	High
Firmware downloadable	Yes	Yes
Number of boards per system	5 on the DEFINITY <sup>®</sup> CSI and DEFINITY SI 10 on the DEFINITY R and S8500 or S8700 Media Server	10 per configuration
Announcements per board	256	256
Maximum number of announcements in a configuration	128 DEFINITY Server CSI or DEFINITY Server Si 1,000 DEFINITY Server R 3,000 S8500, or S8700 Media Server	3,000 over multiple G700 Media Gateways
Format	CCITT A-law or u-law	CCITT A-law or u-law
Sample bits	8	8
Sample rate	8,000 KHz	8,000 KHz
Channels	Mono	Mono
<i>2 of 2</i>		

# Avaya Integrated Management

---

Avaya Integrated Management provides a comprehensive set of network and system management solutions for the converged voice and data environment. Avaya Integrated Management is available in several different offers. Each offer includes an appropriate set of applications to meet different business needs. Contact your client executive to learn which offer best meets the needs of your enterprise.

Avaya Integrated Management architecture provides standards-based infrastructure for integrated management applications. The individual applications over time will become integrated with a common look and feel. The available products include:

- [Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager](#)
- [Avaya Directory Enabled Management](#)
- [Avaya MultiService Network Manager](#)
- [Avaya MultiService SMON Manager](#)
- [Avaya Fault and Performance Manager](#)
- [Avaya Proxy Agent](#)
- [Avaya Configuration Manager](#)
- [Avaya Site Administration](#)
- [Avaya Terminal Configuration](#)
- [Avaya Terminal Emulator](#)
- [Avaya Voice Announcement Over LAN Manager](#)
- [Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager](#)

## Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager

Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager is a Windows (98/NT/2000) client/server software tool with which administrators can upload translations from a main Media Server to the Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager workstation. Once translations are uploaded, administrators can then download them from the workstation to a maximum of 15 separate ATM WSP Media Servers via LAN connectivity.

## Avaya Directory Enabled Management

Avaya Directory Enabled Management is a web-based software solution that provides real-time Directory-based (LDAP) read/write access to Media Servers. Avaya Directory Enabled Management provides the capability to keep data, such as station and subscriber data, synchronized with its image in the LDAP data store, and provides a rules engine that facilitates the management of these servers/applications, based on events (add/delete/modify) that take place at servers or applications. Currently, Avaya Directory Enabled Management operates only with Microsoft Internet Explorer.

## Avaya MultiService Network Manager

Avaya MultiService Network Manager provides customers with either a standalone product or one that can integrate with the HP OpenView NMS, and includes applications that allow customers to manage network devices. These applications include:

- Avaya MultiService Address Manager — displays a centralized list of hosts in the network, and correlates among IP addresses, MAC addresses, and device port connectivity.
- Avaya MultiService Configuration Manager — provides quick network setup and installation, fast recovery for faulty devices, downloading/uploading configuration data, backup of configuration files, and export of configuration files to other sources for reporting or analysis.

Accessible from within Avaya MultiService Configuration Manager, Avaya MultiService EZ2Rule Manager is a campus-wide application that provides Quality of Service (QoS) management for small sites with limited bandwidth resources. In addition, Avaya MultiService EZ2Rule Manager enables the user to preview the application of new rules before network deployment, ensuring accurate and consistent deployment of priorities in the network.

- Avaya MultiService Console — provides the discovery of IP-enabled devices, hierarchical map representation, device status, fault monitoring, and a launch point for device managers.
- Avaya MultiService Software Update Manager — downloads software to managed Avaya MultiService devices, and performs all necessary software maintenance operations. These operations include checking current software versions against the latest versions available from the Avaya Web site, recommending updates, and providing an inventory of Avaya MultiService data devices residing on the network.
- Avaya MultiService VLAN Manager — a graphical application for VLAN management that allows for configuration and monitoring of VLAN use. Avaya MultiService VLAN Manager assigns and maintains VLAN numbering and naming, tracks additions and changes to the network, validates VLAN name and tag values, and monitors the number of VLANs in order to assist in maintenance tasks.

Avaya MultiService Network Manager supports converged network environments composed of multi-vendor equipment from key vendors and will be enhanced to support all Avaya IP voice systems and data devices to create a full convergence solution.

## Avaya MultiService SMON Manager

Avaya MultiService SMON Manager monitors the Ethernet and provides complete visibility of all switched traffic in the network. Although SMON Manager is an application provided with Avaya MultiService Network Manager, SMON Manager requires a license key before it can be used.

## Avaya Fault and Performance Manager

Avaya Fault and Performance Manager operates standalone or with Avaya MultiService Network Manager and/or HP OpenView to provide a network map or system view of a converged network. Use it to view fault and performance data, busyout boards and ports, acknowledge exceptions, and configure collection times and information.

## Avaya Proxy Agent

Avaya Proxy Agent is the SNMP proxy agent that provides an interface to Media Servers running DEFINITY® Release 9 software through and including current versions of Avaya Communication Manager. Avaya Proxy Agent provides a protocol conversion between the proprietary OSSI protocol and SNMP.

## Avaya Configuration Manager

Avaya Configuration Manager allows you to administer Media Servers running DEFINITY® Release 9 software through and including Avaya current versions of Avaya Communication Manager. Multiple administrators can access multiple Media Servers. Administrators can perform station moves/adds/changes, print button labels, as well as many other common administrative activities. Avaya Configuration Manager provides a web-based Graphical User Interface (GUI) client that runs in the supported browsers and allows administrators access Communication Manager from any workstation on the network.

## Avaya Site Administration

Avaya Site Administration is a PC-based Windows (98/NT/2000) tool that lets you administer Media Servers running DEFINITY® Release 9 software through and including current versions of Avaya Communication Manager, and AUDIX Messaging Systems. Avaya Site Administration simplifies administration with an easy-to-use interface that offers wizards and GEDI (Graphically Enhanced DEFINITY Interface), as well as terminal emulation.

## Avaya Terminal Configuration

Avaya Terminal Configuration is a new web-based client application that allows end users to access Media Servers in order to configure personal station set preferences and features. Avaya Terminal Configuration runs on top of Avaya Directory Enabled Management software, and therefore requires that Avaya Directory Enabled Management software be installed.

## Avaya Terminal Emulator

Avaya Terminal Emulator is a Windows (98/NT/2000) application that provides direct connectivity capabilities. It can be run either as a standalone application or run from Avaya Site Administration. Avaya Terminal Emulator includes the following features:

Connection List — lets you store and organize information about the systems to which you regularly connect and allows you to connect to them by double-clicking.

FTP Manipulator — lets you transfer files to and from your computer to a remote system.

Icon Manager — lets you assign functionality to icons that come as part of Avaya Terminal Emulator or to your own icons.

Telnet connection — lets you launch a telnet session to remote systems that you are accessing over a LAN or WAN.

Terminal Emulator — lets you access systems using a modem, data module, PDM, or direct connection.

## **Avaya Voice Announcement Over LAN Manager**

Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN Manager lets you use your LAN to transfer recorded announcements to the TN2501AP boards located in remote Media Servers. This product offers the following capabilities:

- View the current status of TN2501AP board announcements
- Simplified administration to add/change/remove announcements
- Copy/backup announcement files from a supported TN2501AP board to Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN Manager via a customer's LAN
- Copy/restore announcement files to a supported TN2501AP board from Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN Manager via a customer's LAN

## **Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager**

Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager is Windows 2000 application that allows you to monitor real-time Quality of Service (QoS) measurements for VoIP systems. Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager offers a client GUI accessible from your LAN or via remote access. Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager can generate traps associated with VoIP QoS sent to any NMS, and can receive RTCP packets from IP telephones, IP soft phones, VoIP engines (on G700 Media Gateways), and Prowler boards. Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager can operate as a standalone application, or it can be integrated with Avaya MultiService Network Manager.

## Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

---

Several varieties of the Avaya Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) are available. A typical example, the 700 VA 120 V Online UPS provides 700 VA/490 Watts/5.8 amps at 120 Volts AC and battery holdover of 9 minutes at full load. Two optional Extended Battery Modules (EBM24) extend the run time to 156 minutes at full load. The UPS groups the six available 5-15R receptacles into two groups of three to make it possible for customers to shutdown one set of loads to allow longer run times for more critical loads during a power failure. Power management is included. The UPS chassis can be installed in a tower or mounted in a data rack. Serial interface capabilities and alarm contacts are standard.

The types of UPS units available include:

- AS1 700VA 120V Online UPS
- AS1 700VA 230V Online UPS
- AS1 700VA 100V Online UPS Japan
- AS1 700VA 200V Online UPS Japan
- AS1 1500VA 120V Online UPS
- AS1 1500VA 230V Online UPS
- AS1 1500VA 100V Online UPS Japan
- AS1 1500VA 200V Online UPS Japan

UPS add-on modules include the following:

- Extended Battery Module - EBM24 700-1000 VA
- UPS Extended Battery Module - EBM48 1500-2000 VA
- SNMP MODULE 700-2000 VA
- BYPASS DISTRIBUTION MODULE 120V 700-1500 VA
- PWR UPS BYPASS DISTR MOD S1 700 VA - 2K VA

Full Details on these units can be found in *Hardware Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

**8 Connecting Telephones and Adjunct Systems**  
Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)



# A Technical Information

This appendix collects some of the detailed technical information you will need to install the Avaya G700 Media Gateway with an Avaya S8300 Media Serve. More complete information can be found in *Hardware Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

## Avaya G700 Media Gateway Technical Specifications

---

The table of technical specifications provides detailed information on the physical dimensions and tolerances of the G700 Media Gateway.

**Table 15: Technical Specifications**

**Chassis Dimensions**

Height	2U (3.5 in)	88 mm	Depth	17.7 in	450 mm
Width	19 in	482.6 mm	Weight empty	22.25 lbs	10 kg
			Weight	34-27 lbs	16-12 kg

**Required Clearances**

Front	12 in	30 cm	consistent with EIA 464 data rack standards	
Rear	18 in	45 cm		

**Temperature Tolerances**

Recommended	65 to 85 deg Fahrenheit	18 to 29 deg Celsius
Continuous operation	+41 deg F to +104 deg F	5 deg C to 40 deg C

**Humidity Tolerances**

Recommended	20 to 60% relative humidity
Relative humidity range	5% to 95% non-condensing

**Altitude**

Recommended	up to 10,000 feet or 3,000 meters
-------------	-----------------------------------

## Cabling Equipment

The G700 Media Gateway Cables and Peripherals chart lists the types and specifications of the cables used to connect the Media Gateway. See also “*Avaya P333T User’s Guide*”.

**Table 16: Media Gateway Cables and Peripherals**

<b>Cable</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Length (metric)</b>
X330SC Short Octaplane™ Cable (30 cm) (Catalog No. CB0223)	Short Octaplane cable - light-colored, used to connect adjacent switches or switches separated by one Backup Universal Power Supply (BUPS) unit.	12 in	30 cm
X330LC Long Octaplane Cable (2 m) (Catalog No. CB0225)	Long Octaplane cable - light-colored, used to connect switches from two different physical stacks	6 ft	2 m
X330RC Redundant Octaplane Cable (2 m) (Catalog No. CB0222)	Redundant cable - black, used to connect the top and bottom switches of a stack.	6ft	2 m
X330L-LC Extra Long Octaplane Cable (8 m) (Catalog No. CB0270)	Extra-Long Octaplane cable - light-colored, used to connect switches from two different physical stacks	24 ft	8 m
X330L-RC Long Redundant Octaplane Cable (8 m) (Catalog No. CB0269)	Long Redundant cable - black, used to connect the top and bottom switches of a stack.	24 ft	8 m
Stacking Sub-Module X330STK	Stacking Sub-Module provides two backplane links		

# B Information Checklists

This appendix is can be used as an aid for collecting the necessary information for the installation of a G700 Media Gateway and an S8300 Media Server. The following lists are provided

<a href="#">Installer's Checklist:</a>	Tools, software, laptop settings, customer network information.
<a href="#">Serial Number and Login Information:</a>	Serial numbers of the G700s and login/passwords for various access methods.
<a href="#">Set-Up for P330 Stack Processor:</a>	IP addresses and setup commands for the P330 stack processor.
<a href="#">Set Up for G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP):</a>	IP addresses and setup commands for the MGP.
<a href="#">Set Up for VoiP Resources:</a>	IP addresses, slot numbers, and setup commands for the VoIP media modules.
<a href="#">Set Up for S8300 Media Server:</a>	IP addresses and setup commands for the S8300.
<a href="#">Installation Site Information:</a>	Customer and site contact information
<a href="#">Stack Layout:</a>	G700 stack arrangement and slot assignments.

## Installer's Checklist

	<b>tools</b>
	laptop with 32 MB RAM
	40 MB available disk space
	RS-232 port connector
	cross-over Ethernet cables
	direct Ethernet cable
	serial cable and adapter
	Ethernet network connection (NIC card)
	screwdriver
	<b>software</b>
	Windows 95/98/ME/XP/NT/2000 operating system
	FTP Program
	TFTP Program
	Telnet Program
	Terminal emulation program: HyperTerminal or other
	TCP/IP networking software: bundled with Windows OS
	Web browser: Netscape 4.7x or Internet Explorer 5.0

**B Information Checklists**  
Installer's Checklist

	<b>Ethernet connections</b>
	laptop default address and mask: 192.11.13.5, 255.255.255.252
	Browser: no proxies
	laptop default address and mask: 192.11.13.5, 255.255.255.252
	Communications Properties: 9600 baud rate; no parity; 8 data bits, 1 stop bit; no flow control
	<b>SSO login</b>
	Obtaining this login will require that you complete the authentication process. You will not be able to obtain the license file or to perform remote feature activation without the SSO login authentication process. You will not be able to obtain the license file or to perform remote feature activation without the SSO login.
	<b>dial plan</b>
	<b>IP addressing plan</b>
	<b>List of customer-provided IP services</b>

# Serial Number and Login Information

---

## G700 Serial Numbers


## Logins

	Name & Password
<b>S8300 Media Server</b>	_____
<b>P330 Stack</b>	_____
<b>G700 Media Gateway</b>	_____
<b>SSO Authentication Login</b>	_____
<b>ftp</b>	anonymous _____
	email address _____
<b>Communication Manager SAT</b>	_____
	_____

## Set-Up for P330 Stack Processor

---

### Located in G700 Media Gateway#

Prompt: **P330-1(super)#** type `configure` to change prompt to: **P330-1(configure)#**

For the Stack Master:

Command	Requested Field	Information to be Entered
set interface inband	<i>vlan</i>	1
	<i>IP address</i>	
	<i>netmask</i>	
set ip route	<i>destination IP address</i>	
	<i>gateway IP address</i>	
set time protocol	<i>sntp-protocol   time-protocol</i>	
set time server	<i>IP address of time server</i>	
set timezone	<i>zone name</i>	
	- <i>&lt;hours&gt;</i> (offset from GMT)	

## Set Up for G700 Media Gateway Processor (MGP)

### G700 Media Gateway #

Prompt:

**MG-???-n (super)#** type `configure` to change prompt to **MG-???-n (configure)#**

Command	Requested Field	Information to be Entered
<b>set interface mgp</b>	<i>vlan</i>	1
	<i>IP address</i>	
	<i>netmask</i>	
	<i>gateway IP address</i>	
<b>set hostname</b>	<i>hostname</i>	
<b>set ip route</b>	<i>destination IP address</i>	
	<i>gateway IP address</i>	
<b>set mgc list</b>	<i>IP address</i>	
	<i>IP address</i>	
	<i>IP address</i>	
	<i>IP address</i>	
<b>show system</b>	<i>serial number</i>	

## Set Up for VoIP Resources

---

G700 Media Gateway #		
Command	Requested Field	Information to be Entered
<b>set interface voip</b>	<b><i>number</i></b>	V0 for resident VoIP resource of the G700
	<b><i>ip address</i></b>	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	

G700 Media Gateway #		
Command	Requested Field	Information to be Entered
<b>set interface voip</b>	<b><i>number</i></b>	V0 for resident VoIP resource of the G700
	<b><i>ip address</i></b>	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	
	number (v + slot #)	
	ip address	



# Set Up for S8300 Media Server

---

Location: slot #1 of G700 _____		survivable processor?
Web Interface: 192.11.13.6 (default)		
Screen Title	Field	Information to be Entered
Login	Name	
	Password	
Set Time and Date	Time & Date	
Configure Server Set Server Identities	hostname	
	Server IP address	
	netmask	
	default gateway IP address	
Configure VLAN	VLAN ID	
	IP address	
	gateway IP address	
	netmask	
DNS Server Configuration	Enable/Disable DHCP	Disable
Network Time Server	Enable/Disable NTP	
	IP addresses of designated Network Time Servers	_____
	Trusted Key, Requested Key, Control Key	leave blank
	Do Not Install a New Keys File	Default
Set Modem Interface	IP address	

## Installation Site Information

---

<b>Site Name</b>	<b>Main Phone</b>
<b>Installation Address</b>	
<b>Shipping Address</b>	
<b>Customer Contact</b>	<b>Name</b> <b>Title</b> <b>Phone:</b> <b>FAX:</b> <b>Mobile:</b> <b>Pager:</b> <b>email:</b> <b>Off-hours contact:</b>
<b>Salesperson/ Account Exec</b>	<b>Sales/AE phone:</b> <b>Other Contact Info:</b>
<b>Notes to installer: access procedures, safety/security procedures</b>	
<b>Access Contact</b>	<b>Name</b> <b>Title</b> <b>Phone:</b> <b>FAX:</b> <b>Mobile:</b> <b>Pager:</b> <b>email:</b> <b>Off-hours contact:</b>
<b>Installer Name</b> <b>Date of Installation</b>	

# Stack Layout

---

Label each unit in the stack. Make photocopies if needed. There can be no more than 10 units per stack.

Media Gateway (module) #  
or P330 switch #

v1	v2
	v3
Expansion Module	v4

Media Gateway (module) #  
or P330 switch #

v1	v2
	v3
Expansion Module	v4

Media Gateway (module) #  
or P330 switch #

v1	v2
	v3
Expansion Module	v4

Media Gateway (module) #  
or P330 switch #

v1	v2
	v3
Expansion Module	v4

Media Gateway (module) #  
or P330 switch #

v1	v2
	v3
Expansion Module	v4



# C Equipment List

The following lists contain information necessary for ordering Avaya G700 Media Gateway and Avaya S8300 Media Server equipment.

**NOTE:**

If ordering parts, use the 9-digit "Comcode" numbers, not the 6-digit numbers.

**Table 17: Equipment List: Avaya S8300 Media Server with G700 Media Gateways**

<b>Avaya G700 Media Gateway</b>		
The Avaya G700 Media Gateway is a 19-inch 2u rack-mountable device with a physical design modeled after the Avaya P330 stackable switching products. The G700 Media Gateway contains VoIP resources, a layer 2 switch, modular interface connectivity for traditional trunk and station access and performs the function of a gateway/gatekeeper. It also houses four Media Module Bays as well as a single, standard Avaya Expansion Module interface slot. The Avaya G700 Media Gateway is designed to offer options and scalability. A customer will be able to mix and match Media Modules, as well as stack and/or add additional Avaya G700 Media Gateways as they grow in size.		
Material Code: 170896	Apparatus Code: MGW1	Not Optional
<b>Avaya G700 Media Gateway ComCode (for Services Ordering Only)</b>		
<b>ComCode</b>	<b>Number of Items</b>	<b>Description</b>
700259898	1	G700 Media Gateway (AC only version)
700284607	1	G700 Media Gateway (AC/DC version)
700017932	1	Rack mount screw set (attach ears to rack)
700021769	2	Rack Mount Ears
901342105	6	Rack Mount screw set ear to box
700051055	4	Feet
700169998	1	Tech Laptop Cable
700057060	3	Media Module Blanks
700179195	1	Avaya Expansion Blank
700179203	1	Avaya Octaplane Blank
700179526	1	Documentation, CIB 3246 FCC/Safety G700
700236680	0	Grounding Kit for multiple G700s in a 19" rack

**Table 18: Equipment List: G700 Media Gateway Power Cords**

<b>G700 Media Gateway Power Cords</b>		
Supplies Power to the G700 Media Gateway. One cord per gateway is required, and there are various cords depending on the power required for the country in which the unit will be installed.		
Material Code: 170904	Apparatus Code: none	Not Optional
When you order this material code, a descriptive attribute will be required; the attributes are:		
<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Option</b>	<b>Comcode: Description</b>
CRD	30	405362641: PWR CORD 9X10 IN USA 17505
CRD	31	407786623: PWR CORD 98IN EUROPE 12013S
CRD	32	407786599: PWR CORD 98IN UNITED KINGDOM 14012
CRD	33	407786631: PWR CORD 98IN AUSTRALIA 15012
CRD	34	407790591: PWR CORD INDIA P250CIM
CRD	42	408161453: PWR CORD 96IN ARGENTINA
CRD		700252638: DC PWR CORD

**Table 19: Equipment List: Avaya S8300 Media Server**

<b>Server</b>		
S8300 Media Server		
The Avaya S8300 Media Server is an Intel™-based server complex that carries:		
*Avaya Communication Manager		
*administration and maintenance provisioning software		
*20G Hard drive (Field-replaceable. Comcode: 700258891)		
*256 MB RAM		
*Web serve		
*Linux OS (Redhat v6.X)		
*H.248 Media Gateway Signaling Protocol		
*CCMS messages tunneled over H.248 Signaling Protocol		
*TFTP server		
The S8300 Media Server can act as the primary server of the G700 Media Gateway, or it can serve as a local survivable processor for remote/branch customer locations.		
Material Code: 170902	Apparatus Code:	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700293103		

**Table 20: Equipment List: Media Modules**

<b>Media Modules</b>		
Avaya MM710 T1/E1 Media Module		
The MM710 T1/E1 Media Module offers the combined features of a DEFINITY DS1 circuit pack and will include the following:		
*A built-in CSU		
*AMI-BASIC		
*Both A-law for E1 and $\mu$ -law for T1		
*Line Coding: AMI, ZCS, B8ZS for T1 and HDB3 or AMI for E1		
*Stratum 3 Clock compatibility		
*Trunk signaling for supporting US and International CO trunks and tie trunks as currently in existence		
The MM710 T1/E1 Media Module supports the universal DS1 conforming to 1.544 Mbps T1 standard and 2.048 Mbps E1 standard		
ISDN PRI is also supported for T1 or E1 revenue-associated option		
Material Code: 170900	Apparatus Code: MM710	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700221161		
DEF DS1 LOOPBACK JACK 700A		
<i>1 of 3</i>		

**Table 20: Equipment List: Media Modules *Continued***

<b>Media Modules</b>		
Provides the ability to remotely troubleshoot the MM 710 T1/E1 Media Module. It is required for any customer with a maintenance contract and highly recommended for any other customer.		
Material Code: 107988867	Apparatus Code: None	Required for any customer with a maintenance contract and an MM710 T1/E1 Media Module, highly recommend for other customers to avoid expensive technician visits.
<b>MM711 Analog Media Module</b>		
The MM711 Analog Media Module supports eight analog interfaces allowing the connectivity of Loop Start, Ground Start, Analog DID trunks, and 2-wire analog Outgoing CAMA E911 trunks. As well, the MM711 Analog Media Module allows connectivity of analog, tip/ring devices such as single line telephones, modems or group 3 fax machines. Each port may be configured as either a trunk interface or a station interface.		
Also included is support for caller ID signaling, ring voltage generation for a variety of international frequencies and cadences and administrable line termination styles.		
Material Code: 170899	Apparatus Code: MM711	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700221146		
<b>MM712 DCP Media Module</b>		
The MM712 DCP Media Module allows connectivity of up to 8 two-wire DCP voice terminals. MM712 will not support 4-Wire DCP telephones.		
Signal timing specifications for the MM712 support TDM Bus Timing in receive and transmit modes. The G700 Media Gateway supplies only +5 VDC and -48 VDC to the MM712 Media Module. Any other required voltages must be derived on the module.		
Loop range secondary protection is provided on the MM712. The MM712 is also self-protecting from an over current condition on a tip and ring interface.		
Material Code: 170898	Apparatus Code: MM712	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700221153		
<b>MM720 BRI Media Module</b>		



**Table 20: Equipment List: Media Modules *Continued***

<b>Media Modules</b>		
<p>The MM720 BRI Media Module contains eight ports that interface to the central office at the ISDN T reference point. Information is communicated in two ways:</p> <p>Over two 64 Kbps channels called B1 and B2 that can be circuit-switched simultaneously</p> <p>Over a 16 Kbps channel called the D channel that is used for signaling. The D channel occupies one time slot for all eight D channels.</p> <p>The circuit switched connections have a u-law or A-law option for voice operation. The circuit switched connections operate as 64 Kbps clear channels when in the data mode.</p> <p>The MM720 BRI Media Module does not support BRI stations, or combining both B channels together to form a 128 Kbps channel.</p>		
Material Code:	Apparatus Code: MM720	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700221138		
<b>MM760 VoIP Media Module</b>		
<p>The MM760 VoIP Media Module is a clone of the motherboard VoIP engine. It provides an additional 64 VoIP channels with G.711 compression. Each chassis base system can support up to 64 G.711 single channel calls. If the desire is to have an essentially non-blocking system, an additional MM760 VoIP Media Module needs to be added if more than two MM710 T1/E1 Media Modules are used in a single chassis. This will provide for an additional 64 channels.</p> <p>This VoIP conversion resource in the G700 Media Gateway is an improved version of the Prowler board resource and from a configuration perspective, the two are the same. The capacity is 64 G.711 TDM/IP simultaneous calls, or 32 compression codec (G.729 or G.723) TDM/IP simultaneous calls. These call types can be mixed on the same resource, so we say that the simultaneous call capacity of the resource is 64 “G.711 Equivalent Calls”.</p>		
Material Code: 170901	Apparatus Code: MM760	Optional
ComCode (for Services Ordering Only): 700221179		
<i>3 of 3</i>		

**Table 21: Avaya P330 Equipment**

<b>Avaya P330 Equipment</b>		
Avaya P330 Stacking Sub-Module (optional)		
Material Code: 108562943	P330 MOD P330 STACKING	
<b>CASCADE CABLES</b>		
Material code: 108592445	Avaya P330 CABLE OCTAPLANE STACKING 1FT	
Material code: 108592437	Avaya P330 CABLE OCTAPLANE STACKING 6FT	
Material code: 108563453	Avaya CABLE ASSY X330RC REDUN STACKING	
<b>EXPANSION MODULES</b>		
Material code: 108562927	Avaya MOD P330 1000BSX UPLINK 2PT	The X330-S2 provides 1000Base-SX connectivity with two Multimode Fiber ports (up to 550 m,1804 ft) with LAG and Load Sharing
Material code: 108563032	Avaya MOD P330 1000BLX UPLINK 2PT	The X330-L2 provides 1000Base-LX connectivity with two Single Mode Fiber ports (up to 5 km,3.11 miles) with Link Aggregation (LAG) and Load Sharing
Material code: 108562992	Avaya MOD P330 1000BSX UPLINK 1PT	The X330-S1 provides 1000Base-SX connectivity with one Multimode Fiber port (up to 550 m,1804 ft)
Material code: 108562976	Avaya MOD P330 1000BLX UPLINK 1PT	The X330-L1 provides 1000Base-LX connectivity with one Single Mode Fiber port (up to 5 km,3.11 miles)
Material code: 108562968	Avaya MOD P330 10/100TX UPLINK 16PT	The X330-T16 adds 16 10/100Base-T ports. It allows up to 64 ports in a single switch and an impressive 640 per stack. Two LAGs can be created, with up to eight ports per group.
<i>1 of 2</i>		

**Table 21: Avaya P330 Equipment *Continued***

<b>Avaya P330 Equipment</b>		
Material code: 108562950	Avaya MOD P330 100FX UPLINK 2PT	The X330-F2 adds two 100Base-FX ports which can be aggregated using LAG to provide a 200 Mbps link for backbone or high-speed server applications.
Material code: 108659178	Avaya P330 MOD EXP GBIC 2PT	The X330-G2 provides GBIC connectivity with an adapter for standard GBIC transceivers.
Material code: 700214612	Avaya X330 WAN-2DS1	The X330 WAN-2DS1 provides two T1/E1 ports and a 10/100BaseT port.
Material code: 700247570	Avaya X330 WAN-2USP	The X330 WAN-2USP provides two serial ports supporting V.35, X.21, RS530 and a 10/100BaseT port.
Material code: 700247588	V.35 DTE Cable	Used with the X330 WAN-2USP.
Material code: 108659194	Avaya MOD DUAL SPEED OC12/OC3 SMF 15KM	
Material code: 108659186	Avaya MOD DUAL SPEED OC12 OC3 MMF 500M	
		<i>2 of 2</i>



# **D** Replacing the G700 Media Gateway

Circumstances may require that the G700 Media Gateway be replaced, either because of hardware/firmware failure, or because of newer technology. Depending upon these circumstances, some or all of the components inserted into the G700 (S8300 Media Server, LED Panel, Avaya Expansion Module, Avaya Octaplane Module, or various Media Modules) may be reused in the replacement G700.

**To replace the G700, follow these steps:**

- 1** If the original G700 is still in operation, power down the system. This should be done at a time when there will be the minimum interruption in service.
  - a** Perform a shutdown of the S8300 Media Server, if present, using either the Web interface or manually, using the shutdown button on the S8300 faceplate.
  - b** Power down the G700 by removing the power cord from the wall power source.
- 2** Remove all media modules from the G700, and carefully set aside (assuming they will be reused).
- 3** Reversing the procedures documented in Chapter 2, remove the G700 from its rack mount.
- 4** Then, following these same procedures, install the replacement G700 hardware into the rack mount.
- 5** Proceed as you would for the installation of a new G700.
- 6** Install the S8300 Media Server, LED Panel, and media modules.
- 7** Contact RFA, if you have not already done so, and download new license and authentication files to match the serial number of the replacement G700.
- 8** Power up the system, and install the new license and authentication files.
- 9** In Communication Manager, running on the primary server, use the **change media-gateway SAT** command to enter the new G700 serial numbers and other data.



# Index

---

## Numerics

1151A1 and 1151A2 power supply, [327](#), [328](#)  
1151A1 power supply, [326](#)  
1151A2 power supply, [326](#)  
2-wire digital station  
  connecting, [329](#)  
  pinout chart, [330](#)  
  wiring, [329](#)  
400B2 Adapter, [318](#)

---

## A

AC power, [95](#)  
adding  
  switch configuration, [64](#)  
adjunct power connections, [319](#)  
Adjuncts  
  connecting, [315](#)  
alarm wiring, [329](#)  
analog station  
  connecting, [329](#)  
  wiring, [329](#)  
announcements, [337](#)  
approved grounds, [93](#)  
ART, Automatic Registration Tool, [106](#), [218](#), [268](#)  
ASAI Co-Resident DLG, [335](#)  
assigning G700 IP addresses, [137](#), [178](#), [183](#)  
Attendant Console, Aux power, [319](#)  
AUDIX  
  IA 770, [333](#)  
  LX, [335](#)  
Avaya ATM WAN Survivable Processor Manager, [339](#)  
Avaya Configuration Manager, [341](#)  
Avaya Data Expansion Modules, [72](#)  
Avaya Directory Enabled Management, [339](#)  
Avaya Fault and Performance Manager, [340](#)  
Avaya Gateway Installation Wizard, [33](#)  
Avaya Integrated Management, [339](#)  
Avaya MultiService Network Manager, [340](#)  
Avaya MultiService SMON™ Manager, [340](#)  
Avaya P330 LAN Expansion Module, [72](#)  
Avaya Proxy Agent, [341](#)  
Avaya S8700 Media Server, [75](#)  
Avaya Site Administration, [64](#), [341](#)  
  adding new switch configuration, [64](#)  
  configuring, [64](#)  
Avaya Terminal Configuration, [341](#)  
Avaya Terminal Emulator, [341](#)  
Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN Manager, [342](#)  
Avaya X330 WAN Access Routing Module, [72](#)  
Avaya X330STK Stacking Sub-Module  
  installation, [88](#)

## B

backup  
  to FTP server, [215](#)  
  to laptop, [215](#)  
backup, Linux Migration, [229](#)  
bonding conductor, install, [331](#)

---

## C

cabling  
  multiple units, [89](#)  
  Octaplane Cables, [89](#), [345](#), [346](#)  
Call Center, [337](#)  
  G700 announcements, [337](#)  
CBC, [331](#)  
Checklist 1, Install new G700 with S8300, [35](#)  
Checklist 2, Install new G700 without S8300, [38](#)  
Checklist 3, Upgrade G700 with S8300, [40](#), [42](#)  
Checklist 4, Upgrade G700 without S8300, [44](#)  
checklists, [76](#)  
Circuit Protection  
  Media Modules, [331](#)  
circuit protection, install, [331](#)  
CLI commands, [66](#)  
CO trunk wiring, [329](#)  
Command Line Interface Help, [62](#), [63](#)  
configure  
  G700 Media Gateway, [137](#)  
  G700 with S8300, [101](#)  
    administer Communication Manager, [151](#)  
    completing installation, [168](#)  
    G700 serial number, [104](#), [174](#), [214](#), [266](#), [303](#)  
    IP connectivity, [140](#), [181](#), [186](#)  
    LSP transition points, [143](#), [189](#)  
    SNMP alarming setup, [166](#)  
  G700 with S8700, [171](#)  
    administer Communication Manager, [198](#), [201](#)  
    completing installation, [169](#), [209](#)  
    Expansion Module, [144](#), [190](#)  
    G700 firmware installation, [194](#)  
    tar.gz file, [176](#), [305](#)  
    TFTP server setup, [174](#), [303](#)  
configuring  
  Avaya Site Administration, [64](#)  
  switches, [64](#)  
connect AC power, [97](#)  
consoles  
  connectable, [316](#)  
  controller list for G700, [141](#), [187](#)  
Co-Resident DLG, [335](#)  
  administration tasks, [336](#)  
  ethernet interfaces, [336](#)

## Index

### D

coupled bonding conductor, install, [331](#)  
Customization Template for Avaya Installation Wizard, [31](#)  
CWY1 Board, [333](#)

### D

DC  
wiring diagram, [99](#)  
DC power, [98](#)  
default for media gateway, [140](#), [181](#), [185](#)  
DEFINITY LAN Gateway, [335](#)  
DHCP server, [164](#)  
DID trunk wiring, [329](#)  
DLG, [335](#)

### E

Equipment List  
Avaya Expansion Modules, [362](#)  
G700, [357](#)  
Loopback Jack, [359](#)  
MM710 T1/E1, [359](#)  
MM711 Analog, [360](#)  
MM712 DCP, [360](#)  
MM760 VoIP, [361](#)  
Octaplane Cables, [362](#)  
Power Cords, [358](#)  
S8300, [359](#)  
X330STK Stacking Sub Module, [362](#)  
Expansion Module  
G700 with S8700, [144](#), [190](#)  
installation, [87](#)  
external alarm wiring, [329](#)

### F

FTP server, [215](#)

### G

G600 Media Gateway, [75](#)  
G700 Media Gateway  
rack mounting, [81](#)  
replace, [365](#)  
SNMP alarming setup, [166](#)  
Gateway Installation Wizard, [33](#)  
grounding  
approved, [93](#)  
conductors, [92](#)  
connections, [94](#)  
requirements, [92](#)  
safety, [94](#)

### I

Initial Administration Tasks, [151](#), [155](#), [198](#), [201](#)  
inserting  
Expansion Module, [87](#)  
X330STK Stacking Sub-Module, [88](#)  
install  
license file, [246](#), [276](#)  
installation  
checklists, [76](#)  
roadmap, [34](#)  
Installation Wizard  
Customization Template, [31](#)  
Electronic Pre-Installation Worksheet, [31](#)  
gateway installation, [33](#)  
Names/Number Template, [31](#)  
installing  
telephone power supplies  
procedures, [317](#)  
Intuity AUDIX  
hunt group, [334](#)  
IA 770, [333](#)  
LX, [335](#)  
IP address  
assigning G700 components, [137](#), [178](#), [183](#)  
IP phones  
LSP configuration, [164](#)  
IP route, [138](#), [140](#), [179](#), [181](#), [184](#), [185](#)

### K

keys.install file, [135](#)

### L

laptop  
as FTP server, [215](#)  
direct Ethernet connection, [144](#), [190](#)  
LEDs, [73](#)  
license file  
install, [246](#), [276](#)  
S8300 upgrade, [108](#)  
Linux Migration backup, [229](#)  
Local Survivable Processor, [74](#)  
LSP, [74](#)  
IP phones, [164](#)  
transition of control, [165](#)  
LSP/G700 Upgrade Tool, [32](#)

### M

Media Modules, [71](#)  
Messaging  
IA770, [333](#)  
LX, [335](#)  
multiple units, [89](#)



---

**N**

Names/Number Template for Avaya Installation Wizard, [31](#)  
network integration, [77](#)

---

**P**

P333T-PWR power over Ethernet stackable switch, [324](#)  
pinout chart  
    2-wire station, [330](#)  
Planning  
    documentation, [76](#)  
    Logins, [349](#)  
    S8300 Information, [353](#)  
    Serial Numbers, [349](#)  
power  
    AC, [95](#)  
    AC Outlet Test, [95](#)  
    Connecting, [97](#)  
    DC, [98](#)  
    Requirements, [95](#)  
    Testing the AC Outlet, [95](#)  
power supplies  
    installation, [316](#)  
    wiring, [316](#)  
power supplies for telephones  
    1151A1 -48V, [326](#)  
    1151A2 -48V, [326](#)  
    installing and wiring, [317](#)  
    P333T-PWR, [324](#)  
power up, [97](#)  
Pre-installation Worksheet for Avaya Installation Wizard, [31](#)

---

**R**

RAL, [79](#)  
remaster hard drive, [232](#)  
Remote Feature Activation, [76](#)  
replacing a G700, [365](#)  
Restricted Access Location, [79](#)

---

**S**

S8300  
    LEDs, [73](#)  
    remaster hard drive, [232](#)  
S8700 Media Server, [75](#)  
safety instructions  
    1151A1 and 1151A2 power supply, [327](#)  
Single Sign-On SSO  
    RFA Single Sign-On, [76](#)  
site verification, [76](#)  
site-specific-option-number (sson), [164](#)  
SNMP alarming on G700, [166](#)

---

stack, [138](#), [179](#), [184](#)  
stacks  
    multiple units, [89](#)  
supplementary ground conductor, [79](#)  
switches  
    adding new switch configuration, [64](#)

---

**T**

task list, [34](#)  
    new G700 with S8700, [38](#)  
    upgrade G700 with S8300, [40](#), [42](#)  
    upgrade G700 with S8700, [44](#)  
Technical Specifications Table, [345](#)  
Telephones  
    connecting, [315](#)  
telephones  
    connectable, [316](#)  
    installation, [316](#)  
    wiring, [316](#)  
telnet  
    set parameters, [233](#)  
terminal emulation  
    ntt, [67](#)  
    w2ktt, [67](#)  
TFTP server setup, [174](#), [303](#)

---

**U**

Uninterruptable Power Supply, [343](#)  
upgrade  
    G700 with S8300, [211](#), [263](#)  
        completing upgrade (S8300 primary controller), [260](#), [298](#)  
        configure G700 Media Gateway, [250](#), [291](#)  
        license file, [108](#)  
    G700 with S8700, [301](#)  
    G700 firmware installation, [310](#)  
Upgrade Tool for LSP/G700, [32](#)  
UPS, [343](#)

---

**W**

wiring  
    2-wire digital station, [329](#)  
    alarm, [329](#)  
    analog station, [329](#)  
    CO trunk, [329](#)  
    DID trunk, [329](#)  
wiring diagram  
    DC, [99](#)  
wiring telephone power supplies  
    procedures, [317](#)

